

Essential Grammar in Use

WITH ANSWERS

A self-study
reference and practice
book for elementary
students of English

Raymond Murphy

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

Essential Grammar in Use

WITH ANSWERS

*A self-study
reference and practice
book for elementary
students of English*

Raymond Murphy

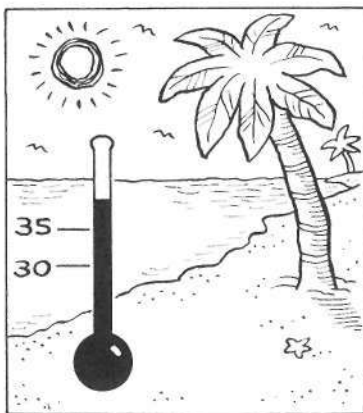


Cambridge University Press

UNIT 1 am/is/are



She's a doctor.
She **isn't** a nurse.



It's hot.
It **isn't** cold.



They're rich.
They **aren't** poor.

positive

I am (I'm)	
he	(he's)
she	is (she's)
it	(it's)
we	(we're)
you	are (you're)
they	(they're)

negative

I am not (I'm not)	
he	(he's not or he isn't)
she	is not (she's not or she isn't)
it	(it's not or it isn't)
we	(we're not or we aren't)
you	are not (you're not or you aren't)
they	(they're not or they aren't)

- Can you close the window, please? I'm cold.
- I'm 32 years old. My sister is 29.
- My brother is a policeman. He's very tall.
- John is afraid of dogs.
- It's 10 o'clock. You're late again.
- Ann and I are very good friends.
- My shoes are very dirty. I must clean them.
- I'm tired but I'm not hungry.
- Tom isn't interested in politics.
- Jane isn't at home at the moment. She's at work.
- Those people aren't English. They're Australian.



that's = that **is** there's = there **is** here's = here **is**:

- Thank you. **That's** very kind of you.
- Look! **There's** George.

UNIT 1 Exercises

1.1 Write the short form (she's / we aren't etc.).

- 1 he is he's
- 2 they are
- 3 she is not.....5
- 4 it is.....6
- I am not.....
- you are not

Write the full form (she is / we are not etc.).

- 7 we aren't we are not
- 8 I'm
- 9 you're.....
- 10 they aren't.....
- 11 it isn't.....
- 12 she's

1.2 Put in am, is or are.

- 1 The weather is very nice today.
- 2 I.....not tired.
- 3 This case.....very heavy.
- 4 These cases.....very heavy.
- 5 The dog.....asleep.
- 6 Look! There.....Carol.
- 7 I.....hot. Can you open the window, please?
- 8 This castle.....one thousand years old.
- 9 My brother and I.....good tennis players.
- 10 Ann.....at home but her children.....at school.
- 11 I.....a student. My sister.....an architect.

1.3 Write full sentences. Use am/is/are each time.

- 1 (my shoes very dirty) My shoes are very dirty.
- 2 (my bed very comfortable) My bed is very comfortable.
- 3 (your cigarettes in your bag)
- 4 (I not very happy today)
- 5 (this restaurant very expensive)
- 6 (the shops not open today)
- 7 (Mr Kelly's daughter six years old)
- 8 (the houses in this street very old)
- 9 (the examination not difficult)
- 10 (those flowers very beautiful)

1.4 Write positive or negative sentences. Use am / am not / is / isn't / are / aren't.

- 1 (Paris / the capital of France) Paris is the capital of France.
- 2 (I / interested in football) I'm not interested in football.
- 3 (I / hungry) I
- 4 (it / warm today) It.....today.
- 5 (Rome / in Spain) Rome
- 6 (I / afraid of dogs) I.....
- 7 (my hands / cold) My.....
- 8 (Canada / a very big country)
- 9 (the Amazon / in Africa)
- 10 (diamonds / cheap)
- 11 (motor-racing / a dangerous sport)
- 12 (cats / big animals)

UNIT 2 am/is/are (questions)

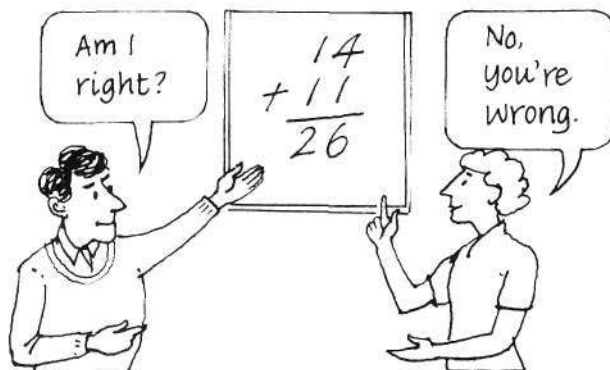
► Unit 1 am/is/are

positive

I	am
he	is
she	
it	
we	are
you	
they	

question

am	I?
is	he?
	she?
	it?
are	we?
	you?
	they?



- 'Is your mother at home?' 'No, **she's** out.'
- 'Is it cold in your room?' 'Yes, a little.'
- **Those shoes are** nice. **Are they** new?
- **Are books** expensive in your country?
- 'How old is Joe?' '**He's** 24.'
- 'What colour **is your car**?' '**It's** blue.'
- 'Where **are you** from?' 'Canada.'
- 'How much **are these postcards**?' 'They're 40 pence each.'

what's = what **is** who's = who **is** how's = how **is** where's = where **is**:

- **What's** the time?
- **Who's** that man?
- **Where's** Jill?
- **How's** your father?

short answers

Yes, I **am**.

Yes, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{he} \\ \text{she} \\ \text{it} \end{array} \right\}$ **is**.

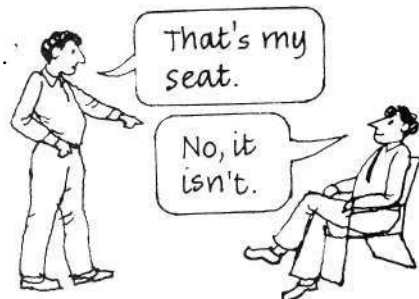
Yes, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{we} \\ \text{you} \\ \text{they} \end{array} \right\}$ **are**.

No, I'm **not**.

No, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{he's} \\ \text{she's} \\ \text{it's} \end{array} \right\}$ **not.** or No, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{he} \\ \text{she} \\ \text{it} \end{array} \right\}$ **isn't,**

No, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{we're} \\ \text{you're} \\ \text{they're} \end{array} \right\}$ **not.** or No, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{we} \\ \text{you} \\ \text{they} \end{array} \right\}$ **aren't.**

- 'Are you tired?' **Yes, I am.**
- 'Are you hungry?' 'No, I'm not but I'm thirsty.'
- 'Is he English?' 'Yes, he is.'
- 'Is Ann at work today?' 'No, she isn't.'
- 'Is this seat free?' 'Yes, it is.'
- 'Are these your shoes?' 'Yes, they are.'
- 'Am I late?' 'No, you aren't.'



UNIT 2 Exercises

2.1 Write questions from these words. Use **am/is/are**.

- 1 (your mother at home?) *Is your mother at home?* ?
- 2 (your parents at home?) at home ?
- 3 (this hotel expensive?) ?
- 4 (you interested in art?) ?
- 5 (the shops open today?) ?
- 6 (the park open today?) ?

2.2 Write questions with **What/Who/How/Where/Why ... ?** Use **am/is/are**.

- 1 (what colour your car?) *What colour is your car?* ?
- 2 (where my key?) *Where* ?
- 3 (where my socks?) ?
- 4 (how old your father?) *How* ?
- 5 (what colour his eyes?) ?
- 6 (why John angry with me?) ?
- 7 (how much these shoes?) ?
- 8 (who your favourite actor?) ?
- 9 (why you always late?) ?

2.3 Ask the questions. (Read the answers to the questions first.)



- 1 (your name?) *What's your name?* ?
- 2 (married or single?) *Are you married or single?* ?
- 3 (British?) ?
- 4 (where / from?) ?
- 5 (how old?) ?
- 6 (a student?) ?
- 7 (your wife a teacher?) ?
- 8 (where / from?) ?
- 9 (her name?) ?
- 10 (how old?) ?



PAUL

Paul.
I'm married.
No, I'm not.
From Australia.
I'm 25.
No, I'm a teacher.
No, she's a lawyer.
She's Italian.
Anna.
She's 25 too.

2.4 Write positive or negative short answers (**Yes, I am / No, he isn't** etc.).

- 1 Are you married? *No, I'm not.* 6 Is it dark now? 11
- 2 Are you tall? *Yes, I am.* 7 Are your hands cold? 12
- 3 Is it cold today? 8 Are you hungry? 13
- 4 Are you a teacher? 9 Is your father tall? 14
- 5 Are you tired? 10 Is it sunny? 15

UNIT 3 I am doing (present continuous)



She's **eating**.
She **isn't** reading.



It's **raining**.
The sun **isn't** shining.



They're **running**.
They **aren't** walking.

■ The present continuous tense is:

am/is/are -ing (doing/eating/raining/running/writing etc.)

I	am (not) -ing	I'm working.
he	is (not) -ing	Tom is writing a letter.
she		She isn't eating.
it		The telephone is ringing.
we	are (not) -ing	We're having dinner.
you		You're not listening to me.
they		The children are doing their homework.

► Unit 1 for the short forms 'm/'s/'re/isn't/aren't

■ **am/is/are -ing** = something is happening *now*:

I'm working
she's wearing a hat
they're playing football
I'm not watching television

past ← NOW → future

- Please be quiet. I'm working. (= I'm working now)
- Look! Joy is wearing her new hat. (= she's wearing it now)
- Don't go out now. It's raining.
- 'Where are the children?' 'They're playing in the garden.'
- (on the telephone) We're having dinner now. Can you phone later?
- You can turn the television off. I'm not watching it.

Spelling ► Appendix 4 (4.3 and 4.4):

come → coming	run → running	lie → lying
smoke → smoking	sit → sitting	die → dying
write → writing	swim → swimming	

- Unit 4 **Are you -ing?** (present continuous questions)
- Unit 8 **I am doing** (present continuous) and **I do** (present simple)
- Unit 21 **What are you doing tomorrow?** (present for the future)

UNIT 3 Exercises

3.1 Complete the sentences. Use **am/is/are** + one of these verbs:

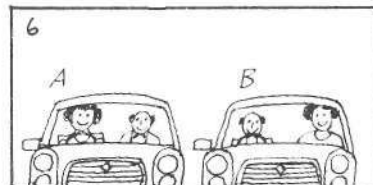
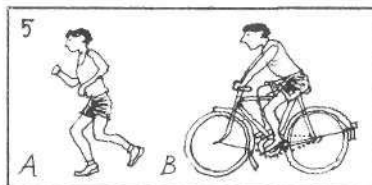
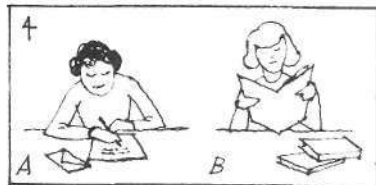
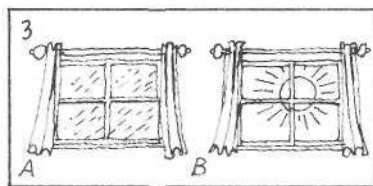
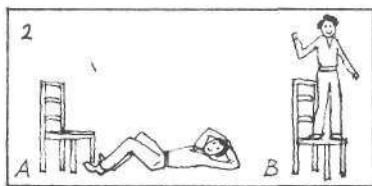
building coming having ~~playing~~ cooking standing swimming

- 1 Listen! Pat is playing the piano.
- 2 They.....a new hotel in the city centre at the moment.
- 3 Look! Somebody.....in the river.
- 4 'You.....on my foot.' 'Oh, I'm sorry.'
- 5 Hurry up! The bus.....
- 6 'Where are you, George?' 'In the kitchen, I.....a meal.'
- 7 (on the telephone) 'Hello. Can I speak to Ann, please?' 'She.....a shower at the moment. Can you phone again later?'

3.2 What's happening at the moment? Write *true* sentences.

- 1 (I / wash / my hair) I'm not washing my hair
- 2 (it / snow) It is snowing
- 3 (I / sit / on a chair)
- 4 (I/eat)
- 5 (it / rain)
- 6 (I / learn / English)
- 7 (I / listen / to the radio)
- 8 (the sun / shine)
- 9 (I / wear/ shoes)
- 10 (I / smoke / a cigarette)
- 11 (I / read / a newspaper)

3.3 What is the difference between picture A and picture B? Write two sentences each time. Use **is/are (not) -ing**.



- 1 In A the man is smoking a cigarette. In B he is eating an apple.
- 2 In A the man..... In B he
- 3 In A..... In B.....
- 4
- 5
- 6

UNIT 4

Are you -ing? (present continuous questions)

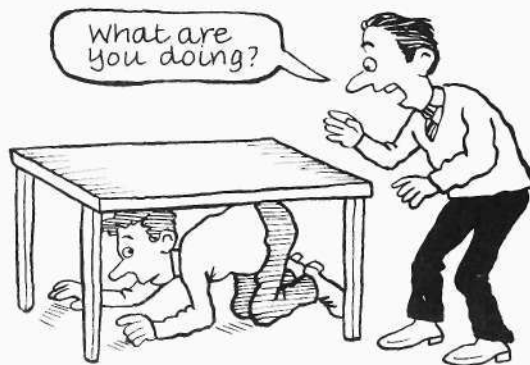
► Unit 3 I am doing (present continuous)

positive

question

I	am	-ing
he	is	-ing
she		
it		
we	are	-ing
you		
they		

am	I	-ing?
is	he	-ing?
	she	
	it	
are	we	-ing?
	you	
	they	



- Your face is white. **Are you** feeling okay?
- **'Is it raining?'** 'Yes. take an umbrella.'
- Why **are you** wearing a coat? It's not cold today.
- 'What's **Roy doing?**' 'He's cooking the dinner.'
- "What **are the children doing?**" 'They're playing in the garden.'
- Look! There's (an). Where's **she** going?

The word order in these questions is:

	is/are	+	<i>subject</i>	+	-ing
	Is		he'		working today?
	Is		Mr Smith		working today?
Where	are		they		going?
Where	are		those people		going? (not 'Where are going those people?')

short answers

Yes, I am.
Yes, { he- she it } is.
Yes, { we you they } are.

No. I'm not.
No, { he's she's it's } not. or No, { he- she it } isn't.
No, { we're you're they're } not. or No, { we you they } aren't.

- 'Are you listening to the radio?' 'Yes, I am.'
- 'Is Tom working today?' 'Yes, he is.'
- 'Is it raining?' 'No, it isn't.'
- 'Are your friends staying at a hotel?' 'No, they aren't.'

UNIT 4 Exercises

4.1 Look at the pictures and ask a question. Choose one of these verbs:

crying eating going laughing looking at reading



- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------|
| 1 What <u>is she reading</u>? | 4 What.....? |
| 2 Where.....? | 5 What.....? |
| 3 Why.....? | 6 Why.....? |

4.2 Write the question "What... doing?" with different subjects.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1 (he) <u>What is he doing</u>? | 3 (I).....? |
| 2 (they) What.....doing? | 4 (your wife).....? |

New write the question **Where ... going?** with these subjects.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 5 (we) <u>Where are we going</u>? | |
| 6 (those children).....? | |
| 7 (the girl with long hair).....? | |
| 8 (the man on the bicycle).....? | |

4.3 Ask the questions. (Read the answers to the questions first.)

<p>1 (you / watch / TV?) <u>Are you watching TV</u>.....?</p> <p>2 (the children / play?).....?</p> <p>3 (what / you / do?).....?</p> <p>4 (what / Rod / do?).....?</p> <p>5 (it / ram?).....?</p> <p>6 (that clock / work?).....?</p> <p>7 (you / write / a letter?).....?</p> <p>8 (why / you / run?).....?</p>	<p>No, you can turn it off.</p> <p>No, they're asleep.</p> <p>I'm cooking my dinner.</p> <p>He's having a bath.</p> <p>No, not at the moment.</p> <p>No, it's broken.</p> <p>Yes, to my sister.</p> <p>Because I'm late.</p>
---	--

4.4 Write positive or negative short answers (Yes, I am / No, it isn't etc.).

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1 Are you watching TV <u>No I'm not</u> | 5 Are you eating something?..... |
| 2 Are you wearing shoes?..... | 6 Are you feeling well?..... |
| 3 Are you wearing a hat?..... | 7 Is the sun shining?..... |
| 4 Is it raining?..... | 8 Is your mother watching you?..... |

UNIT 5 I do/work/like etc. (present simple)



They have a lot of books.
They **read** a lot.



He's eating an ice-cream.
He **likes** ice-cream.

■ They read / I like / he likes etc. = the *present simple*:

I/we/you/they	do	read	like	work	play	watch
he/she/it	does	reads	likes	works	plays	watches

■ Remember:

he/she/it-s: he likes (not 'he like') my sister plays it rains
- I live in London but my brother lives in Scotland.

have → has: I have → he/she/it has

Spelling ► Appendix 4 (4.1 and 4.2):

-es after **-s/-ch/sh:** pass → passes watch → watches finish → finishes
also: do → does go → goes
study → studies carry → carries

■ We use the present simple for things that are true in general, or for things that happen sometimes or all the time:

- I **like** big cities.
- The shops **open** at 9 o'clock and **close** at 5.30.
- He **works** very hard. He **starts** at 7.30 and **finishes** at 8 o'clock in the evening.
- The Earth **goes** round the Sun.
- We **do** a lot of different things in our free time.
- She's very clever. She **speaks** four languages.
- It **costs** a lot of money to stay at luxury hotels.

■ We use the present simple with **always/never/often/sometimes/usually:**

- He **always gets** up at 7 o'clock.
- I **usually go** to work by car but I **sometimes walk**.
- Jack **eats** very little. He **never has** breakfast in the morning.
- The weather here is not very good. It **often rains**.

UNIT 5 Exercises

5.1 Write the **he/she/it** form of these verbs.

- 1 read reads 4 listen 7 push 10 kiss
 2 repair 5 love 8 do 11 buy
 3 watch 6 have 9 think 12 go

5.2 Complete the sentences. Use the correct form of these verbs:

boil close cost cost go have like meet open smoke
~~spea~~k teach wash

- 1 She's very clever. She speaks four languages.
 2 Steve.....ten cigarettes a day.
 3 We usually.....dinner at 7 o'clock.
 4 I.....films. I often.....to the cinema.
 5 Water.....at 100 degrees Celsius.
 6 In Britain the banks.....at 9.30 in the morning.
 7 The City Museum.....at 5 o'clock every evening.
 8 Food is expensive. It.....a lot of money.
 9 Shoes are expensive. They.....a lot of money.
 10 Tina is a teacher. She.....mathematics to young children.
 11 Your job is very interesting. You.....a lot of people.
 12 Peter.....his hair twice a week.

5.3 Study this information:

	<p>Bob and Ann</p>	<p>George</p>	<p>you</p>
1 drink coffee in the morning?	never	usually	?
2 read newspapers?	often	never	?
3 get up before 7 o'clock?	sometimes	always	?

Now write sentences about Bob and Ann, George and yourself. Use **always/usually/often/sometimes/never**.

- 1 Bob and Ann never drink coffee in the morning.
 George.....in the morning.
 I.....
 2 Bob and Ann.....\.....newspapers.
 George.....
 I.....
 3

UNIT 6

I don't... (present simple negative)

► Unit 5 I **do/work/like** etc. (present simple)

■ The present simple negative is **don't/doesn't** + verb:



She doesn't smoke.



He doesn't work.

positive

negative

I we you they	work play do like	I we you they	do not (don't)	work play do' like
he she it	works plays does likes	he she it	does not (doesn't)	

- I **drink** coffee but I **don't drink** tea.
- Sue **drinks** tea but she **doesn't drink** coffee.
- You **don't speak** English very well.
- They **don't watch** television very often.
- Rice **doesn't grow** in cold countries.
- We **don't know** many people in this town.

■ We use **don't/doesn't** + *infinitive* (like/do/speak/work etc.):

- I **don't like** washing the car. I **don't do** it very often.
- She speaks Spanish but she **doesn't speak** Italian, (not 'she doesn't speaks')

■ Remember:

I/we/you/they **don't** - I **don't** like football.
he/she/it **doesn't** - He **doesn't** like football.

- I **don't** like Fred and Fred **doesn't** like me. (not 'Fred don't like')
- My car **doesn't** use much petrol, (not 'my car don't use')
- Sometimes he is late but it **doesn't** happen very often.

► Unit 7 **Do you ... ?** (present simple questions)

UNIT 6 Exercises

6.1 Write the negative.

- 1 I play the piano very well. *I don't play the piano very well.*
- 2 Jack plays the piano very well. Jack.....very well.
- 3 You know the answer.....
- 4 She works very hard.....
- 5 They do the same thing every day.....

6.2 Write the opposite (positive or negative).

- 1 I understand. *I don't understand.*
- 2 He doesn't smoke. *He smokes.*
- 3 They know. They.....
- 4 She loves him.....
- 5 They speak English.....
- 6 I don't want it.....
- 7 She doesn't want them.....
- 8 He lives in Rome.....

6.3 Study the information and write sentences with like.

1 classical music?	yes	no	?
2 boxing?	no	yes	?
3 horror films?	no	yes	?
4 dogs?	yes	no	?

- 1 *Bill and Rose like classical music.*
- 2 Bill and Rose.....boxing.
- 3 Bill and Rose.....
- 4.....dogs.

6.4 Complete the sentences. All of them are negative. Use **don't/doesn't** + one of these verbs:

cost drive go know play see sell ~~smoke~~ wash wear

- 1 'Have a cigarette.' 'No, thank you. I *don't smoke.*
- 2 They.....newspapers in that shop.
- 3 She has a car but she.....very often.
- 4 I like films but I.....to the cinema very often.
- 5 He smells because he.....very often.
- 6 It's a cheap hotel. It.....much to stay there.
- 7 He likes football but he.....very often.
- 8 I.....much about politics.
- 9 She is married but she.....a ring.
- 10 He lives near our house but we.....him very often.

UNIT 7

Do you ...? (present simple questions)

► Unit 5 I **do/work/like** etc. (present simple)

► Unit 6 I **don't...** (present simple negative)

■ We use **do/does** in present simple questions:

positive

i we you they	work play do like
he she it	works plays does likes

question

do	I we you they	work? play? do? like?
does	he she it	



■ The word order in these questions is:

do/does + *subject* + *infinitive*

Where	Do	you		work	on Saturdays?
	do	your parents		live?	
How often	Do	they		like	music?
What	do	you		wash	your hair?
	do	you	usually	do	at weekends?
How much	Does	Chris	often	play	tennis?
What	does	it		cost	to fly to Rome?
	does	this word		mean?	

What do you do? = What's your job?

- 'What do you do?' i work in a bank.'

■ Remember:

do I/we/you/they - **Do they** like music?
does he/she/it - **Does he** like music?

■ *short answers*

Yes, {	I/we/you/they do. he/she/it does.
--------	--

No, {	I/we/you/they don't. he/she/it doesn't.
-------	--

- 'Do you smoke?' 'No, I don't.'
- 'Do they speak English?' 'Yes, they do.'
- 'Does he work hard?' 'Yes, he does.'
- 'Does your sister live in London?' 'No, she doesn't.'

► Unit 8 I **am doing** (present continuous) and I **do** (present simple)

UNIT 7 Exercises

7.1 You are asking somebody questions. Write questions with **Do/Does ... ?**

- 1 I work hard. And you? Do you work hard?
- 2 I play tennis. And you? you.....?
- 3 I play tennis. And Ann? Ann.....?
- 4 I know the answer. And you?.....the answer?.....?
- 5 I like hot weather. And you?.....?
- 6 I smoke. And your father?.....?
- 7 I do exercises every morning. And you?.....?
- 8 I speak English. And your friends?.....?
- 9 I want to be famous. And you?.....?



These questions begin with **Where/What/How ...?**

- 10 I wash my hair twice a week, (how often / you?) How often do you wash your hair?
- 11 I live in London, (where / you?) Where.....?
- 12 I watch TV every day. (how often / you?) How.....?
- 13 I have lunch at home, (where / you?).....?
- 14 I get up at 7.30. (what time / you?).....?
- 15 I go to the cinema a lot. (how often / you?).....?
- 16 I go to work by bus. (how / you?).....?

7.2 Use the verbs in the list to make questions. Use the word(s) in brackets ().

cost do do go have like ~~play~~ rain smoke speak



- 1 (he) Does he often play volleyball?
- 2 (you) Excuse me, English?
- 3 (you) What.....?
- 4 (your sister) What.....?
- 5 (she).....?
- 6 (it) How often.....in summer?
- 7 (you).....dancing?
- 8 (they) What time.....usually.....to bed?
- 9 (you) What.....usually.....for breakfast?
- 10 (it) How much.....to stay at this hotel?



Yes, he's a very good player.
Yes, a little.
I'm a secretary.
She works in a shop.
Yes, 20 cigarettes a day.
Not often. It's usually dry.
Yes, I love it.
10 o'clock.
Toast and coffee.
£30 a night.

7.3 Write positive or negative short answers (**Yes, he does / No, I don't** etc.).

- 1 Do you smoke? No, I don't.
- 2 Do you live in a big city?.....
- 3 Do you drink a lot of coffee?.....
- 4 Does your mother speak English?.....
- 5 Do you play a musical instrument?.....
- 6 Does it rain a lot where you live?.....

UNIT 8

I am doing (present continuous) and I do (present simple)

► Units 3-4 *present continuous*

► Units 5-7 *present simple*

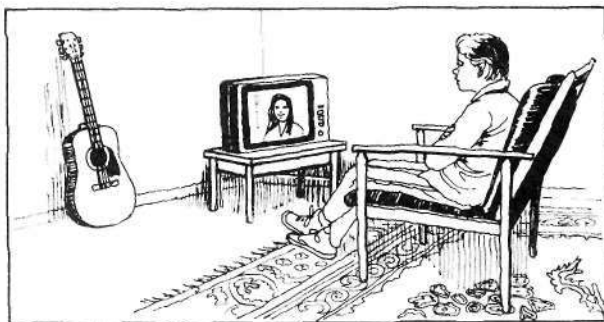
Jim is watching television.
He is *not* playing the guitar.

But Jim has a guitar.
He often plays it and he plays very well.

Jim **plays** the guitar
but he **is not playing** the guitar now.

Is he **playing** the guitar? **No, he isn't.** (*present continuous*)

Does he **play** the guitar? **Yes, he does.** (*present simple*)



■ *Present continuous (I am doing)* - now, at the time of speaking'.

I am doing

past ← ————— **-NOW** ————— → future

- Please be quiet. **I'm working.**
- Tom **is having** a shower at the moment.
- Take an umbrella. It's **raining.**
- You can turn off the television. **I'm not watching** it.
- Why are you under the table? What **are you doing?**

■ *Present simple (I do)* - in general, all the time or sometimes:

← ————— **I do** ————— →

past ← ————— **NOW** ————— → future

- **I work** every day from 9 o'clock until 5.00.
- Tom **has** a shower every morning.
- It **rains** a lot in winter.
- **I don't watch** television very often.
- What do **you** usually do at the weekend?

• Do *not* use these verbs in the present continuous (**I am -ing**):

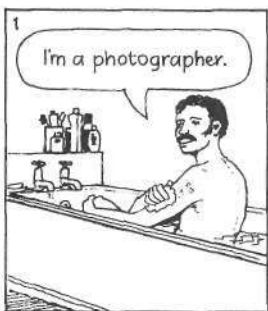
want like love hate need prefer depend know mean
understand believe remember forget

Use the present simple only (**I want/do you like?** etc.):

- I'm tired. **I want** to go home, (*not* 'I'm wanting')
- '**Do you know** that girl?' 'Yes, but I **forget** her name.'
- **I don't understand.** What **do you mean?**

UNIT 8 Exercises

8.1 Answer the questions about the pictures.



- 1 Does he take photographs? Yes, he does. Is he taking a photograph? No, he isn't.
What is he doing? He's having a bath.
- 2 Does she drive a bus? Is she driving a bus?
What is she doing?
- 3 Does he clean windows? Is he cleaning a window?
What is he doing?
- 4 Do they teach? Are they teaching?
What are they doing?

8.2 Put in **am/is/are/do/don't/does/doesn't**.

- 1 Excuse me, ~~W~~? you speak English?
- 2 'Have a cigarette.' 'No, thank you, I smoke.'
- 3 Why you laughing at me?
- 4 'What she do?' 'She's a dentist.'
- 5 I want to go out. It raining.
- 6 'Where you come from?' 'From Canada.'
- 7 How much it cost to send a letter to Canada?
- 8 I can't talk to you at the moment. I working.
- 9 George is a good tennis player but he play very often.

8.3 Put the verb in the **present continuous (I am doing)** or **present simple (I do)**.

- 1 Excuse me, do you speak (you/speak) English?
- 2 Tom is having (have) a shower at the moment.
- 3 They don't watch (not/watch) television very often.
- 4 Listen! Somebody (sing).
- 5 She's tired. She (want) to go home now.
- 6 How often (you/read) a newspaper?
- 7 'Excuse me, but you (sit) in my place.' 'Oh, I'm sorry.'
- 8 I'm sorry, I' (not/understand). Please speak more slowly.
- 9 'Where are you, Roy?' 'I'm in the sitting-room. I (read).'
- 10 What time (she/finish) work every day?
- 11 You can turn off the radio. I (not/listen) to it.
- 12 He (not/usually/drive) to work.
He usually (walk).

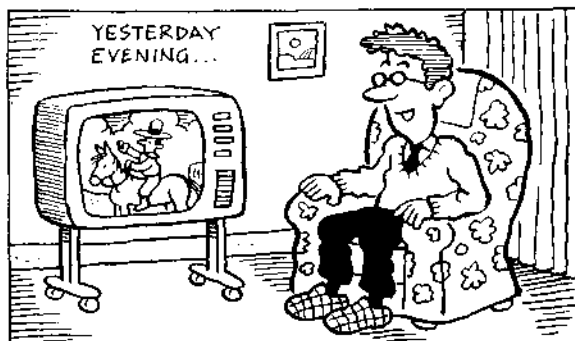
UNIT 9 I watched/cleaned/went etc. (past simple)

I **watch** television every evening.
(present simple)

I **watched** television **yesterday** evening.
(past simple)

watched is the *past simple*:

I/we/you/they he/she/it	watched
----------------------------	---------



■ The past simple is often -ed. For example:

work → worked	clean → cleaned	start → started
stay → stayed	live → lived	dance → danced

These verbs are *regular* verbs.

- I clean my teeth every morning. This morning **I cleaned** my teeth.
- Terry **worked** in a bank from 1981 to 1986.
- Yesterday it **rained** all morning. It **stopped** at lunchtime.
- We **enjoyed** the party last night. We **danced** a lot and **talked** to a lot of people. The party **finished** at midnight.

Spelling ► Appendix 4 (4.2 and 4.4):

study → studied	marry → married
stop → stopped	plan → planned

• Some verbs are *irregular* (not regular). The past simple is *not* -ed. Here are some important irregular verbs (see also Appendix 1-2):

begin → began	fall → fell	leave → left	sell → sold
break → broke	find → found	lose → lost	sit → sat
bring → brought	fly → flew	make → made	sleep → slept
build → built	forget → forgot	meet → met	speak → spoke
buy → bought	get → got	pay → paid	stand → stood
catch → caught	give → gave	put → put	take → took
come → came	go → went	read → read (/red/)	tell → told
do → did	have → had	ring → rang	think → thought
drink → drank	hear → heard	say → said	win → won
eat → ate	know → knew	see → saw	write → wrote

- I usually get up early but this morning I **got** up at 9.30.
- We **did** a lot of housework yesterday.
- Caroline **went** to the cinema three times last week.
- Mr Todd **came** into the room, **took** off his coat and **sat** down.

► Unit 10 I **didn't**... **Did** you ...? (past simple negative and questions)

UNIT 9 Exercises

9.1 Complete these sentences. Use one of these verbs in the past simple:

clean die enjoy finish happen live open play rain
smoke start stay want ~~watch~~

- 1 Yesterday evening I watched television.
- 2 I.....my teeth three times yesterday.
- 3 Bernard.....20 cigarettes yesterday evening.
- 4 The concert last night.....at 7.30 and.....at 10 o'clock.
- 5 The accident.....last Sunday afternoon.
- 6 When I was a child, I.....to be a doctor.
- 7 Mozart.....from 1756 to 1791.
- 8 We.....our holiday last year. We.....at a very good hotel.
- 9 Today the weather is nice, but yesterday it.....
- 10 It was hot in the room, so I.....the window.
- 11 The weather was good yesterday afternoon, so we.....tennis.
- 12 William Shakespeare.....in 1616.

9.2 Write the past of these verbs.

- | | | | | |
|--------|------------|---------|----------|----------|
| 1 get | <u>got</u> | 6 leave | 11 buy | 16 put |
| 2 eat | | 7 see | 12 know | 17 tell |
| 3 pay | | 8 go | 13 stand | 18 lose |
| 4 make | | 9 hear | 14 take | 19 think |
| 5 give | | 10 find | 15 do | 20 speak |

9.3 Write sentences about the past (**yesterday / last week** etc.).

- 1 He always goes to work by car. Yesterday he went to work by car.
- 2 They always get up early. This morning they
- 3 Bill often loses his keys. He.....last Saturday.
- 4 I write a letter to Jane every week. Last week.....
- 5 She meets her friends every evening. She.....yesterday evening.
- 6 I usually read two newspapers every day.....yesterday.
- 7 They come to my house every Friday. Last Friday
- 8 We usually go to the cinema on Sunday.....last Sunday.
- 9 Tom always has a shower in the morning.....this morning.
- 10 They buy a new car every year. Last year.....
- 11 I eat an orange every day. Yesterday
- 12 We usually do our shopping on Monday.....last Monday.
- 13 Ann often takes photographs. Last weekend.....
- 14 We leave home at 8.30 every morning.....this morning.

9.4 Write sentences about yourself. What did you do yesterday or what happened yesterday?

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4

UNIT 10 I **did** n't... Did you ... ? (past simple negative and questions)

► Unit 9 I **watched/cleaned/went** etc. (past simple)

■ We use **did** in past simple negatives and questions:

<i>infinitive</i>	<i>positive</i>	<i>negative</i>	<i>question</i>
watch clean play do go have begin	I watched we cleaned you played they did he went she had it began	I we you they did not (didn't) he she- it	watch? clean? play? do? go? have? begin?

■ **do/does** (present) → **did** (past):

- I **don't** watch television very often.
- I **didn't** watch television **yesterday**.
- **Does** she often go out?
- **Did** she go out **last night**?

■ We use **did/didn't** + *infinitive* (**watch/clean/do** etc.):

I **watched** *but* I **didn't watch** {not 'I didn't watched'}

he **went** *but* did he **go**? (not 'did he went?')

- I played tennis yesterday but I **didn't win**.
- Don **didn't have** breakfast this morning, (not 'Don hadn't breakfast')
- They **went** to the cinema but they **didn't enjoy** the film.
- We **didn't do** much work yesterday.

■ Note the word order in questions with **did**:

did + *subject* + *infinitive*

What	Did	Sue	give	you a birthday present?
How	did	you	do	yesterday evening?
Where	did	the accident	happen?	
	did	your parents	go	for their holidays?

■ *short answers*

Yes, { I/we/you/they } **did**.
 { he/she/it }

No, { I/we/you/they } **didn't**.
 { he/she/it }

- 'Did you see Joe yesterday?' 'No, I **didn't**.'
- 'Did it rain on Sunday?' 'Yes, it **did**.'
- 'Did Helen come to the party?' 'No, she **didn't**.'
- 'Did your friends have a good holiday?' 'Yes, they **did**.'

10.1 Complete these sentences with the verb in the negative.

- 1 I saw John but I didn't see Mary.
- 2 They worked on Monday but they.....on Tuesday.
- 3 We went to the shop but we.....to the bank.
- 4 She had a pen but she.....any paper.
- 5 Jack did French at school but he.....German.

10.2 You are asking somebody questions. Write questions with **Did ... ?**

- 1 I watched TV last night. And you? Did you watch TV last night ?
- 2 I enjoyed the party. And you?.....you.....?
- 3 I had a good holiday. And you?.....?
- 4 I got up early this morning. And you?.....?
- 5 I slept well last night. And you?.....?

10.3 What did *you* do yesterday? (Your sentence can be positive or negative.)

- 1 (watch TV) I watched TV yesterday. (or I didn't watch TV yesterday.)
- 2 (get up before 7.30) I.....
- 3 (have a shower) I.....
- 4 (buy a magazine).....
- 5 (speak English).....
- 6 (do an examination).....
- 7 (eat meat).....
- 8 (go to bed before 10.30)

10.4 Write questions with **Who/What/How/Why ... ?**

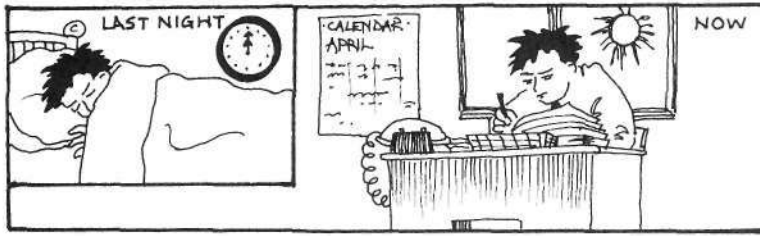
- 1 I met somebody. Who did you meet ?
- 2 Harry arrived. What time.....Harry.....?
- 3 I saw somebody. Who.....you.....?
- 4 They wanted something. What.....?
- 5 The meeting finished. What time.....?
- 6 Pat went home early. Why.....?
- 7 We had dinner. What.....for.....dinner?
- 8 It cost a lot of money. How much.....?

10.5 Put the verb in the correct form of the past (positive, negative or question).

- 1 I played (play) tennis yesterday but I didn't win (not/win).
- 2 We.....(wait) a long time for the bus but it.....(not/come).
- 3 That's a nice shirt. Where.....(you/buy) it?
- 4 She.....(see) me but she.....(not/speak) to me.
- 5 '.....(it/rain) yesterday?' 'No, it was a nice day.'
- 6 That was a stupid thing to do. Why.....(you/do) it?

UNIT 11

was/were



Now Charlie **is** at work.

At midnight last night he **wasn't** at work.

He **was** in bed.

He **was** asleep.

am/is (present) → was (past):

- I **am** tired (now).
- **Is** she at home (now)?
- The weather **is** nice today.

I **was** tired last night.

Was she at home yesterday morning?

The weather **was** nice yesterday.

are (present) → were (past):

- You **are** late (now).
- They **aren't** here (now).

You **were** late yesterday.

They **weren't** here last Sunday.

positive

I he she it	was
we you they	were

negative

I he she it	was not (wasn't)
we you they	were not (weren't)

question

was	I? he? she? it?
were	we? you? they?

- Last year she **was** 22, so she **is** 23 now.
- When I **was** a child, I **was** afraid of dogs.
- We **were** tired after the journey but we **weren't** hungry.
- The hotel **was** very comfortable and it **wasn't** expensive.
- Where **were** you at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon?
- **Was** the weather good when you **were** on holiday?
- Those shoes are nice. **Were** they expensive?
- Why **was** he angry yesterday?

short answers

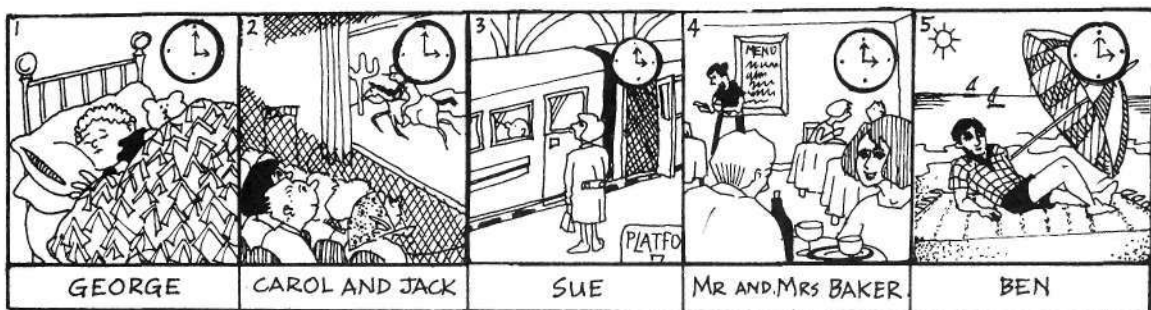
Yes, {	I/he/she/it	was.
	we/you/they	were.

No, {	I/he/she/it	wasn't,
	we/you/they	weren't.

- 'Were you late?' 'No, I **wasn't**.'
- 'Was Ted at work yesterday?' 'Yes, he **was**.'
- 'Were they at the party?' 'No, they **weren't**.'

UNIT 11 Exercises

11.1 Look at the pictures. Where were these people at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon?



- 1 George was in bed 4
 2 Carol and Jack 5
 3 Sue 6 And you? I

11.2 Put in **am/is/are/was/were**. Some sentences are present and some are past.

- 1 Last year she was 22, so she is 23 now.
 2 Today the weather nice, but yesterday it cold.
 3 I hungry. Can I have something to eat?
 4 I hungry last night, so I had something to eat.
 5 Where you at 11 o'clock last Friday morning?
 6 Don't buy those shoes. They too expensive.
 7 Why you so angry yesterday?
 8 We must go now. It very late.
 9 This time last year I in Paris.
 10 We tired when we arrived home, so we went to bed.
 11 Charlie Chaplin died in 1978. He a famous film star.
 12 'Where the children?' 'I don't know. They in the garden ten minutes ago.'

11.3 Put in **was/wasn't/were/weren't**.

- 1 We didn't like our hotel room. It was very small and it wasn't very clean.
 2 Kate got married when she 24 years old.
 3 I phoned you yesterday evening but you at home. Where you?
 4 George at work last week because he ill. He's better now.
 5 The shops open yesterday because it a public holiday.
 6 '..... you at home at 9.30?' 'No, I I at work.'

11.4 Write questions.



- 1 I saw a film.
 2 I met some people.
 3 I did an examination.
 4 I bought some boots.
 5 I went to a museum.

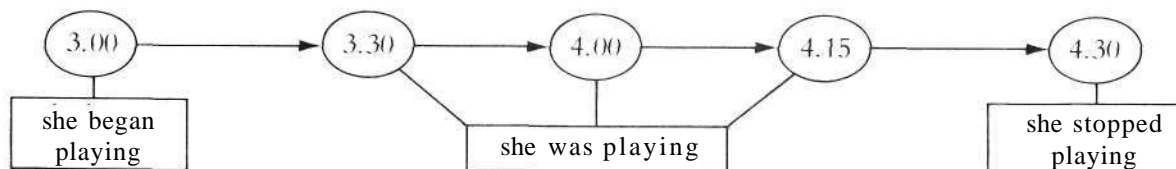
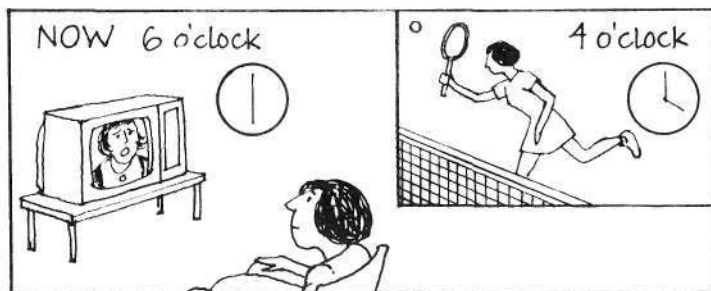


- (good?) Was it good ?
 (friendly?) ?
 (difficult?) ?
 (expensive?) ?
 (interesting?) ?

UNIT 12 I was doing (past continuous)

Now it is 6 o'clock.
Sarah is at home.
She is watching television.

At 4 o'clock she wasn't at home.
She was at the sports club.
She was playing tennis.
She wasn't watching television.



■ was/were -ing (doing/playing/working etc.) is the *past continuous* tense:

positive

I he she it	was -ing
we you they	were -ing

negative

I he she it	was not (wasn't)	-ing
we you they	were not (weren't)	-ing

question

was	I he she it	-ing?
were	we you they	-ing?

- "What were you doing at 11.30 yesterday?" I was working.'
- 'What did he say?' 'I don't know. I wasn't listening.'
- It was raining, so we didn't go out.
- In 1980 they were living in Canada.
- Today she's wearing a skirt, but yesterday she was wearing trousers.
- I woke up early yesterday. It was a beautiful morning. The sun was shining and the birds were singing.

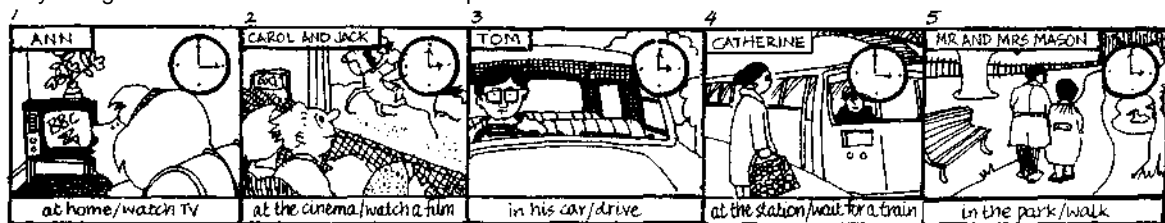
■ am/is/are -ing (*present*) → was/were -ing (*past*):

- I'm working (now). I was working at 10.30 last night.
- It isn't raining (now). It wasn't raining when we went out.
- What are you doing (now)? What were you doing at 3 o'clock?

Spelling (make → making run → running lie → lying etc.) ► Appendix 4 (4.3 and 4.4)

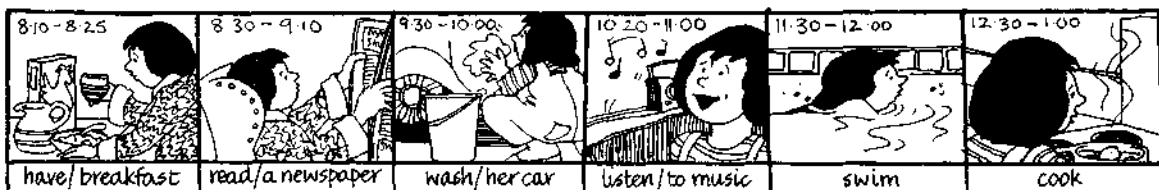
► Unit 13 I was doing (*past continuous*) and I did (*past simple*)

12.1 Look at the pictures. Where were these people at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon? And what were they doing? Write *two* sentences for each picture.



- 1 Ann was at home. She was watching TV.
 2 Carol and Jack.....They
 3 Tom.....
 4.....
 5.....
 6 Andyou? I.....I

12.2 Sarah did a lot of things yesterday morning. Look at the pictures and then write a sentence for each picture.



- 1 At 9.45 she was washing her car..... 4 At 12.50
 2 At 11.45 she..... 5 At 8.15
 3 At 9 o'clock..... 6 At 10.30

12.3 Write questions. Use **was/were -ing**.

- 1 (what / Tim / do / when you saw him?) What was Tim doing when you saw him? ..?
 2 (what / you / do / at 11 o'clock?) What.....?
 3 (what / she / wear / yesterday?).....?
 4 (it / rain / when you went out?).....?
 5 (where / you / live / in 1981?).....?

12.4 Look at the picture. You saw Joe in the street yesterday afternoon. What was he doing? Write positive or negative sentences.



- 1 (he / wear / a jacket) He wasn't wearing a jacket.
 2 (he / smoke / a pipe)
 3 (he / carry / a bag)
 4 (he / carry / an umbrella)
 5 (he / go / to the dentist)
 6 (he / wear / a hat)

UNIT 13

I was doing (past continuous) and I did (past simple)



Jack was reading a book.



The phone rang.



He stopped reading.



He answered the phone.

What **happened**? The phone **rang**, (*past simple*)

What **was Jack doing** when the phone rang?

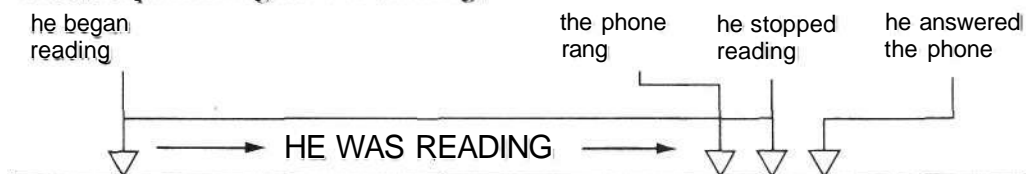
He **was reading** a book, (*past continuous*)

What **did** he **do** when the phone rang?

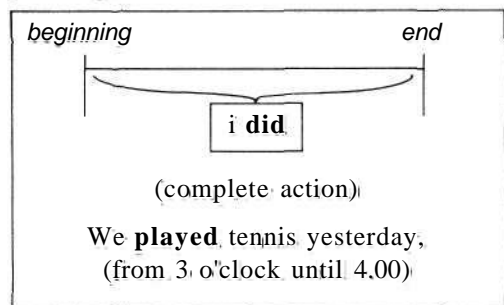
He **stopped** reading and **answered** the phone, (*past simple*)

Jack began reading *before* the phone rang. So:

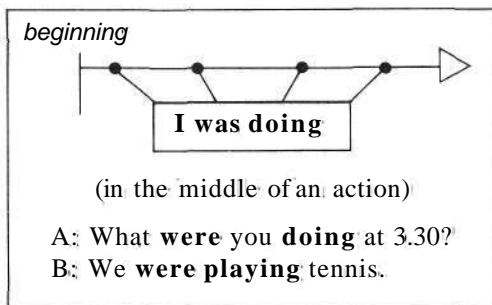
When the phone rang, he **was reading**.



past simple



past continuous

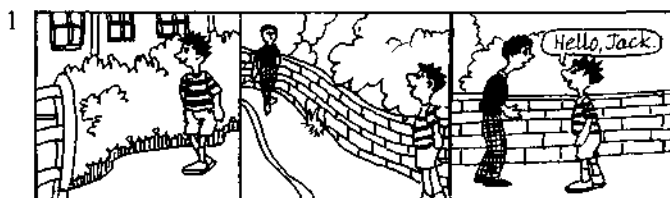


- Jack **was reading** the newspaper when the phone **rang**.
- but Jack **read** the newspaper yesterday.
- **Were you watching** television when **I phoned** you?
- but **Did you watch** the film on television last night?
- **I started** work at 9.00 and **finished** at 4.30. At 2.30 **I was working**.
- When we **went** out, it **was raining**. (= it started raining *before* we went out)
- I **saw** Lucy and Tom this morning. They **were standing** at the bus-stop.
- Joy **fell** asleep while she **was reading**. (*while* ► Unit 93)

UNIT 13 Exercises

13.1 Look at the pictures and write sentences. Use the past continuous or past simple.

Example (see the pictures opposite): (Jack / read / a book) Jack was reading a book.
 (the phone / ring) The phone rang.
 (he / answer / the phone) He answered the phone.



(Tom / walk / down the street)
 Tom
 (he / see / Jack)

 (he / say / hello)



(they / sit / in the garden)

 (it / start / to rain)

 (they / go / into the house)



(Carol / paint / the room)

 (she/fall/off the ladder)

 (she / break / her arm)

13.2 Put the verb into the past continuous (**I was doing**) or past simple (**I did**).

- 1 When we went (go), out, it was raining (rain).
- 2 I wasn't hungry last night. I didn't eat (not/eat) anything.
- 3 Were you watching (you/watch) television when I phoned (phone) you?
- 4 Jane wasn't at home when I went to see her. She (work).
- 5 I (get) up early this morning. I (wash),
 (dress) and then I (have) breakfast.
- 6 The postman (come) while I (have) breakfast.
- 7 We (meet) Joan at the party. She (wear) a
 red dress.
- 8 The boys (break) a window when they (play)
 football.
- 9 I was late but my friends (wait) for me when I
 (arrive).
- 10 I (get) up at 7 o'clock. The sun (shine), so I
 (go) for a walk.
- 11 He (not/drive) fast when the accident (happen).
- 12 Margaret (not/go) to work yesterday. She was ill.
- 13 'What (you/do) on Saturday evening?' I went to the cinema.'
- 14 'What (you/do) at 9.30 on Saturday evening?'
 'I (watch) a film in the cinema.'

UNIT 14 have/has (got)

- You can say **have** or **have got**, **has** or **has got**:

<div>I we you they</div> <div>}</div>	<div>have</div>	=	<div>I we you they</div> <div>}</div>	<div>have got</div>	<div>(I've got) (we've got) (you've got) (they've got)</div>
<div>he she it</div> <div>}</div>	<div>has</div>	=	<div>he she it</div> <div>}</div>	<div>has got</div>	<div>(he's got) (she's got) (it's got)</div>



- **I've got** blue eyes, (or **I have** blue eyes.)
- Tim **has got** two sisters, (or Tim **has** two sisters.)
- They like animals. They've **got** a horse, three dogs and six cats.
- This car **has got** four doors.
- I don't feel very well. I've **got** a headache.

She's **got** a headache.
or She **has** a headache.

negative

I we you they	have not (haven't)	got
he she it	has not (hasn't)	

question

have	I we you they	got?
has	he she it	

short answers

Yes, No,	I we you they	have. haven't.
Yes, No,	he she it	has. hasn't.

- **I've got** a motor-bike but **I haven't got** a car.
- Mr and Mrs Harrison **haven't got** any children.
- It's a nice house but it **hasn't got** a garden.
- '**Have you got** a camera?' '**Yes, I have.**'
- 'What **have you got** in your bag?' 'Nothing. It's empty.'
- '**Has Ann got** a car?' '**Yes, she has.**'
- What kind of car **has she got**?

- In negatives and questions you can also use **do/does + have**:

- They **don't have** any children. (= They **haven't got** any children.)
- It's a nice house but it **doesn't have** a garden. (= it **hasn't got** a garden)
- **Does Ann have** a car? (= **Has Ann got** a car?)
- How much money **do** you have? (= How much money **have** you **got**?)

- The past is **had**. In negatives and questions we use **did + have** (• Units 9-10):

- I **had** some money. I **didn't** have any money. **Did** you have any money?

UNIT 14 Exercises

14.1 Write the short form (we've got/he hasn't got etc.).

- 1 we have got we've got 3 they have got 5 it has got
2 he has got 4 she has not got 6 I have not got

14.2 Write questions.

- 1 (you / a camera?) Have you got a camera ?
2 (you / a passport?) ?
3 (your father / a car?) ?
4 (Carol / many friends?) ?
5 (Mr and Mrs Lewis / any children?) ?
6 (how much money / you?) ?
7 (what kind of car/John?) ?

14.3 What have Ann and Jim got? What have you got? Look at the information and write sentences about Ann, Jim and yourself.

	Ami (she)	Jim (he)	you?
a camera	no	yes	?
a bicycle	yes	no	?
black hair	no	no	?
brothers/sisters	two brothers	one sister	?

- 1 (Jim / a camera) Jim has got a camera. 8 (Ann / two brothers)
2 (I / black hair) I've got black hair.
 (or I haven't got black hair.) 9 (Jim / black hair)
3 (Ann / a camera) Ann
4 (I / a camera) I 10 (Ann / a bicycle)
5 (I / a bicycle) 11 (Jim / a sister)
6 (Jim / a bicycle) 12 (I / brothers / sisters)
7 (Ann / black hair)

14.4 Put in have got ('ve got), has got ('s got), haven't got or hasn't got.

- 1 They like animals. They 've got three dogs and two cats.
2 Sarah hasn't got a car. She goes everywhere by bicycle.
3 Everybody likes Tom. He a lot of friends.
4 Mr and Mrs Johnson two children, a boy and a girl.
5 An insect six legs.
6 I can't open the door. I a key.
7 Quick! Hurry! We much time.
8 'What's wrong?' 'I something in my eye.'
9 Ben doesn't read much. He many books.
10 It's a nice town. It a very nice shopping centre.
11 Alice is going to the dentist. She toothache.
12 'Where's my newspaper?' 'I don't know. I it.'
13 Julia wants to go on holiday but she any money.
14 I'm not going to work today. I a bad cold.

UNIT 15

I have done (present perfect 1)



His shoes are dirty.



He is cleaning his shoes.



He **has cleaned** his shoes.
(= his shoes are clean *now*)



They are at home.



They are going out.



They **have gone** out.
(= they are not at home *now*)

- has cleaned / have gone etc. is the *present perfect* (have/has + *past participle**):

I we you they	have ('ve) have not (haven't)	cleaned finished done been bought taken begun
he she it	has ('s), has not (hasn't)	

have	I we you they	cleaned? finished? done? been? bought? taken? begun?
has	he she it	

- We use the present perfect for *an action in the past* with a result *now*:
 - I've **lost** my passport. (= I can't find my passport *now*)
 - She's (= she **has**) **gone** to bed. (= she is in bed *now*)
 - We've **bought** a new car. (= we have a new car *now*)
 - It's Kay's birthday tomorrow and I **haven't bought** her a present.
 - 'Bob is on holiday.' 'Oh, where **has he gone**?'
 - 'Are they still having dinner?' 'No, they've **finished**.'

*The past participle of regular verbs is **-ed**:

clean → have **cleaned** finish → have **finished** stop → have **stopped**

The past participle of irregular verbs is sometimes the same as the past simple and sometimes different. For example:

the same: lose → have **lost** make → have **made** have → have **had**
different: do → have **done** see → have **seen** write → have **written**

For a list of irregular past participles see Appendix 1-2.

- Unit 16 **Have you ever...?** (*present perfect 2*)
- Unit 17 **How long have you ...?** (*present perfect 3*)
- Unit 19 **I have done** (*present perfect*) and **I did** (*past simple*)
- Unit 89 *present perfect + yet*

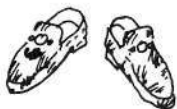
UNIT 15 Exercises

15.1 Look at the pictures. What has happened?

before

now

1



(he / clean / his shoes)

He has cleaned his shoes.

2



(she / close / the door)

She

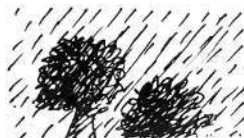
3



(they / go / to bed)

.....

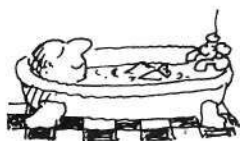
4



(it / stop / raining)

.....

5



(he / have / a bath)

.....

6



(the picture / fall / down)

.....

15.2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the list. Use the present perfect (have/has + the past participle of the verb).

break buy ~~finish~~ do go go lose paint read take

1 'Are they still having dinner?' 'No, they have finished.'

2 I some new shoes. Do you want to see them?

3 'Is Tom here?' 'No, he to work.'

4 '.....' you the shopping?' 'No, I'm going to do it later.'

5 'Where's your key?' 'I don't know. I it.'

6 Look! Somebody that window.

7 Your house looks different you it?

8 I can't find my umbrella. Somebody it.

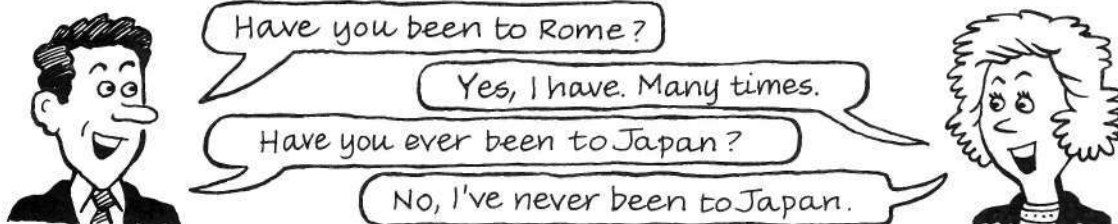
9 I'm looking for Sarah. Where she?

10 'Do you want the newspaper?' 'No, thanks. I it.'

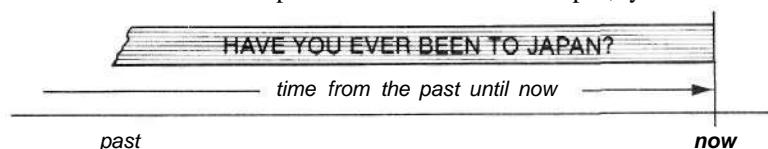
UNIT 16

Have you ever... ? (present perfect 2)

► Unit 15 I have done (present perfect 1)



- We use the *present perfect* (**have been** / **have played** / **have done** etc.) when we talk about a time from the past until now - for example, your life:



- '**Have you been** to France?' (in your life) 'No, **I haven't**.'
- **I've been** to Canada but **I haven't been** to the United States.
- She is an interesting person. She **has done** many different jobs and **has visited** many countries.
- **I've seen** that woman before but I can't remember when.
- How many times **has Brazil won** the World Cup?
- '**Have you read** this book?' 'Yes, I've **read** it twice.' (= two times)
- You can use the *present perfect* + **ever** (in questions) and **never**:
 - '**Has Ann ever been** to Australia?' 'No, never.'
 - '**Have you ever played** golf?' 'Yes, once.' (= one time)
 - My mother **has never travelled** by air.
 - **I've never ridden** a horse.

• gone and been



He's **gone** to Spain.
(= he is in Spain now)



He's **been** to Spain.
(= he went to Spain but now he is back)

Compare:

- I can't find Susan. Where **has she** gone? (= Where is she now?)
- Oh, hello, Susan. I was looking for you. Where **have you** been?

► Unit 19 I have done (present perfect) and I did (past simple)

16.1 You are asking Ann questions beginning **Have you ever...** ? Write the questions.



- 1 (Paris'). Have you ever been to Paris ?
- 2 (play/ golf?). Have you ever played golf ?
- 3 (Australia?) Have ?
- 4 (lose / your passport?) ?
- 5 (sleep / in a park?) ?
- 6 (eat / Chinese food?) ?
- 7 (New York') ?
- 8 (win / a lot of money?) ?
- 9 (break / your leg?) ?

- No, never.
 Yes, many times.
 No, never.
 Yes, once.
 No, never.
 Yes, a few times.
 Yes, twice.
 No, never.
 Yes, once.

16.2 Look at Ann's answers in Exercise 1. Write sentences about Ann and yourself.

Ann

You

- 1 Ann has never been to Paris
- 2 Ann has played golf many times
- 3 She
- 4 She
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9

- 1 I have been to Paris twice
- 2 I
- 3 I
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9

16.3 Mary is 65 years old. She has had an interesting life. Write sentences about the things she has done. Use the present perfect.

- 1 (she / do / many different jobs) She has done many different jobs
- 2 (she / travel / to many places) She
- 3 (she / do / a lot of interesting things)
- 4 (she / write / ten books)
- 5 (she / meet / a lot of interesting people)
- 6 (she / be / married five times)

16.4 Put in **gone** or **been**.

- 1 He's on holiday at the moment. He's gone to Spain.
- 2 "Where's Jill?" 'She's not here. I think she's.....to the bank.'
- 3 'Hello, Pat. Where have you.....?' 'I've.....to the bank.'
- 4 'Have you ever.....to Mexico?' 'No, never.'
- 5 My parents aren't at home this evening. They've.....out.
- 6 There's a new restaurant in town. Have you.....to it?
- 7 Paris is a wonderful city. I've.....there many times.
- 8 Helen was here earlier but I think she's.....now.

UNIT 17

How long have you ...? (present perfect 3)

Jill is on holiday in London.

She arrived in London on Monday.

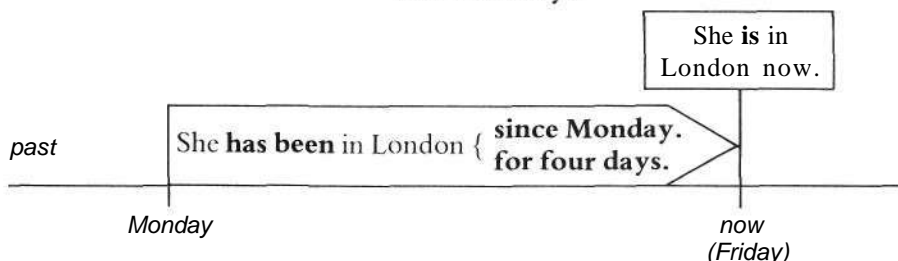
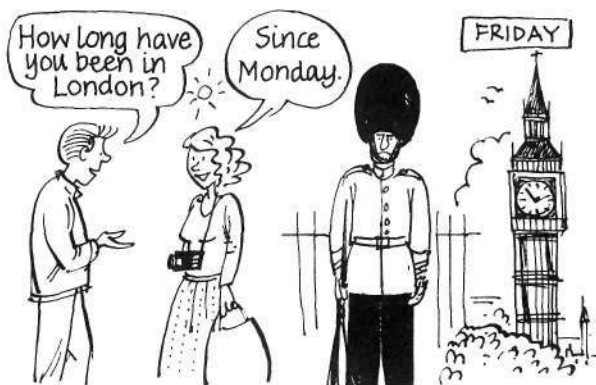
Today is Friday.

How long **has she been** in London?

She **has been** in London { **since Monday.**
for four days.

She **is** in London now. (**is** = present)

but She **has been** in London { **since Monday.**
for four days. (**has been** = present perfect)



Compare:

present simple

present perfect

Harry is in Canada.	but	He has been in Canada since April. (not 'He is in Canada since April.')
Are you married?	but	How long have you been married? (not 'How long are you married?')
Do you know Sarah?	but	How long have you known her? (not 'How long do you know her?')
Linda lives in London,	but	I've known her for a long time. How long has she lived in London?
We have a car.	but	She has lived there all her life. How long have you had your car?
		We've had it for a year.

present continuous

present perfect continuous (have been -ing)

I'm learning German.	but	How long have you been learning German? I've been learning German for six weeks.
It's raining.	but	It's been (= it has been) raining since I got up this morning.

17.1 Complete these sentences.

- 1 Jill is in London. She has been in London since Monday.
- 2 I know George. I have known him for a long time.
- 3 They are married. They have been married since 1983.
- 4 Brian is ill. He has been ill for a week.
- 5 We live in this house. We have lived here for ten years.
- 6 I know Tom very well. I have known him for a long time.
- 7 We are waiting for you. We have been waiting since 8 o'clock.
- 8 Alice works in a bank. She has been in a bank for five years.
- 9 I'm learning English. I have been learning English for six months.
- 10 She has a headache. She has had a headache since she got up.

17.2 Make questions with **How long ...?**

- 1 Jill is in London. How long has she been in London? ?
- 2 I know George. How long have you known him? ?
- 3 Mike and Judy are in Brazil. How long? ?
- 4 Diana is learning Italian. How long? ?
- 5 My brother lives in Germany. How long? ?
- 6 It is raining. How long? ?
- 7 Bill is a teacher. How long? ?
- 8 I know Margaret. How long? ?
- 9 I have a motor-bike. How long? ?
- 10 Linda and Frank are married. How long? ?
- 11 Alan works in London. How long? ?

17.3 Write a sentence for each picture. Use the words below the pictures.



for ten years



since Sunday



for two hours



all day



all her life



for five years

1 They have been married for ten years.

2 He has been since Sunday.

3 They have been television.

4 It has been all day.

5 She has been

6 He has been

UNIT 18 for since ago

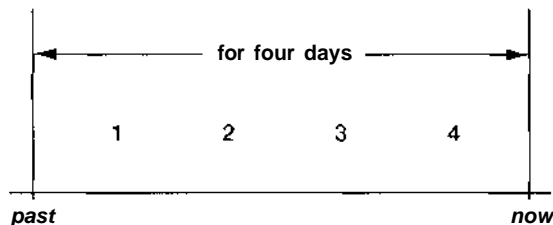
► Unit 17 How long have you ... ? (present perfect 3)

• for and since:

We use **for** and **since** to say *how long*:

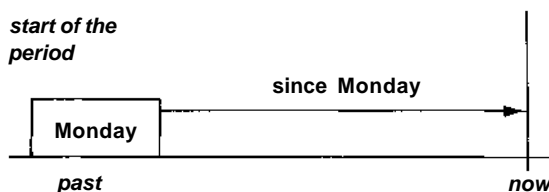
- Jill has been in London { for four days.
since Monday.

We use **for** + a period of time (four days / two years etc.):



for	four days	ten minutes
	an hour	two hours
	a week	three weeks
	a month	six months
	five years	a long time

We use **since** + the start of the period (Monday / 9 o'clock etc.):



since	Monday	Wednesday
	9 o'clock	12.30
	24 July	10 October
	December 1985	Christmas
		I got up

Compare:

- Barry has been in Canada **since January**. (= from January to now)
Barry has been in Canada **for six months**, (not 'since six months')
- I've known her **since 1980**. (= from 1980 to now)
I've known her **for a long time**, (not 'since a long time')

► Unit 92 from... to until since for

• ago = before now:

- Susan **started** her new job **two weeks ago**. (= two weeks before now)
- 'When **did Tom go** out?' 'Ten minutes **ago**.' (= ten minutes before now)
- I **had** dinner **an hour ago**. (= an hour before now)
- Life **was** very different **a hundred years ago**.

We use **ago** with the *past simple* (did/had/started etc.).

Compare **ago** and **for**:

- **When did she arrive** in London?
She **arrived** in London **four days ago**.
- **How long has she been** in London?
She **has been** in London **for four days**.

UNIT 18 Exercises

18.1 Write **for** or **since**.

- 1 She's been in London ^{since} Sunday.
- 2 She's been in London ^{for} four days.
- 3 Mike has been ill a long time. He's been in hospital October.
- 4 My aunt has lived in Australia 15 years.
- 5 Nobody lives in those houses. They have been empty many years.
- 6 Mrs Harris is in her office. She's been there 7 o'clock.
- 7 India has been an independent country 1947.
- 8 The bus is late. We've been waiting 20 minutes.

18.2 When was ... ? Use **ago** in your answers.

- 1 your last meal? (i the last time you drank coffee?)
- 2 last December?
- 3 1984? 7 the last time you were in a car?
- 4 the last time you were ill?
- 5 the last time you went to the cinema? 8 the last time you read a newspaper?

18.3 Answer the questions. Use the words in brackets () + **for** or **ago**.

- 1 (four days) When did she arrive in London? ^{four days ago}
- 2 (four days) How long has she been in London? ^{for four days}
- 3 (20 years) How long have they been married?
- 4 (20 years) When did they get married?
- 5 (ten minutes) When did Dan arrive?
- 6 (two months) When did you buy those shoes?
- 7 (two months) How long has she been learning English?
- 8 (a long time) How long have you known Jan?
- 9 (an hour) What time did you have lunch?

18.4 Complete the sentences with **for** ... or **since** ...

- 1 She is in London now. She arrived there four days ago. ^{She has been there for four days.}
- 2 Jack is here. He arrived here on Thursday. He has
- 3 It is raining. It started an hour ago. It's been
- 4 I know Sue. I first met Sue two years ago. I've
- 5 I have a camera. I bought it in 1985. I've
- 6 They are married. They got married six months ago. They've
- 7 Liz is studying medicine at university. She started three years ago.
She has

18.5 Write sentences about yourself. Begin with the words in brackets ().

- 1 (I've lived)
- 2 (I've been)
- 3 (I've been learning)
- 4 (I've had)
- 5 (I've known)

UNIT 19

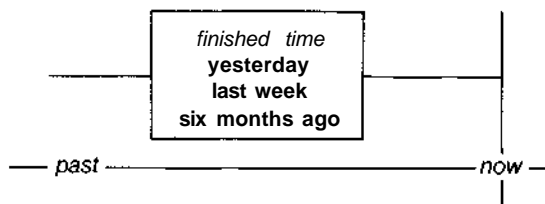
I have done (*present perfect*) and I did (*past simple*)

► Units 15-17 (*present perfect*) ► Units 9-10 (*past simple*)

- We use the *past simple* (**did/arrived/saw/was** etc.) with a *finished time* (**yesterday/last week/in 1986/six months ago** etc.):

past + finished time

We arrived	yesterday
	last week
	at 3 o'clock
	in 1986
	six months ago



- We do *not* use the *present perfect* (**have done / have arrived / have been** etc.) with a finished time:
 - I **saw** Jack **yesterday**, (not 'I have seen Jack yesterday.')
 - Where **were** you **last night**? (not 'Where have you been last night?')
 - We **didn't have** a holiday **last year**, (not 'We haven't had')
 - I **got up at 7.15**. I **washed, dressed** and then I **had** breakfast.
 - William Shakespeare (1564—1616) **was** a writer. He **wrote** many plays and poems. (not '... has been a writer ... has written many plays')

Use the *past simple* to ask **When?** or **What time?:**

- When did they arrive?** (not 'When have they arrived?')

• Compare:
present perfect

past simple

I have lost my key.

(= I can't find it *now*)

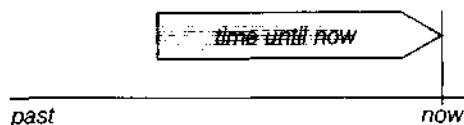
Bill **has gone** home.

(= he isn't here *now*)

Have you seen Ann?

(= where is she *now*?)

time until now (present perfect)



Have you ever been to Spain?

(= in your life, until *now*)

My friend is a writer. He **has written** many books.

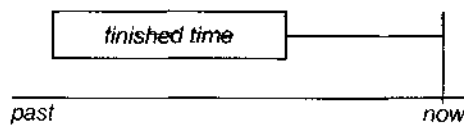
We've **lived** in Singapore for six years, (we live there *now*)

but **I lost** my key **yesterday**.

but Bill **went** home **ten minutes ago**.

but **When did** you **see** Ann?

finished time (past simple)



but **Did you go** to Spain **last year**?

but Shakespeare **wrote** many plays and poems.

but We **lived** in Glasgow for six years but now we live in Singapore.

UNIT 19 Exercises

19.1 Use the words in brackets () to answer the questions.



- | | | |
|---|-----------------------------|---|
| 1 | Have you lost your key? | (yesterday) <u>Yes, I lost it yesterday.</u> |
| 2 | Have you seen Alan? | (ten minutes ago) Yes, I.....ten minutes ago. |
| 3 | Have you painted the gate? | (last week) Yes, we.....it..... |
| 4 | Has Sarah gone to France? | (on Friday) Yes, she..... |
| 5 | Have they had dinner? | (at 7 o'clock) |
| 6 | Has he started his new job? | (yesterday) |

19.2 Write questions with **When ... ?** and **What time ... ?**



- | | | |
|---|---------------------|---|
| 1 | They have arrived. | What time <u>did they arrive</u>? |
| 2 | Bill has gone out. | What time.....? |
| 3 | I've seen Carol. | When.....you.....? |
| 4 | She's left her job. | When.....? |

19.3 In these sentences the verbs are underlined. Are they right or wrong? Correct the verbs that are wrong.

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------|
| 1 Tom <u>arrived</u> last week. | <u>RIGHT</u> |
| 2 Have you seen Pam last week? | <u>WRONG</u> <u>Did you see</u> |
| 3 I <u>have finished</u> my work..... | |
| 4 I <u>have finished</u> my work at 2 o'clock..... | |
| 5 When have you <u>finished</u> your work?..... | |
| 6 George <u>has left</u> school three years ago..... | |
| 7 'Where's Ann?' 'She's <u>gone</u> to the cinema.' | |
| 8 Napoleon Bonaparte <u>has died</u> in 1821..... | |
| 9 <u>Have</u> you ever <u>been</u> to Britain?..... | |
| 10 I <u>haven't seen</u> you at the party on Saturday..... | |
| 11 The weather <u>has been</u> very bad last week..... | |

19.4 Put the verb in the present perfect (I have done) or the past simple (I did).

- | |
|---|
| 1 My friend is a w r She <u>has written</u> t e) many books. |
| 2 We <u>didn't have</u> (not / have) a holiday last year. |
| 3 <u>Did you see</u> (you / see) Alan last week? |
| 4 I.....(play) tennis yesterday afternoon. |
| 5 What time.....(y ^{ou} I g ^o) to bed last night? |
| 6.....(y ^{ou} / ever / be) to the United States? |
| 7 My hair is clean. I.....(wash) it. |
| 8 I.....(wash) my hair before breakfast this morning. |
| 9 When I was a child, I.....(not / like) sport. |
| 10 Kathy loves travelling. She.....(visit) many countries. |
| 11 John works in a bookshop. He.....(work) there for three years. |
| 12 Last year we.....(go) to Finland for a holiday. We.....(stay) there for three weeks. |

UNIT 20

it is done / it was done (*passive*)



The room **is cleaned** every day.

The room **was cleaned** yesterday.

Compare: Somebody **cleans** the room every day. (*active*)

The room **is cleaned** every day. (*passive*)

Somebody **cleaned** the room yesterday. (*active*)

The room **was cleaned** yesterday, (*passive*)

- The passive is:

past participle

present

am/is/are

(not)

+

cleaned

exported

damaged

done

made

broken

past

was/were

The past participle of *regular* verbs is **-ed** (cleaned/damaged etc.). For a list of *irregular* past participles (**made/seen** etc.), see Appendix 1-2.

- Butter **is made** from milk.
- Oranges **are imported** into Britain.
- How often **are** these rooms **cleaned**?
- **I am** never **invited** to parties.
- This house **was built** 100 years ago.
- These houses **were built** 100 years ago.
- When **was** the telephone **invented**?
- **I wasn't invited** to the party last week.
- Six people **were injured** in the accident yesterday.



Two trees **were blown** down in the storm last night.

- We say **was/were born**:

- **I was born** in London in 1958. (*not i am born*)
- Where **were you born**?

- *passive* + **by** ...:

- We were woken up **by the noise**. (= The noise woke us up.)
- The telephone was invented **by Alexander Bell** in 1876.
- My brother was bitten **by a dog** last week.

UNIT 20 Exercises

20.1 Write sentences from the words in brackets (). All the sentences are present.

- 1 (this room / clean / every day) This room is cleaned every day.
- 2 (how often / the room / clean?) How often is the room cleaned?
- 3 (glass / make / from sand) Glass
- 4 (stamps / sell / in a post office)
- 5 (football / play / in most countries)
- 6 (this machine / not / use / very often)
- 7 (what language / speak / in Ethiopia?) What.....?
- 8 (what / this machine / use / for?).....?

20.2 Write sentences from the words in brackets (). All the sentences are past.

- 1 (the room / clean / yesterday) The room was cleaned yesterday.
- 2 (when / the room / clean?) When was the room cleaned?
- 3 (this room / paint / last month) This room
- 4 (these houses / build / about 50 years ago)
- 5 (Ann's bicycle / steal / last week)
- 6 (three people / injure / in the accident)
- 7 (when / this church / build?) When.....?
- 8 (when / television / invent?).....?
- 9 (how / the window / break?).....?
- 10 (anybody / injure / in the accident?).....?
- 11 (why / the letter / send / to the wrong address?).....?

20.3 Complete the sentences. Use the passive (present or past) of these verbs:

~~blow~~ build ~~clean~~ damage find invent make make pay
show speak steal

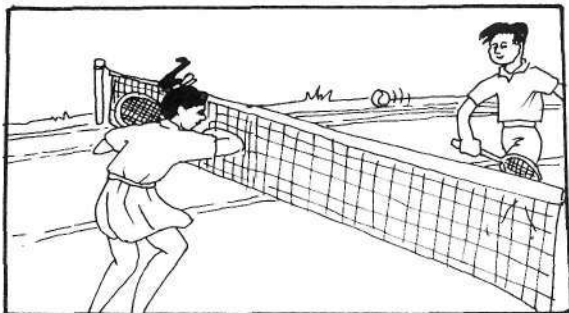
- 1 The r o is cleaned r y day.
- 2 Two trees were blown down in the storm last night.
- 3 Paper.....from wood.
- 4 There was a fire at the hotel last week. Two rooms.....
- 5 Many different languages.....in India.
- 6 These houses are very old. They.....about 500 years ago.
- 7 Many American programmes.....on British television.
- 8 'Is this a very old film?' 'Yes, it.....in 1949.'
- 9 My car.....last week. The next day it.....by the police.
- 10 The transistor.....in 1948.
- 11 She has a very good job. She.....£3000 a month.

20.4 Where were they born?

- 1 (Ian / Edinburgh) Ian was born in Edinburgh.
- 2 (Sally / Birmingham) Sally
- 3 (her parents / Ireland) Her
- 4 (you / ???) I
- 5 (your mother / ???) My

UNIT 21

What are you doing tomorrow? (present for the future)



They **are playing** tennis **now**.



She **is playing** tennis **tomorrow**.

- We use **am/is/are -ing** (*present continuous*) for something happening now (► Units 3-4):
 - 'Where are George and Sue?' 'They're **playing** tennis in the park.'
 - Please be quiet. **I'm working**.

We also use **am/is/are -ing** for the *future* (tomorrow / next week etc.):

- Carol **is playing** tennis **tomorrow**.
- **I'm not working** next week.

I am doing something tomorrow = I have *arranged* to do something, I have a plan to do something:

- Alice **is going** to the dentist on Friday.
(= she has an appointment with the dentist)
- They **are going** to a concert tomorrow evening,
(they have tickets for the concert)
- **Are you meeting** Bill this evening?
(= have you and Bill arranged to meet?)
- What **are you doing** at the weekend?
- **I'm not going** out tonight. **I'm staying** at home.

You can also say '**I'm going to do** something' (► Unit 22).



- Do *not* use the present simple (**I go/do you go?** etc.) for arrangements:
 - **I'm going** out this evening, {*not* 'I go'}
 - **Are you going** out tonight? {*not* 'do you go'}
 - Ann **isn't coming** to the party next week, {*not* 'Ann doesn't come'}

But we use the present simple for timetables, programmes, trains etc.:

- The concert **starts** at 7.30.
- What time **does the train leave?**

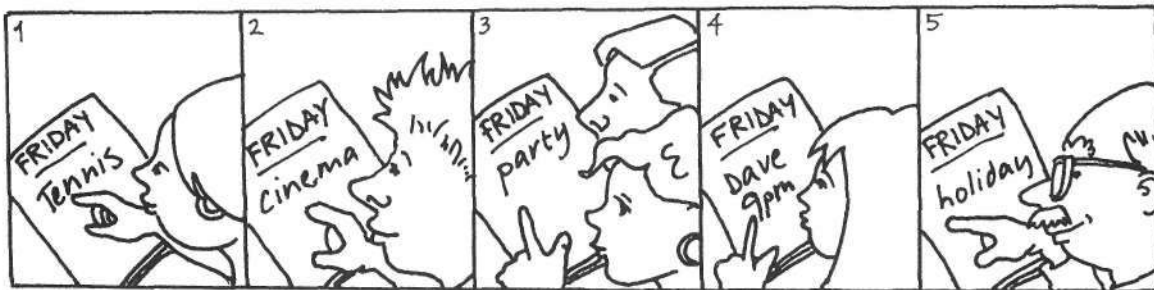
Study the difference:

- **I'm going** to a concert this evening.
The concert **starts** at 7.30.
I'm going — *present continuous*: usually for people
The concert starts — *present simple*: for programmes, trains etc.



UNIT 21 Exercises

21.1 Look at the pictures. What are these people doing next Friday?



Carol play / tennis Dick go / to the cinema Tom and Sue go / to a party Barbara meet / Dave George go / on holiday

- 1 Carol is playing tennis on Friday.
 2 Dick 4
 3 5

21.2 Write some sentences about yourself. What are you doing in the next few days?

- 1 I'm staying at home tonight.
 2 I'm going to the theatre on Monday. 5
 3 6

21.3 Write questions. All the sentences are future,

- 1 (you / go / out tonight?) Are you going out tonight? ?
 2 (you / work / next week?) next week ?
 3 (what / you / do / tomorrow evening?) What ?
 4 (what time / Bob and Sue / come?) ?
 5 (when / Liz / go / on holiday?) ?

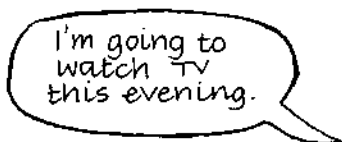
21.4 Use the words in brackets () to write sentences. All the sentences are future. Use the present continuous (he is leaving etc.) or present simple (it leaves etc.).

- 1 (I / not / go out / tonight) I'm not going out tonight.
 2 (the concert / start / at 8.15) The concert starts at 8.15.
 3 (I / meet / my friends this evening) I
 4 (Tom / not / come / to the party on Thursday) Tom
 5 (The English course / finish / on 10 May) The
 6 (my sister / get / married next December) My
 7 (my train / leave / at 8.45)
 8 (I / not / go / to London tomorrow)

These sentences are questions. All the sentences are future.

- 9 (what time / the train / leave?) What time ?
 10 (what time / you / leave / tomorrow?) ?
 11 (when / they / get married?) ?
 12 (when / the next English course / begin?) ?

morning...



this evening...



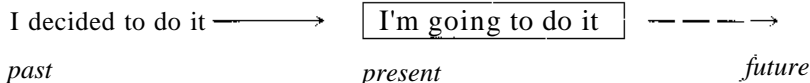
She **is going to** watch TV this evening.

- We use **am/is/are going to** ... for the *future*:

I	am		do ...
he/she/it	is (not)	going to	drink ...
we/you/they	are		watch ...

am	I		buy ... ?
is	he/she/it	going to	eat ... ?
are	we/you/they		wear ... ?

I am going to do something = I have decided to do something, my intention is to do something:



- **I'm going to buy** some books tomorrow.
- Sarah **is going to sell** her car.
- **I'm not going to have** breakfast this morning. I'm not hungry.
- What **are you going to wear** to the party on Saturday?
- 'Your hair is dirty.' 'Yes. I know. **I'm going to wash it.**'
- **Are you going to invite** John to your party?

- You can say that something **is going to happen** when it is clear *now* that it is sure to happen:

- Look at the sky! **It's going to rain.**
(black clouds *now* → rain)
- Oh dear! It's 9 o'clock and I'm not ready.
I'm going to be late.
(9 o'clock *now* and not ready → late)



We also use the *present continuous* (I am -ing) for the future, usually for arrangements
(• Unit 21):

- **I am playing** tennis with Jack tomorrow.

22.1 What are these people going to do?



- | | | | |
|---|---------------------------------|---|-------|
| 1 | <u>She's going to watch TV.</u> | 4 | ..... |
| 2 | <u>He</u> | 5 | ..... |
| 3 | <u>They</u> | 6 | ..... |

22.2 Are you going to do these things tomorrow?

- | | | |
|---|---------------------------|---|
| 1 | (buy a car) | <u>I'm not going to buy a car. (or I'm going to buy a car.)</u> |
| 2 | (get up before 6.30) | <u>I</u> |
| 3 | (have breakfast) | <u>I</u> |
| 4 | (watch TV in the morning) | ..... |
| 5 | (cook a meal) | ..... |
| 6 | (ride a bicycle) | ..... |

22.3 Make questions. Use ... going to ...

- | | | | |
|---|--|---|---|
| 1 | (what / you / wear / to the party?) | <u>What are you going to wear to the party?</u> | ? |
| 2 | (when / you / visit me again?) | ..... | ? |
| 3 | (what time / Tom / phone you tonight?) | ..... | ? |
| 4 | (how long / your friends / stay here?) | ..... | ? |
| 5 | (what time / you / get up tomorrow?) | ..... | ? |

22.4 Complete the sentences. Use ... going to + one of these verbs:

eat give lie rain study walk ~~wash~~

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 | My hair is dirty. I'm going to <u>wash</u> it. |
| 2 | I don't want to go home by bus. I |
| 3 | John's university course begins in October. He |
| 4 | Take an umbrella with you. It |
| 5 | I'm hungry. I |
| 6 | It's Val's birthday next week. We |
| 7 | I feel tired. I |

UNIT 23 will/shall (1)



Bill is 24 years old now.

Last year he **was** 23.

Next year he **will be** 25.

- **will** + *infinitive* (will be / will **win** / will come etc.):

positive and negative

I/we/you/they he/she/it	will ('ll) will not (won't)	be win come eat
----------------------------	--	--

question

will	I/we/you/they he/she/it	be? win? come? eat?
-------------	----------------------------	--

will = 'll: **I'll** (= I will) / **you'll** / **she'll** etc.

will not = **won't**: **I won't** (= I will not) / you **won't** / it **won't** etc.

- We use **will** for the *future* (**tomorrow** / **next week** etc.):

- She travels a lot. Today she is in London. Tomorrow **she'll be** in Rome. Next week she'll be in Tokyo.
- Telephone me this evening. **I'll** be at home.
- Leave the old bread in the garden. The birds **will eat** it.
- **We'll** probably **go** out this evening.
- **Will you be** at home this evening?
- **I won't be** here tomorrow. (= I will not be here)
- Don't drink coffee before you go to bed. You **won't sleep**.

We often say **I think ... will...** :

- **I think** Diana **will pass** the exam.
- **I don't think** it **will rain** this afternoon.
- **Do you think** the examination **will be** difficult?

But do *not* use **will** for things you have *already arranged* to do or *decided* to do (• Units 21-2):

- We're **going** to the theatre on Saturday, (*not* 'we will go')
- **Are you working** tomorrow? (*not* 'will you work')

- **shall**

You can say **I shall** (= I will) and **we shall** (= we will):

- **I shall be** late tomorrow, *or* **I will (I'll) be** late tomorrow.
- I think **we shall win**. *or* I think **we will (we'll) win**.

But *don't* use **shall** with **you/they/he/she/it**. (*not* 'he shall be late')

- Unit 24 will/shall (2)

23 Exercises

She is going on a European tour next month. Look at her plans. Where will she be on these

She'll be in Paris.

She

6-9	Paris
9-11	Munich
11-15	Vienna
16-22	Rome
23-28	Athens

What will you be? Write sentences about yourself. Use **I'll be ... / I'll probably be ... / I don't think I'll be ...**

at 10 o'clock) I'll probably be on the beach.

I'll be at work. or I don't know where I'll be.

(from now) I

(right)

(at 10 o'clock tomorrow afternoon)

(from now)

the negative.

step. You won't sleep. 3 it will happen

1. I 4 You'll find it

sentences with **I think ...** All the sentences are future.

(pass the exam) I think Diana will pass the exam.

(in the game) I think

(see her present)

(be nice tomorrow)

sentences with **I don't think ...**

(not married) I don't

(come home this evening)

Underline the verbs in these sentences. Which are right? Study Unit 21 before you do this

We are going to the theatre tonight. We've got the tickets, (going is right.)

I you do / are you doing tomorrow evening? 'Nothing. I'm free.'

I'm going away tomorrow morning. My train is at 8.40.

he'll lend / he's lending you some money. He's very rich,

you putting on your coat? Til go out / I'm going out.

link Claire will phone / is phoning us tonight?

meet us on Saturday. She'll work / She's working.

UNIT 24 will/shall (2)

• Unit 23 will/shall (1)



- You can use **I'll** ... (= I will) when you *offer* or *decide* to do something:
 - 'My case is very heavy.' **'I'll carry it for you.'**
 - **'I'll phone** you tomorrow, okay?' 'Okay, goodbye.'

We often say **I think I'll/I don't think I'll**... when we decide to do something:

- I'm tired. **I think I'll go** to bed early tonight.
- It's a nice day. **I think I'll sit** in the garden.
- It's raining. **I don't think I'll go** out.

Don't use the present simple (**I go/I phone** etc.) in sentences like these:

- **I'll phone** you tomorrow, okay? (*not* 'I phone you')
- I think **I'll go** to bed early, (*not* 'I go to bed')

Don't use **I'll**... for something you decided *before* (• Units 21-2):

- **I'm working** tomorrow, (*not* 'I'll work')
- **I'm going to watch** TV tonight, (*not* 'I'll watch')
- What **are you doing** at the weekend? (*not* 'what will you do')

• Shall I ... ? / Shall we ... ?



Shall I / Shall we ... ? = Do you think this is a good thing to do? Do you think this is a good idea?

- It's warm in this room. **Shall I open** the window?
- **'Shall I phone** you this evening?' 'Yes, please.'
- I'm going to a party tonight. What **shall I wear**?
- It's a nice day. **Shall we go** for a walk?
- Where **shall we go** for our holidays this year?
- 'Let's go out this evening.' 'Okay, what time **shall we meet**?'

(Let's • Unit 48)

UNIT 24 Exercises

24.1 Complete the sentences. Use **I will (I'll)** + one of these verbs:



~~carry~~

do

eat

send

show

sit

stay



- 1 My case is very heavy.
- 2 Enjoy your holiday.
- 3 I don't want this banana.
- 4 Are you coming with me?
- 5 Did you phone Jack?
- 6 Do you want a chair?
- 7 How do you use this camera?

I'll ~~carry~~ it for you.
 Thank you. I you a postcard.
 Well, I'm hungry it.
 No, I don't think so here.
 Oh no, I forgot it now.
 No, it's okay on the floor.
 Give it to me and you.

24.2 Complete the sentences. Use **I think I'll...** or **I don't think I'll...** + one of these verbs:

buy ~~go~~ have play

- 1 It's cold. I don't think I'll go out.
- 2 I'm hungry. I think something to eat.
- 3 I feel tired. I don't tennis.
- 4 This camera is too expensive. I it.

24.3 Are the underlined words right or wrong? Correct the sentences that are wrong.

- 1 I phone you tomorrow morning, okay? **WRONG I'll phone**
- 2 I phone my sister every Friday. **RIGHT**
- 3 I haven't done the shopping yet. I do it later.
- 4 'I don't want to drive.' 'Okay, I drive.'
- 5 'How do you usually go to work?' 'I drive.'
- 6 'I haven't got any money.' 'I lend you some.'

24.4 Write sentences with **Shall I...** ? Choose words from box A and box B.



A turn on make
turn off open

B some sandwiches the television
~~the window~~ the light



- 1 It's warm in this room.
- 2 This programme isn't very good.
- 3 I'm hungry.
- 4 It's dark in this room.

Shall I open the window ?

24.5 Write sentences with **Shall we ...** ? Choose words from box A and box B.



A what ~~what time~~ where who

B buy go invite ~~meet~~

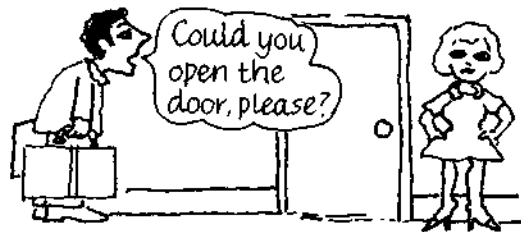


- 1 Let's go out tonight.
- 2 Let's have a holiday.
- 3 Let's spend some money.
- 4 Let's have a party.

Okay, what time shall we meet ?
 Okay, ?
 Okay, ?
 Okay, ?



He can play the piano.



- **can + infinitive** (can do / can play / can come etc.):

positive and negative

I/we/you/they he/she/it	can can't (cannot)	do play come see
----------------------------	-------------------------------------	---

question

can	I/we/you/they he/she/it	do? play? come? see?
------------	----------------------------	---

- **I can do something.** = **I know how** to do it or **it is possible** for me to do it:

- **I can play** the piano. My brother **can play** the piano too.
- Ann **can speak** Italian but she **can't speak** Spanish.
- 'Can you swim?' 'Yes, but not very well.'
- 'Can you change twenty pounds?' 'I'm sorry I **can't**.'
- Bill and Jenny **can't come** to the party next week.

- In the *past* (yesterday / last week etc.):

can (do) → **could (do)**
can't (do) → **couldn't (do)**

- When **I** was young, **I could run** very fast.
- Before she came to Britain, she **couldn't speak** English. Now she **can speak** English very well.
- I was tired last night but **I couldn't sleep**.
- Bill and Jenny **couldn't come** to the party last week.

We use **Can you ... ?** or **Could you ... ?** when we ask people to do things:

- 'Can (or Could) you open the door, please?' 'Yes, sure.'
- Can (or Could) you tell me the time, please?

We use **Can I ... ?** when we ask if it is okay to do something:

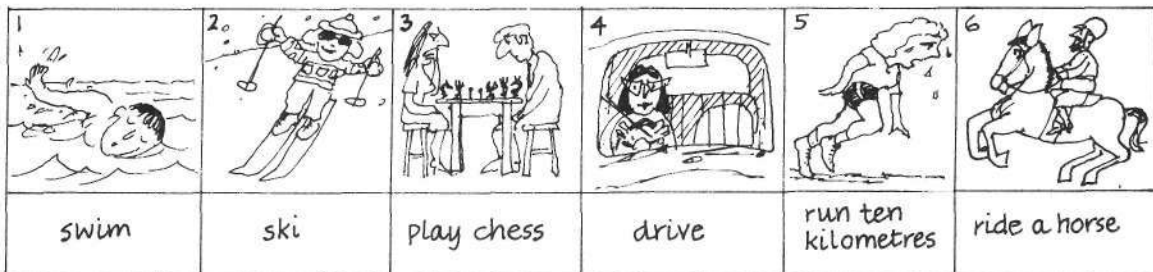
- 'Tom, can I take your umbrella?' 'Yes, of course.'
- (on the phone) Hello. Can I speak to Gary, please?

We use **Can I have ... ?** to ask for something:

- (in a shop) Can I have these postcards, please?

UNIT 25 Exercises

25.1 Ask someone if he or she can do these things:



- 1 Can you swim ? 3.....? 5.....?
 2.....you.....? 4.....? 6.....?

Can you do these things? Write sentences about yourself. Use **I can** or **I can't**...

- 7 I can't swim..... 9.....11.....
 8 I.....10.....12.....

25.2 Complete these sentences. Use **can** or **can't** + one of these verbs:

~~come~~ find hear see speak

- 1 I'm sorry, but wecan't come.....to your party next Saturday.
 2 She got the job because she.....five languages.
 3 You are speaking very quietly. I.....you.
 4 Have you seen my bag? I.....it.
 5 I like this hotel room. You.....the mountains from the window.

25.3 Complete these sentences. Use **can't** or **couldn't** + one of these verbs:

eat go go see ~~sleep~~ understand

- 1 I was tired but I.....couldn't sleep.....
 2 She spoke very quickly. I.....her.
 3 His eyes are not very good. He.....very well.
 4 I wasn't hungry yesterday. I.....my dinner.
 5 He.....to the concert next Saturday. He's working.
 6 He.....to the meeting last week. He was ill.

25.4 What do you say in these situations? Use **Can you ... ?** / **Could you ... ?** / **Can I ... ?**

- 1 (You are carrying a lot of things. You want me to open the door for you.)
 You say to me: Can you open the door (for me) please ?
 2 (We are having dinner. You want me to pass the salt.)
 You say to me:.....?
 3 (You want me to turn off the radio.).....?
 4 (You want to borrow my pen.).....?
 5 (You are in my house. You want to use my phone.).....?
 6 (You want me to give you my address.).....?

UNIT 26 may and might



I may go to Paris.
(= Perhaps I will go to Paris.)



It might rain.
(= Perhaps it will rain.)

- **may or might + infinitive** (may go / might go / may play / might play etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it }	may (not)	be
	might (not)	go play come

- **may/might** = it is possible that something will happen.

You can use **may or might**:

- **I may go** to the cinema this evening.
- or **I might go** to the cinema this evening. (= perhaps I will go)
- 'When is Kay going to phone you?' 'I don't know. She **may phone** this afternoon.'
- Take an umbrella with you. It **might rain**.
- 'Do you think Jack will come to the party?' 'I'm not sure. He **may**.' (= He may come.)
- 'Are you going out tonight?' 'I **might**.' (= I might go out.)

Study the difference:

- **I'm playing** tennis tomorrow, (*sure*)
- I may play** tennis tomorrow, (*possible*)
- Barbara **is going** to France next week, (*sure*)
- Barbara **might go** to France next week, (*possible*)

- The negative is **may not or might not**:

- **I might not go** to work tomorrow. (= perhaps I will not go)
- Sue **may not come** to the party. (= perhaps she will not come)

- **May I ___?** = Is it okay to do something?:

- **May I smoke?** (= Is it okay if I smoke? / Can I smoke?)
- 'May I sit here?' 'Yes, of course.'

26.1 Write sentences with **may** or **might**.

- 1 (perhaps I will go to the cinema) I may go to the cinema.
- 2 (perhaps I will see Tom tomorrow) I
- 3 (perhaps Kay will be late) Kay
- 4 (perhaps it will snow today) It
- 5 (perhaps I will wear my new jeans) I

These sentences are negative.

- 6 (perhaps they will not come)
- 7 (perhaps I will not go out tonight) I

26.2 Somebody is asking you about your plans. You have some ideas but you are not sure. Use **may** or **might** + one of these:

?	go away this evening	some shoes to a restaurant	Spain tomorrow	fish	?
---	-------------------------	-------------------------------	-------------------	------	---



- 1 Where are you going for your holidays next year?
- 2 Where are you going tonight?
- 3 When will you see Ann again?
- 4 What are you going to buy when you go shopping?
- 5 What are you doing at the weekend?
- 6 When are you going to phone John?
- 7 What are you going to have for dinner tonight?

I'm not sure yet. I might go to Spain.

I don't know yet. I

I'm not sure.....

I haven't decided yet.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

26.3 What are you doing tomorrow? Write *true* sentences about yourself. Use:

I'm (not)-ing or **I'm (not) going to...** or **I may...** or **I might...**

- 1 ('watch television) I'm not going to watch television.
- 2 (write a letter) I might write a letter.
- 3 (get up early) I
- 4 (go to the cinema)
- 5 (have a bath or shower)
- 6 (buy a newspaper)
- 7 (play tennis)
- 8 (make a telephone call)

UNIT 27 must



must + *infinitive* (must **do** / must **see** etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it }	must	do go stop write
------------------------------	-------------	---

- Use **must** when you think it is necessary or very important to do something:
 - The windows are very dirty. **I must clean** them.
 - It's a fantastic film. You **must see** it.
 - We must go** to the bank today. We haven't got any money.

must is *present or future*:

- I must go** to the bank now.
- I must go** to the bank tomorrow.

- For the *past* (yesterday / last week etc.), we use **had to** + *infinitive* (**had to go** / **had to do** / **had to write** etc.):

- I had to go** to the bank yesterday. (= It was necessary for me to go to the bank.)
- We had to walk** home last night. There was no bus.

- Unit 29 have to...

- mustn't** (must not)

I mustn't do it = it is important *not* to do it, it is a bad thing to do:

- I must hurry. I mustn't be** late.
- I mustn't forget** to phone George.
(= I must remember)
- You **mustn't walk** on the grass.
(= Don't walk on the grass.)



- needn't** (need not)

I needn't do it = it is *not necessary* to do it, I don't need to do it:

- I needn't clean** the windows. They aren't dirty.
- You **needn't go** to the bank. I can give you some money.

You can also say **don't need to** _____ (= needn't):

- I don't need to clean** the windows.
- You **don't need to go** to the bank.

27.1 Complete the sentences. Use **must** + one of these verbs:

be buy ~~go~~ go help hurry learn meet phone read
wash win

- 1 We must go to the bank today. We haven't got any money.
- 2 I.....I haven't got much time.
- 3 She's a very interesting person. You.....her.
- 4 I forgot to phone Dave last night. I.....him today.
- 5 You.....to drive. It's very useful.
- 6 This is an excellent book. You.....it.
- 7 We.....some food. We've got nothing for dinner.
- 8 My hair is dirty. I.....it.
- 9 I.....to the post office. I need some stamps.
- 10 I have a big problem. You.....me.
- 11 The game tomorrow is very important for us. We.....
- 12 You can't always have things immediately. You.....patient.

27.2 Put in **must** or **had to**.

- 1 I had to go to the bank yesterday to get some money.
- 2 The windows are very dirty. I.....clean them.
- 3 The windows were very dirty yesterday. I.....clean them.
- 4 I.....get up early tomorrow. I've got a lot to do.
- 5 Come on! We.....hurry. We haven't got much time.
- 6 We arrived home very late last night. We.....wait half an hour for a taxi.
- 7 These cakes are very nice. You.....have one.
- 8 Ann came to the party but she didn't stay very long. She.....leave early.
- 9 He didn't know how to use the machine. I.....show him.
- 10 I was nearly late for my appointment this morning. I.....run to get there on time.

27.3 Complete the sentences. Use **mustn't** or **needn't** + one of these verbs:

~~be~~ buy ~~clean~~ hurry lose stick take tell wait

- 1 The windows aren't dirty. You needn't clean them.
- 2 I must hurry. I mustn't be late.
- 3 This letter is very important. You.....it.
- 4 We have lots of time. We.....
- 5 We.....an umbrella. It's not going to rain.
- 6 This is a secret. You.....anybody.
- 7 You.....a newspaper. You can have mine.
- 8 I'm not ready yet but you.....for me.
You go now and I'll come later.
- 9 (a parent speaking to a child) You.....
your tongue out at people. It's not polite.



UNIT 28 should

You shouldn't smoke so much...



should + infinitive (should **do** / should **write** etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	} should shouldn't	do go stop write
----------------------------	-------------------------------------	---

- (Someone) **should** do something = It is a good thing to do or the right thing to do:
 - Tom **should go** to bed earlier. He usually goes to bed very late and he's always tired.
 - It's a good film. You **should go** and see it.
 - When you play tennis, you **should** always **watch** the ball.
- **shouldn't** (or **should not**) = It's *not* a good thing to do or it's not the right thing to do:
 - Tom **shouldn't go** to bed so late.
 - You work all the time. You **shouldn't work** so hard.
- We often use **think** with **should**:

I think ... should ...:

- I **think** Carol **should buy** some new clothes.
(= I think it's a good idea)
- It's late. I **think** we **should go** home now.
- 'Shall I buy this coat?'
'Yes, I **think** you **should**.'

I don't think ... should ...:

- I **don't think** you **should work** so hard.
(= I don't think it's a good idea)
- I **don't think** the police **should carry** guns.

Do you think ... should ... ?:

- **Do you think** I **should buy** this jacket?
- What time **do you think** we **should go** home?

Do you think I should buy this hat?



- **must** (► Unit 27) is stronger than **should**:
 - It's a **good** film. You **should go** and see it.
 - It's a **fantastic** film. You **must go** and see it.
- Another way of saying **should** is **ought to** ...:
 - It's a good film. You **ought to go** and see it. (= You should go and see it.)

UNIT 28 Exercises

28.1 Complete the sentences. Use **should** + one of these verbs:

clean go read visit ~~watch~~ wear

- 1 When you play tennis, you should watch the ball.
- 2 You look tired. Youto bed.
- 3 Youyour teeth after every meal.
- 4 The city museum is very interesting. Youit.
- 5 When you are driving, youa seat-belt.
- 6 It's a good book. Youit.

28.2 Make sentences with **shouldn't... so ...**

- 1 (you smoke too much) You shouldn't smoke so much.
- 2 (you work too hard) Youso hard.
- 3 (he eats too much) Hemuch.
- 4 (she watches TV too often) She
- 5 (you talk too much) You

28.3 You ask a friend for advice. Make questions with **Do you think I should ... ?**

- 1 (buy this jacket?) Do you think I should buy this jacket ?
- 2 (buy a new camera?) Do you think?
- 3 (get a new job?) Do?
- 4 (do an English course?)?
- 5 (learn to drive?)?

28.4 Write sentences with **I think ... should ...** Choose from:

have a holiday go to university sell it ~~go home now~~ go to the doctor

- 1 It's late. I think we should go home now.
- 2 Your car is very old. I think you
- 3 They need a change. I
- 4 He doesn't look well.....
- 5 She's very intelligent.....

Write sentences with **I don't think ... should ...** Choose from:

stay there ~~phone them now~~ go to work today get married

- 6 It's very late. I don't think you should phone them now.
- 7 They're too young. I don't think
- 8 That hotel is too expensive for us. I
- 9 You're not very well.....

28.5 What do you think? Write sentences with **should**.

- 1 I think everybody should
- 2 I thinkshould
- 3 I don't think

UNIT 29 have to...



- **I have to do something** = it is necessary for me to do it, I am obliged to do it:

I/we/you/they	have	to do to work to go to wear
he/she/it	has	

- I'll be late for work tomorrow. I **have to go** to the dentist.
- Jill starts work at 7.00, so she **has to get up** at 6.00.
- You **have to pass** a test before you can get a driving licence.

- The *past* (yesterday / last week etc.) is **had to** ...:
 - I was late for work yesterday. I **had to go** to the dentist.
 - There was no bus, so we **had to walk** home.
- In *questions* and *negatives* we use **do/does** (*present*) and **did** (*past*):

present

do	I/we/you/they	} have to ... ?	I/we/you/they	don't	} have to ...
does	he/she/it		he/she/it	doesn't	

past

did	{ I/we/you/they he/she/it }	} have to ... ?	I/we/you/they	{ didn't have to ...
			he/she/it	

- What time **do you have to get up** tomorrow morning?
- **Does Jill have to work** on Saturdays?
- Why **did they have to leave** the party early?

- I **don't have to** do (something) = it is *not* necessary to do it:
 - I'm not working tomorrow, so I **don't have to get up** early.
 - Ian **doesn't have to work** very hard. He's got an easy job.
 - We **didn't have to wait** very long. The bus soon came.

- **have to** and **must** (**must** • Unit 27)

Use **must** when you say what *you* think is necessary, when you are giving *your* opinion. Usually, **have to** is also possible:

- It's a fantastic film. You **must** see it. (or '**You have to** see it.')

Use **have to** (*not must*) when you are *not* giving your personal opinion:

- Jill won't be here this afternoon. She **has to go** to the doctor. (This is *not* my opinion - it is a fact.)
- In many countries, men **have to** do military service. (This is *not* my opinion - it is the law in those countries.)

29.1 Complete the sentences. Use **have to** or **has to** + one of these verbs:

do read speak travel wear

- 1 My eyes are not very good. I have to wear glasses.
- 2 At the end of the course, all the students a test.
- 3 Mary is studying literature. She a lot of books.
- 4 He doesn't understand much English, so I very slowly to him.
- 5 George is not often at home. He a lot in his job.

29.2 Complete the sentences. Use **have to** or **had to** + one of these verbs:

answer buy change get go walk

- 1 There were no buses yesterday evening. We had to walk home.
- 2 I'm going to bed early tonight. I up early tomorrow morning.
- 3 It's late. I now. I'll see you tomorrow.
- 4 I went to the supermarket after work because I some food.
- 5 This train doesn't go to London. You at Bristol.
- 6 We did an exam yesterday. We six questions out often.

29.3 Write questions. Some are present and some are past.



- 1 I have to get up early tomorrow.
- 2 They had to leave early.
- 3 We had to pay a lot of money.
- 4 I have to go home now.
- 5 He had to wait a long time.
- 6 Joy has to work this evening.



- What time do you have to get up ?
- Why.....?
- How much..... you.....?
- Why.....?
- How long.....?
- Why.....?

29.4 Write sentences with **don't/doesn't/didn't have to** ...

- 1 Why are you going home now? You don't have to go home now.
- 2 Why is she waiting? She doesn't.....
- 3 Why did you get up so early? You.....
- 4 Why do you want to decide now? We.....
- 5 Why does he work so hard? He

29.5 Put in **have to** / **has to** / **had to** or **must**.

- 1 It's a fantastic film, you must (or have to) see it.
- 2 In many countries men have to do military service.
- 3 Sarah is a nurse. Sometimes she work at weekends.
- 4 I didn't have any money with me, so I borrow some.
- 5 You can't park here for nothing. You pay.
- 6 I eat too much chocolate. I really stop.
- 7 In tennis you hit the ball over the net.

UNIT 30 Would you like...?

- **Would you like ... ?** = Do you want. ... ?

We use **Would you like ... ?** to offer things:

- 'Would you like some coffee?'
'Yes, please.'
- 'Would you like a cigarette?'
'No, thank you. I don't smoke.'
- 'What would you like, tea or coffee?'
'Tea, please.'



We use **Would you like to ... ?** to invite someone:

- **Would you like to come** to a party?
- **'Would you like to have** dinner with me on Sunday?'
'Yes, I'd love to.' (= I would love to have dinner with you.)
- Where **would you like to go** this evening?

- **I'd like (I would like)** is a polite way of saying 'I want':

- (in a restaurant) **I'd like fish**, please.
- I'm thirsty. **I'd like** a drink.
- **I'd like to see** the film on television this evening.

- Study the difference:

Would you like ... ? / I'd like ...



Do you like ... ? / I like ...



'Would you like some tea?' = Do you want some tea? (an offer)

'Do you like tea?' = Do you think tea is nice?

- **'Would you like to go** to the cinema tonight?' (tonight)
'Yes, I'd love to go.'

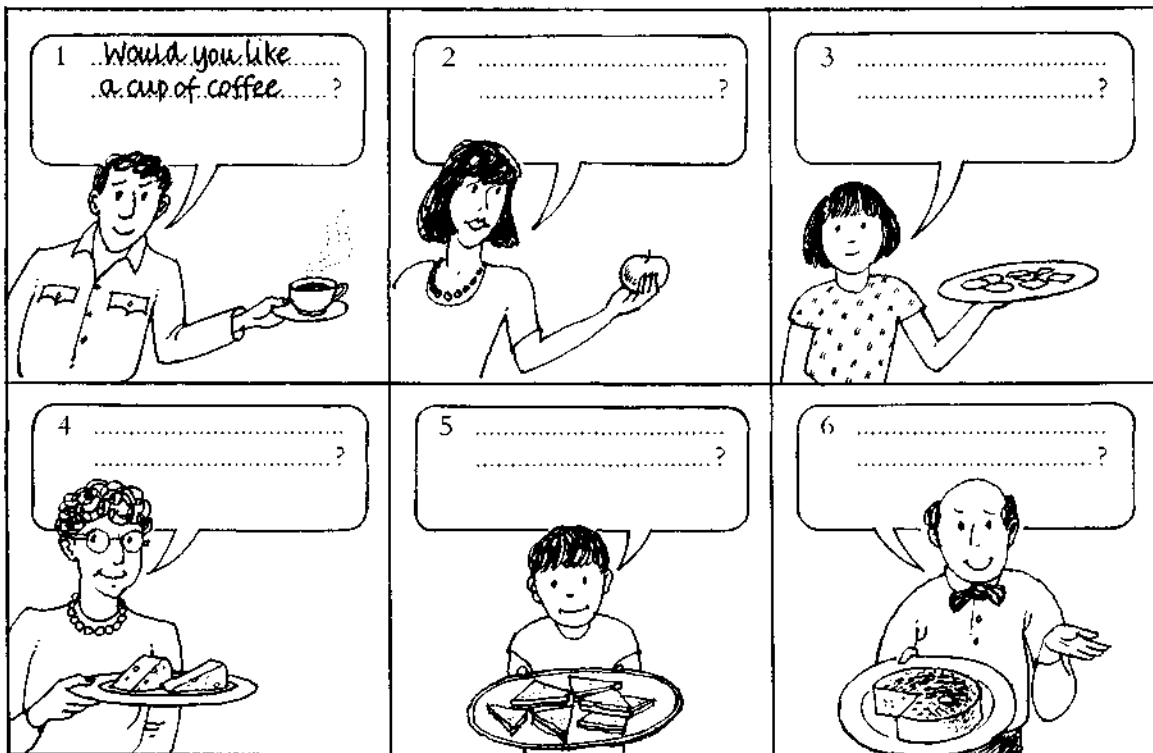
but **'Do you like going** to the cinema?' (in general)
'Yes, I go to the cinema a lot.'

- **I'd like** an orange. (= I want an orange now.)

but **I like** oranges, (in general)

- Unit 47 **Do you like going... ? and Would you like to go ... ?**

30.1 Look at the pictures. What are the people saying? Use **Would you like ... ?** + one of these: **an apple / a biscuit / a cake / some cheese / a cup of coffee / a sandwich.**

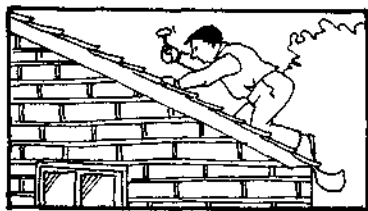


30.2 Invite people to do things. Use **Would you like to ... ?**

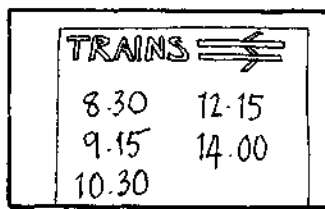
- 1 (invite someone to come to a party next Friday)
Would you like to come to a party next Friday
- 2 (invite someone to go to a concert on Sunday)
.....on Sunday?
- 3 (invite someone to play tennis tomorrow)
.....?
- 4 (invite someone to dance).....?

30.3 Choose the correct form.

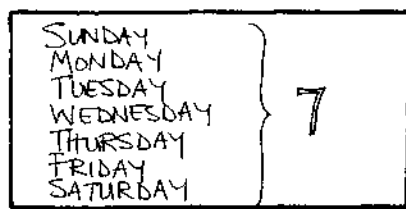
- 1 ~~'Do you like~~ / Would you like a cigarette?' 'Yes, please.'
Would you like is right.
- 2 'Do you like / Would you like a banana?' 'No, thank you.'
- 3 'Do you like / Would you like bananas?' 'Yes, I love them.'
- 4 'What do you like / would you like to drink?' 'Water, please.'
- 5 'Do you like / Would you like to go out for a walk?' 'Not now. Perhaps later.'
- 6 I like / I'd like ice-cream but I don't eat it very often.
- 7 I'm tired. I like / I'd like to go to sleep.
- 8 'Do you like / Would you like something to eat?' 'No, thanks. I'm not hungry.'



There's a man on the roof.



There's a train at 10.30.



There are seven days in a week.

singular:

there is ...	(there's)
there is not ...	(there isn't or there's not)
is there ... ?	

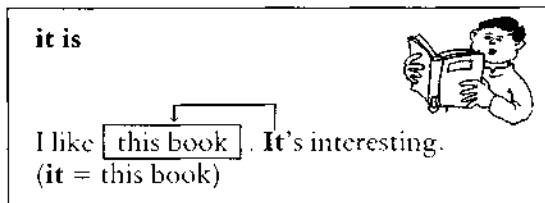
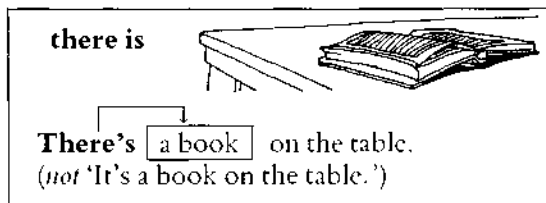
- **There's** a big tree in the garden.
- **There's** a good film on TV this evening. I'm going to watch it.
- Excuse me **is there** a hotel near here?
- 'Have you got any money?'
'Yes, **there's** some in my bag.'
- We can't go skiing. **There isn't** any snow.

plural:

there are ...	
there are not ...	(there aren't)
are there ... ?	

- **There are** some big trees in the garden.
- **Are there** any letters for me today?
- This is a modern town. **There aren't** many old buildings here.
- **How many players are there** in a football team?
- **There are 11 players** in a football team.

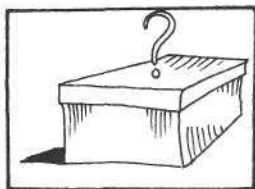
• **there is** and **it is**



Compare:

- A: What's that noise? B: **It's** a train. (it = that noise)
- **There's** a train at 10.30. **It's** a fast train. (it = the 10.30 train)
- **There is** a lot of salt in this soup.
- I don't like this soup. **It's** too salty. (it = this soup)

31.1 What's in the box? Ask questions with **Is there ... ?** and **Are there ... ?**



- 1 (any cigarettes?) Are there any cigarettes in the box?
- 2 (any books?).....in the box ?
- 3 (a man?).....?
- 4 (any money?).....?
- 5 (any clothes?).....?
- 6 (a key?).....?

31.2 Dunford is a small town. Look at the information in the box and write sentences with **There is/ isn't/are/aren't...**

sports centre	Yes
swimming-pool	No
hospital	Yes
cinemas	Yes (two)
university	No
big hotels	No
cathedral	Yes

- 1 There is a sports centre in Dunford.
- 2 in Dunford.
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7

31.3 Put in **there is / there isn't / is there? / there are / there aren't / are there?**

- 1 Dunford is a very modern town. There aren't many old buildings.
- 2 Look!.....a photograph of George in the newspaper!
- 3 Excuse me,.....a restaurant near here?
- 4.....five people in my family: my parents, my two sisters and me.
- 5 We can't take any photographs.....a film in the camera.
- 6 How many students.....in your class?
- 7 Where can we sit?.....any chairs.
- 8.....a bus from the city centre to the airport?

31.4 Write sentences with **There are ...** Choose the right number: 7 9 15 26 30 50.

- 1 (days / a week) There are seven days in a week.
- 2 (states / the USA).....
- 3 (players / a rugby team).....
- 4 (planets / the solar system).....
- 5 (letters / the English alphabet)
- 6 (days / September).....

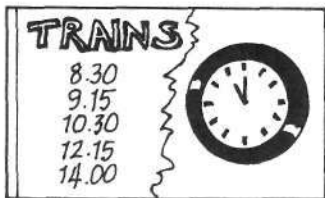
31.5 Put in **there** or **it**.

- 1 There's a train at 10.30 It's a fast train.
- 2 I'm not going to buy this shirt 's very expensive.
- 3 'What's wrong?' '.....'s something in my eye.'
- 4 's a car in front of the house. Is your car?
- 5 'Is anything on TV?' 'Yes, 's a film at 8.15.'
- 6 's a letter on the floor. Is for you?

UNIT 32 there was / were / has been / will be

there	is/are was/were has been / have been will be	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Unit 31 was/were • Unit 11 has/have been • Units 15-17 will • Unit 23
-------	---	--

there was/were



The time is now 11 o'clock.

There was a train at 10.30.

Compare:

there is/are (present)

- **There is** a good film on TV this evening.
- We are staying at a very big hotel. **There are** 250 rooms.
- I'm hungry but **there isn't** anything to eat.
- **Are there** any letters for me this morning?

there was/were (past)

- **There was** a good film on TV yesterday evening.
- We stayed at a very big hotel. **There were** 250 rooms.
- When I arrived home, I was hungry but **there wasn't** anything to eat.
- **Were there** any letters for me yesterday morning?

there has been / there have been



There's been an accident.

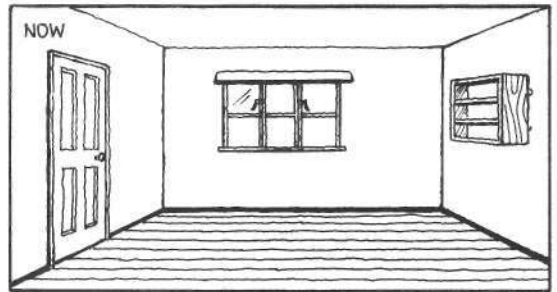
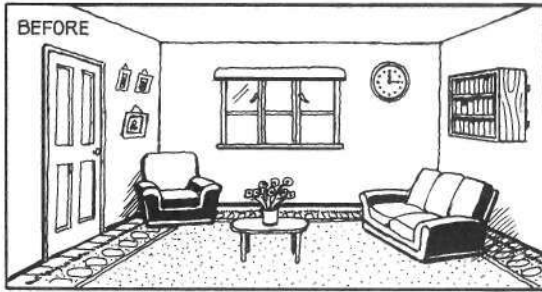
- Look! **There's been** an accident, (there's been = there **has** been)
- This road is very dangerous. **There have been** many accidents on it.
- but There **was** an accident **last night**. (not 'has been . . . last night' • Unit 19)

there will be

- Do you think **there will be** a lot of people at the party on Saturday?
- (from the weather forecast) Tomorrow the weather will
 - be cold. **There will be** some rain in the afternoon.



32.1 Look at the two pictures. Now the room is empty but before it was full of things. Write sentences about the things in the list. Use **There was/were...**



an armchair some books a carpet ~~a clock~~ some flowers
some pictures a sofa a small table

- 1 There was a clockon the wall near the window.
- 2on the floor.
- 3on the wall near the door.
- 4in the middle of the room.
- 5on the table.
- 6on the shelves.
- 7in the corner near the door.
- 8opposite the door.

32.2 Put in there was / there wasn't / was there? / there were / there weren't / were there?

- 1 I was hungry but there wasn't anything to eat.
- 2 Were there any letters for me yesterday?
- 3a football match on TV last night but I didn't see it.
- 4 'We stayed at a nice hotel.' 'Did you?.....a swimming-pool?'
- 5 The suitcase was empty.....any clothes in it.
- 6 I found a wallet in the street but.....any money in it.
- 7 '.....many people at the meeting?' 'No, very few.'
- 8 We didn't visit the museum.....enough time.
- 9 I'm sorry I'm late.....a lot of traffic.
- 10 The radio wasn't working because.....any batteries in it.

32.3 Put in there is / there are / there was / there were / there has been / there will be.

- 1 There was a good film on TV yesterday evening.
- 2 Look! There has been an accident. Call the ambulance!
- 324 hours in a day.
- 4a party at the club last Friday but I didn't go.
- 5 Look! This bag is empty.....nothing in it.
- 6 'Why are those policemen outside the bank?' '.....a robbery.'
- 7 When we arrived at the cinema,.....a long queue outside.
- 8somebody at the station to meet you when you arrive tomorrow.
- 9 Ten years ago.....500 children at the school. Now.....over a thousand.

UNIT 33 it...

- **it** for *time/day /distance /weather*

time



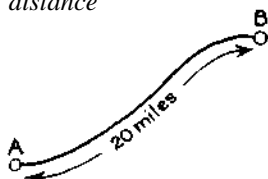
What time is **it**?
It's half past ten. (10.30)
It's late.
It's time to go home.

day



What day is **it**?
It's 16 March.
It's Thursday today.
It's my birthday today.

distance



How far is **it** from London to Bristol?
It's a long way from here to the airport.
We can walk home. **It** isn't far.*
It's 20 miles from our village to the nearest town.

* Use **far** in *questions* (is **it** far?) and *negatives* (**it** isn't far). Use a **long way** in *positive sentences* (**it's** a long way).

weather



It's raining. **It** isn't raining. Is **it** snowing?
It rains/snows/rained/snowed.
It's warm/hot/cold/fine/cloudy/windy/sunny/foggy/dark etc.
It's a nice day today.

Compare **it** and **there**:

- **It rains** a lot in winter, (**rains** is a *verb*)
hut **There is a lot of rain** in winter, (**rain** is a *noun*)
- **It was very windy**, (**windy** is an *adjective*)
hut **There was a strong wind** yesterday, (**wind** is a *noun*)

there is and it is • Unit 31

- **it's nice to ...** etc.

It's	easy/difficult/impossible/dangerous/safe/stupid/ cheap/expensive/nice/good/wonderful/terrible etc.	to...
------	---	-------

- **It's nice to see** you again. (**it** = to see you again)
- **It's impossible to understand** her. (**it** = to understand her)
- **It wasn't easy to find** your house, (**it** = to find your house)

- Don't forget **it**:

- It's raining again, (*not* 'Is raining again.')
- Is **it** true that you are married? (*not* 'Is true that ...?')

33.1 Put in **it is** (it's) or **is it**?

- 1 What time ~~is it~~...?
- 2 ~~It's~~ raining again.
- 3very late. We must go home.
- 4 '.....cold out?' 'Yes, put on your coat.'
- 5true that Bill can fly a helicopter?
- 6 'What day.....today?' 'Thursday?' 'No, Friday.'
- 7about three miles from the airport to the city centre.
- 8possible for me to phone you at your office?
- 9 'Shall we walk to the restaurant?' 'I don't know. How far.....?'
- 10Jack's birthday today. He's 27.
- 11a pity that Ann can't come to the party on Saturday.
- 12 I don't believe it!.....impossible!

33.2 Write questions with **How far**... ?

- 1 (here / the airport?) How far is it from here to the airport.....?
- 2 (New York / Washington?) How.....Washington?
- 3 (your house / the station?).....?
- 4 (the hotel / the beach?).....?

33.3 Put in **it** or **there**.

- 1 ~~It~~.....n s a lot in winter.
- 2 ~~There~~ was a strong wind yesterday.
- 3 Look!.....'s snowing.
- 4 We can't go skiing isn't any snow.
- 5 'Did.....rain yesterday?' 'No,.....was fine.'
- 6.....'s dark in this room. Can you turn on the light?
- 7.....'s a big black cloud in the sky.....'s going to rain.
- 8.....was a storm last night. Did you hear it?
- 9.....'s a long way from here to the nearest shop.

33.4 Complete the sentences. Use **it's** + (box 1) + **to** + (box 2).

it's	box 1	to	box 2
	dangerous		meet people
	difficult		go out alone
	easy		sleep
	easy		understand him
	nice		save
	impossible		
	stupid		

- 1 It's easy to understand him.....because he speaks very slowly.
- 2....., Jill. How are you?
- 3.....at night. There is always a lot of noise.
- 4 A lot of cities are not safe.....at night.
- 5 If you haven't got a well-paid job,.....money.
- 6.....warm clothes in hot weather.
- 7 Everybody is very friendly in this town.....

UNIT 34 go/going work/working play/playing etc.

• go/work/play etc. *{infinitive}*

We use the *infinitive* (go/work/play/be etc.) after:

will	Tom will be here tomorrow.	• Units 23-4
shall	Shall I open the window?	• Units 23-4
can	I can't play tennis.	• Unit 25
could	Could you pass the salt, please?	• Unit 25
may	May I smoke?	• Unit 26
might	I might be late tonight.	• Unit 26
must	It's late. I must go now.	• Unit 27
should	You shouldn't work so hard.	• Unit 28
would	Would you like some coffee?	• Unit 30

We use the *infinitive* with **do/does/did**:

do	Do you work?	I don't work,
does	How much does it cost?	She doesn't play tennis.
did	What time did they leave?	We didn't sleep very well.

do/does (*present simple*) • Units 6-7 **did** (*past simple*) • Unit 10

• to go / to work / to play etc. (to + *infinitive*)

We use **to ...** (to go / to work / to play / to be etc.) after:

(I'm) going (to ...)	I'm going to play tennis tomorrow. What are you going to do?	• Unit 22
(I) have (to ...)	I have to go now. Everybody has to eat .	• Unit 29
(I) want (to ...)	Do you want to go out? They don't want to come with us.	• Unit 47
(I) would like (to ...)	I'd like to be rich. Would you like to go out?	• Unit 30

• going/working/playing etc.

We use **-ing** with **am/is/are/was/were**:

am/is/are	} + -ing	<i>present continuous</i>	• Units 3-4, 21
was/were		<i>past continuous</i>	• Unit 12

- Please be quiet. **I'm working**.
- Tom **isn't working** today.
- What time **are you going** out?
- We didn't go out because it **was raining**.
- What **were you doing** at 11 o'clock yesterday morning?

• Unit 47 **to...** (I want to do) and **-ing** (I enjoy doing)

34.1 Finish each of these sentences. Write '... **phone Jack**' or '... **to phone Jack**'.

- 1 I'll phone Jack.....
- 2 I'm going to phone Jack.....
- 3 Can you..... Jack?
- 4 Shall I.....?
- 5 I'd like.....
- 6 I have.....
- 7 You should.....
- 8 I want.....
- 9 I might.....
- 10 You must.....

34.2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the box. Sometimes you need the infinitive (**go/work** etc.) and sometimes you need **-ing** (**going/working** etc.).

do/doing	drive/driving	eat/eating	get/getting	go/going
listen/listening	rain / r a i n	sleep/sleeping	s t a y i n g	wait/waiting
watch/watching	wear/wearing	work/working		

- 1 Please be quiet. I'm working....
- 2 I feel tired. I didn't sleep..... very well last night.
- 3 What time do you usually.....up in the morning?
- 4 'Where are you.....?' 'To the shop.'
- 5 Did you.....television last night?
- 6 Put up your umbrella. It's.....
- 7 The police stopped her because she was.....the car too fast.
- 8 You can turn off the radio. I'm not.....to it.
- 9 They didn't.....anything because they weren't hungry.
- 10 'What are you.....this evening?' 'I'm.....at home.'
- 11 'Does she always.....glasses?' 'No, only for reading.'
- 12 My friends were.....for me when I arrived.

34.3 Put in the correct form. Choose the infinitive (**go/open** etc.), **to + infinitive** (**to go / to open** etc.) or **-ing** (**going/opening** etc.).

- 1 Shall I open..... the window? (open)
- 2 It's late. I h a v e to go..... now. (go)
- 3 Tom isn't working..... this week. He's on holiday, (work)
- 4 Do you want.....out this evening? (go)
- 5 'Where are you.....for your holidays this year?' (go)
'We're not sure, but we may.....to Italy.' (go)
- 6 I'm afraid I can't.....you. (help)
- 7 It's a really good film. You must.....it. (see)
- 8 What time do you have.....tomorrow morning? (leave)
- 9 Do you think it will.....this afternoon? (rain)
- 10 I'm hungry. I'm going.....something to eat. (have)
- 11 My brother is.....physics at university, (study)
- 12 He spoke very quietly. I couldn't.....him. (hear)
- 13 I'm very tired. I must.....down for a few minutes, (lie)
- 14 I was very tired. I had.....down for a few minutes, (lie)
- 15 Would you like.....out for dinner this evening? (go)
- 16 You don't look well. I don't think you should.....out.(go)

UNIT 35

be/have/do in present and past tenses

- **be (am/is/are/was/were) -ing (cleaning/working/doing etc.)**

present continuous and past continuous

am/is/are -ing

present continuous

- Units 3-4, 21

- Please be quiet. **I'm working.**
- **It isn't raining** at the moment.
- What **are** you **doing** this evening?

was/were -ing

past continuous

- Unit 12

- **I was working** when she arrived.
- **It wasn't raining**, so we went out.
- What **were** you **doing** at 3 o'clock?

- **be (am/is/are/was/were) + past participle (cleaned/made/eaten etc.)**

passive

am/is/are + past participle

present passive

- Unit 20

- The room **is cleaned** every day.
- I **am** never **invited** to parties.
- Oranges **are imported** into Britain.

was/were + past participle

past passive

- Unit 20

- The room **'was cleaned** yesterday.
- These houses **were built** 100 years ago.
- How **was** the window **broken**?

- **have/has + past participle (cleaned/lost/eaten/been/gone etc.)**

present perfect

have/has + past participle

present perfect

- Units 15-17

- **I have cleaned** my room.
- **Tom has lost** his passport.
- Barbara **hasn't been** to Canada.
- Where **have** they gone?

M do/does/did + infinitive (clean/like/eat/go etc.)

present simple and past simple — negatives and questions

do/does + infinitive

present simple negatives

and questions • Units 6-7

- **I** like coffee but **I don't like** tea.
- **Tom doesn't smoke.**
- What **do** you usually **do** at weekends?
- **Does** Barbara **live** alone?

did + infinitive

past simple negatives

and questions • Unit 10

- **I didn't 'watch** TV yesterday.
- It **didn't rain** last week.
- What time **did** Barbara **go** out?

35.1 Put in is/are/do/does.

- 1 ...~~Do~~... you clean your teeth every day?
- 2 Where ...~~are~~... they going?
- 3 Why.....you looking at me?
- 4.....Bill live in London?
- 5.....you like dancing?
- 6.....the sun shining?
- 7 What time.....the shops close?
- 8.....you working tomorrow?
- 9.....Alice work on Saturdays?
- 10 What.....this word mean?
- 11 What time.....you going out?
- 12 What time.....you usually go out?
- 13.....it raining?
- 14.....you feeling all right?

35.2 Put in am not / isn't / aren't / don't / doesn't. All these sentences are negative.

- 1 Tom ~~doesn't~~smoke.
- 2 It ~~isn't~~raining at the moment.
- 3 I.....want to go out this evening.
- 4 I.....going out this evening.
- 5 George.....working this week.
- 6 My parents.....watch television very often.
- 7 Tom and Ann.....coming to the party next week.
- 8 Barbara.....speak a foreign language.
- 9 I'm sorry, I.....understand. Can you say that again, please?
- 10 You can turn off the television. I.....watching it.

35.3 Put in was/were/did/have/has.

- 1 Where ~~were~~your shoes made?
- 2 ..~~Did~~... you go out last night?
- 3 What.....you doing at 10.30?
- 4 Where.....he buy his new coat?
- 5 Where.....she born?
- 6 Where.....you born?
- 7.....Chris gone home?
- 8 What time.....she go?
- 9 What.....she wearing yesterday?
- 10 When.....this road built?
- 11 Why.....they go home early?
- 12 How long.....they been married?
- 13.....you see Jim last night?
- 14.....you ever seen a ghost?

35.4 Put in is/are/was/were/have/has.

- 1 Oranges ...~~are~~... imported into Britain.
- 2 Joe ...~~has~~... lost his passport.
- 3 Glass.....made from sand.
- 4 I.....made some coffee. Would you like some?
- 5 This shopping centre.....built ten years ago.
- 6 The streets in this town.....cleaned every day.
- 7.....you finished your work?
- 8 Jill.....gone to Italy for a holiday.
- 9 These are very old photographs. They.....taken a long time ago.
- 10 George and Linda are here. They.....just arrived.
- 11 She's Italian but she.....born in France.
- 12 Can you tell me how this word.....pronounced?

• Past simple and past participle

The past simple and past participle of regular verbs is -ed:

clean → cleaned live → lived paint → painted study → studied

past simple (• Unit 9):

- **I cleaned** my shoes yesterday.
- Charlie **studied** engineering at university.

We use *the past participle* for the *present perfect* and *the passive*.

present perfect = **have/has** + *past participle* (• Units 15-17):

- **I have cleaned** my shoes.
- Joan **has lived** in London for ten years.

passive = be (**am/is/are/was/were**) + *past participle* (• Unit 20):

- These rooms **are cleaned** every day.
- My car **was repaired** last week.

• Irregular verbs

The past simple and past participle of irregular verbs are *not* -ed:

	make	break	cut
<i>past simple</i>	made	broke	cut
<i>past participle</i>	made	broken	cut

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are the same. For example:

	make	find	buy	cut
<i>past simple</i>	made	found	bought	cut
<i>past participle</i>	made	found	bought	cut

- **I made** a cake yesterday, (*past simple*)
- **I have made** some coffee, (*past participle-present perfect*)
- Butter **is made** from milk, (*past participle - present passive*)

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are different. For example:

	break	know	begin	go
<i>past simple</i>	broke	knew	began	went
<i>past participle</i>	broken	known	begun	gone

- Somebody **broke** this window last night, (*past simple*)
- Somebody **has broken** this window, (*past participle - present perfect*)
- This window **was broken** last night, (*past participle - past passive*)

UNIT 36 Exercises

36.1 Write the past simple / past participle of these verbs. (The past simple and past participle are the same for all the verbs in this exercise.)

1 make made	6 sit	11 hear
2 cut cut	7 leave	12 cost
3 get	8 build	13 catch
4 think	9 put	14 lose
5 pay	10 buy	15 understand

36.2 Write the past simple and past participle of these verbs.

1 break broke broken	6 run	11 take
2 begin	7 speak	12 go
3 eat	8 write	13 know
4 drink	9 come	14 throw
5 give	10 drive	15 forget

36.3 Put the verb into the right form.

- I **washed** my hands because they were dirty, (wash)
- Somebody has **broken** this window, (break)
- I feel good. I very well last night, (sleep)
- We a very good film yesterday, (see)
- It a lot when we were on holiday, (rain)
- I've my bag. (lose) Have you it? (see)
- George's bicycle was last week, (steal)
- I to bed early because I was tired, (go)
- Have you your book yet? (finish)
- These houses were about 20 years ago. (build)
- Ann to drive when she was 18. (learn)
- I've never a horse in my life, (ride)
- Yesterday I off my bicycle and my leg. (fall/hurt)
- She's a good friend of mine. I've her a long time, (know)

36.4 Complete these sentences with a verb from the list. Put the verb into the correct form, past simple or past participle.

cost drive fly make meet sell speak swim tell wake

- I have **made** some coffee. Would you like some?
- I know Gary but I've never his wife.
- We were up by a loud noise in the middle of the night.
- She jumped into the river and to the other side.
- Many different languages are in the Philippines.
- Our holiday a lot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel.
- Have you ever a very fast car?
- All the tickets for the concert were very quickly.
- Have you John about your new job?
- A bird in through the open window while we were having our dinner.



She isn't tired but **he is**.
(**he is** = he is tired)



He smokes but **she doesn't**.
(**she doesn't** = she doesn't smoke)

am/is/are	was/were	have/has	do/does/did
can	will	must	may
		might	would
			should

• We use these verbs with other verbs (**am going / has seen / can't come** etc.) but you can also use them alone:

- I haven't got a car but my sister **has**. (= my sister has got a car)
- 'Please help me.' 'I'm sorry, **I can't**.' (= I can't help you)
- 'Are you tired?' 'I **was**, but I'm **not** now.' (= I was tired but I'm not tired now.)
- 'Do you think Ann will come?' 'She **might**.' (= She might come.)
- 'Are you going now?' 'Yes, I'm afraid I **must**.' (= I must go)

• You can use these verbs in this way with **Yes ...** and **No ...**:

- 'Is it raining?' 'Yes, it **is**. / No, it **isn't**.'
- 'Have you ever been to Canada?' 'Yes, **I have**. / No, **I haven't**.'
- 'Will Alan be here tomorrow?' 'Yes, he **will**. / No, he **won't**.'

• Use **do/does** for the *present simple*:

- I don't like hot weather but Sue **does**. (= Sue likes hot weather)
- She works very hard but **I don't**. (= I don't work very hard)
- 'Do you enjoy your work?' 'Yes, I **do**.'

Use **did** for the *past simple*:

- 'Did you and John enjoy the film?' 'I **did** but John **didn't**.'
(= I enjoyed it but John didn't enjoy it.)
- 'Did it rain yesterday?' 'No, it **didn't**.'

• You cannot use the short forms 'm/'s/'re/'ve/'ll at the end of a sentence. Use the full forms **am/is/are/have/will** etc.:

- 'Are you tired?' 'Yes, I **am**.' (not 'Yes, I'm'.)

37.1 Complete these sentences with **do/does/did**.

- 1 I don't like hot weather but Sue does.
- 2 You don't know John very well but I.....
- 3 I didn't enjoy the party but my friends.....
- 4 I don't want to go out this evening but Peter.....
- 5 Ann doesn't smoke but all her friends.....
- 6 My mother doesn't wear glasses but my father.....

37.2 Complete these sentences with **don't/doesn't/didn't**.

- 1 Sue likes hot weather but I don't.
- 2 I like football but my brother.....
- 3 I wanted to go out last night but Jan.....
- 4 Kate lives in London but her parents.....
- 5 The workers in the factory work hard but the manager.....
- 6 Val played tennis last weekend but Tom.....

37.3 Complete these sentences. Use only one verb each time (**is/have/can** etc.).

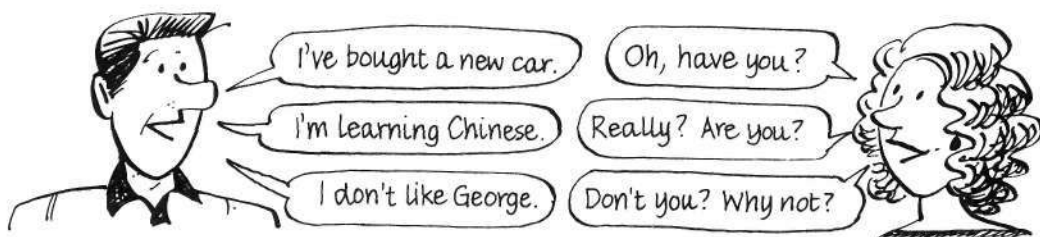
- 1 Kay wasn't hungry but we were.
- 2 You haven't met Jack's parents but I.....
- 3 Bill can't drive but all his friends.....
- 4 I'm not intelligent but you.....
- 5 I'm not going to the party tomorrow night but George.....
- 6 Their house wasn't very big but the garden.....
- 7 I wasn't very tired but Philip and Joy.....
- 8 Diana won't be here tomorrow but I.....
- 9 I don't smoke but my brother.....
- 10 I haven't got a video camera but I know somebody who.....

37.4 Complete these sentences with a negative verb (**isn't/haven't/can't** etc.).

- 1 My sister can play the piano but I can't.
- 2 Tom's house is big but my house.....
- 3 I'll be here tomorrow but Chris.....
- 4 I've already seen the film but Ian.....
- 5 One of the men was wearing a coat but the other man.....
- 6 I got up early this morning but James.....
- 7 My friends are going out tonight but I.....
- 8 Julia watches television a lot but I.....

37.5 Answer these questions about yourself. Use **Yes, I have / No, I'm not** etc.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 Are you British? <u>No, I'm not</u> | 6 Do you like chocolate? |
| 2 Have you got a car? | 7 Will you be in Paris tomorrow? |
| 3 Is it raining? | 8 Have you ever played tennis? |
| 4 Do you feel well? | 9 Did you buy anything yesterday? |
| 5 Are you tired? | 10 Were you born in Europe? |



• In conversation, you can say **have you? / is it? / can't he?** etc. to show that you are interested or surprised. You can use these verbs in this way:

am/is/are was/were have/has do/does/did can will.

- 'You're late.' 'Oh, **am** I? I'm sorry.'
- 'I **was** ill last week.' 'Were **you**? I didn't know that.'
- 'It's raining again.' 'Is **it**? It was sunny five minutes ago.'
- 'Bill **can't** drive.' 'Can't **he**? I didn't know that.'
- 'I'm **not** hungry.' 'Aren't **you**? I am.'
- 'Sue **isn't** at work today.' 'Isn't **she**? Is she ill?'

Use **do/does** for the *present simple*, **did** for the *past simple*:

- 'I **speak** four languages.' 'Do **you**? Which ones?'
- 'Tom **doesn't** eat meat.' 'Doesn't **he**? Does he eat fish?'
- 'Linda **got** married last week.' 'Did **she**? Really?'

• Question tags

You can use ... **have you? / ... is it? / ... can't she?** etc. at the end of a sentence.

These 'endings' are *question tags*

(= mini-questions).

A *positive* sentence has a *negative* question tag

A *negative* sentence has a *positive* question tag



positive → *negative*

It's a beautiful day, **isn't it?**
 She lives in London, **doesn't she?**
 You closed the window, **didn't you?**
 Those shoes are nice, **aren't they?**
 Tom will be at home tomorrow, **won't he?**

Yes, it's lovely.
 Yes, that's right.
 Yes, I think so.
 Yes, very nice.
 Yes, I think so.

negative → *positive*

That **isn't** your car, **is it?**
 You **don't** smoke, **do you?**
 You **haven't** met my mother, **have you?**
 You **won't** be late, **will you?**

No, my car is white.
 No, never.
 No, I haven't.
 No, don't worry.

38.1 Answer with **Do you?** / **Doesn't she?** / **Did they?** etc.

1	I speak four languages.	<u>Do you</u> ? Which ones?
2	I work in a bank.	? I work in a bank too.
3	Tom phoned me last night.	? What did he say?
4	Jill doesn't like me.	? Why not?
5	I didn't eat anything.	? Weren't you hungry?
6	You look tired.	? I don't feel tired.

38.2 Answer with **Have you?** / **Haven't you?** / **Did she?** / **Didn't she?** etc.

1	I've bought a new car.	<u>Have you</u> ? What make is it?
2	Tim doesn't eat meat.	<u>Doesn't he</u> ? Does he eat fish?
3	I've lost my key.	? When did you last have it?
4	Sue was born in Rome.	? I didn't know that.
5	I can't swim.	? You must learn.
6	I didn't sleep well last night.	? Was the bed uncomfortable?
7	This ring is gold.	? It's very beautiful.
8	I'm not coming with you.	? Why not?
9	I met Pam last week.	? How is she?
10	She works in a factory.	? What kind of factory?
11	I won't be here next week.	? Where will you be?
12	The clock isn't working.	? It was working this morning.

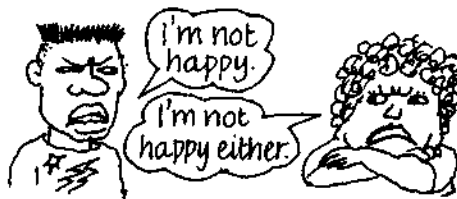
38.3 Complete these sentences with a question tag (**isn't it?** / **haven't you?** etc.).

1	It's a beautiful day, <u>isn't it</u> ?	Yes, it's lovely.
2	They're on holiday, ?	Yes, they're in Portugal.
3	She was angry, ?	Yes, very angry.
4	You've been to Paris, ?	Yes, many times.
5	You smoke, ?	Yes, but not often.
6	He looks very tired, ?	Yes, he works too hard.
7	You'll help me, ?	Yes, of course I will.

38.4 Complete these sentences with a question tag, positive (**is it?** / **do you?** etc.) or negative (**isn't it?** / **don't you?** etc.).

1	You haven't got a car, <u>have you</u> ?	No, I can't drive.
2	You aren't tired, ?	No, I'm fine.
3	Carol is a very nice person, ?	Yes, I like her very much.
4	You can play the piano, ?	Yes, but not very well.
5	You don't know Mr Bond, ?	No, I've never met him.
6	Sally went to university, ?	Yes, she studied history.
7	The firm wasn't very good, ?	No, it was terrible.

too and either



We use **too** and **either** at the end of a sentence.

We use **too** after a *positive* verb:

- 'I'm happy.' 'I'm happy **too**.'
- 'I enjoyed the film.' '**I enjoyed it too**.'
- Mary is a doctor. Her husband **is** a doctor **too**.

We use **either** after a *negative* verb (am **not** / isn't / can't etc.):

- 'I'm not happy.' 'I'm **not** happy **either**.' (not 'I'm not happy too')
- 'I can't cook.' '**I can't either**.'
- Bill doesn't watch TV. He doesn't read newspapers **either**.

So am I / Neither do I etc.



so	am/is/are	...
	was/were	—
	do/does	...
	did	...
	have/has	...
neither	can	...
	will	...
	must	...

So am I (= I am too), **So have I** (= I have too) etc.:

- 'I'm tired.' 'So **am I**.' (not 'So I am'.)
- 'I was late for work today.' 'So **was John**.'
- 'I work in a bank.' 'So **do I**.'
- 'We went to the cinema last night.' 'Did you? So **did we**.'


Neither am I (= I'm not either), **Neither have I** (= I haven't either) etc.:

- 'I haven't got a key.' '**Neither have I**.' (not 'Neither I have'.)
- 'Ann can't cook.' '**Neither can Tom**.'
- 'I won't (= will not) be here tomorrow.' '**Neither will I**.'
- 'I never eat meat.' '**Neither do I**.'


You can also use **Nor ...** (= **Neither**):

- 'I'm not married.' '**Nor am I**.' (= Neither am I.)

39.1 Put in **too** or **either**.




1 I'm happy.
2 I'm not hungry.
3 I'm tired.
4 It rained on Saturday.
5 Ann can't drive a car.
6 I don't smoke.
7 Jane's mother is a teacher.




I'm happy ...*ho.Q:*.....
I'm not hungry
I'm tired.....
It rained on Sunday.....
She can't ride a bicycle.....
I don't smoke
Her father is a teacher.....

39.2 Answer with **So ... I** (So am I / So do I / So **can** I etc.).




1 I went to bed late last night.
2 I'm hungry.
3 I've been to Rome.
4 I want to go home now.
5 I'll be late tomorrow.
6 I was surprised at the news.




So did I
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Answer with **Neither ... I**.




7 I can't play the piano.
8 I didn't buy a newspaper.
9 I haven't got any money.
10 I'm not working tomorrow.
11 I don't know them very well.




.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

39.3 You are talking to Maria. Write *true* answers about *yourself*. Where possible, use **So ... I** or **Neither ... I**. Look at the examples carefully.



I'm tired.
I can't play tennis.

you can answer:
you can answer:



So am I. or I'm not (tired).
Neither can I. or I can (play tennis).

1 I'm learning English.
2 I can ride a bicycle.
3 I'm not tired.
4 I like dancing.
5 I don't like cold weather.
6 I slept well last night.
7 I've never been to India.
8 I don't go to the cinema very often.
9 I'm going out tomorrow evening.
10 I haven't got a headache.
11 I didn't watch TV last night.
12 I need a holiday.

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

UNIT 40

Negatives: isn't/haven't/don't etc.

- We use **not** (n't) in negative sentences:

positive—* *negative*

am	am not ('m not)	I'm not tired.
is	is not (isn't <i>or</i>'s not)	It isn't (<i>or</i> It's not) raining.
are	are not (aren't <i>or</i> 're not)	They aren't (<i>or</i> They're not) here.
was	was not (wasn't)	Jack wasn't hungry.
were	were not (weren't)	The shops weren't open.
have	have not (haven't)	I haven't finished my work.
has	has not (hasn't)	Sue hasn't got a car.
will	will not (won't)	They won't be here tomorrow.
would	would not (wouldn't)	I wouldn't like to be an actor.
can	cannot (can't)	George can't drive.
could	could not (couldn't)	I couldn't sleep last night.
should	should not (shouldn't)	You shouldn't work so hard.
must	must not (mustn't)	I mustn't forget to phone Ann.

- *Present simple* negative (• Unit 6):

I/we/you/they **do not** (**don't**) \ , . , - . - , • /« ; \
 , , , , , , , , , , + infinitive (**work/hve/go etc.**)
 he/she/it **does not** (**doesn t**) }

Past simple negative (• Unit 10):

I/they/he/she etc. **did not (didn't)** + *infinitive*

positive \longrightarrow *negative*

I smoke. —» I don't smoke.

They **work** hard. —» They **don't work** hard.

Tom **plays** the guitar. —> Tom **doesn't play** the guitar.

She **likes** her job. —> She **doesn't like** her job.

I got up early. —» **I didn't get** up early.

We **worked** hard. —» We **didn't work** hard.

They **saw** the film. —» They **didn't** see the film.

She **had** a bath. —» She **didn't have** a bath.

- The negative of 'Look!', 'Go away!' etc. is 'Don't...!':

Look! - * Don't look!

Go away! —> Don't go away!

- **Do** can also be the main verb (**don't do / didn't do** etc.):

positive \longrightarrow *negative*

Do it. —> Don't do it.

He does a lot of work. —» He **doesn't do** much work.

I **did** the examination. —» I **didn't do** the examination.

40.1 Make these sentences negative.

- 1 I'm tired. I'm not tired.
- 2 He's got a car. He hasn't got a car.
- 3 They are married.....
- 4 I've had dinner.....
- 5 It's cold today.....
- 6 I can see you.....

- 7 We were late.....
- 8 I'm going out.....
- 9 She has gone out.....
- 10 I'll be late tonight.....
- 11 It was expensive.....
- 12 You should go.....

40.2 Make negatives with don't/doesn't/didn't.

- 1 He saw me. He didn't see me.
- 2 Do it! Don't do it.
- 3 I like fish.....
- 4 She smokes.....
- 5 Look at me!
- 6 I got up early.....

- 7 They understood.....
- 8 Phone me tonight.....
- 9 I did the shopping.....
- 10 He lives near here.....
- 11 It rained yesterday.....
- 12 They did the work.....

40.3 Make these sentences negative.

- 1 It's raining. It isn't raining.
- 2 She saw the film. She didn't see the film.
- 3 She can swim.....
- 4 They're on holiday.....
- 5 He speaks German.....
- 6 I enjoyed the film.....
- 7 It's important.....

- 8 We watched TV.....
- 9 They were angry.....
- 10 He'll be pleased.....
- 11 I went to the bank.....
- 12 She's got a camera.....
- 13 Open the door.....
- 14 I could hear them.....

40.4 Complete these sentences with a negative verb (isn't/haven't/don't etc.).

- 1 The sun is shining. It isn't raining.
- 2 She isn't rich. She hasn't got much money.
- 3 'Would you like something to eat?' 'No, thank you. I.....hungry.'
- 4 I.....hear you. Please speak louder.
- 5 George.....write letters very often. He prefers to phone.
- 6 I don't like this book. It.....very interesting.
- 7 'Where is Jill?' 'I.....know. I.....seen her today.'
- 8 She.....go to work yesterday because she.....very well, but she's better today.
- 9 Be careful!.....fall!
- 10 We.....take an umbrella with us because the weather was fine.
- 11 I've been to Spain many times but I.....been to Portugal.
- 12 When we were in London, we stayed with friends. We.....stay at a hotel.
- 13 She.....be here tomorrow. She's going away.
- 14 'Who broke that window?' 'Not me! I.....do it.'
- 15 The box was too heavy. We tried to lift it but we.....
- 16 We didn't see what happened. We.....looking at the time.

UNIT 41

Questions (1): is it...? have you...? do they...? etc.

positive **you are** You are eating.
 question **are you** Are you eating? What are you eating?

- In questions, the first verb (**is/are/have** etc.) is *before* the subject:

positive		question
subject + verb		verb + subject
I am late.	→	Am I late?
That seat is free.	→	Is that seat free?
She was angry.	→ Why	was she angry?
David has gone.	→ Where	has David gone?
You have got a car.	→	Have you got a car?
They will be here.	→ When	will they be here?
Tom can swim.	→	Can Tom swim?

- Be careful with word order: the subject is after the first verb:
 - Where **has David** gone? (*not* 'Where has gone David?')
 - Why **are those people** waiting? (*not* 'Why are waiting those people?')
- Present simple questions: **do** (I/we/you/they) } + infinitive (**work/live/go** etc.)
 (▶ Unit 7) **does** (he/she/it)
- Past simple questions: **did** (you/they/she etc.) 4- infinitive
 (▶ Unit 10)


positive		question
You smoke .	→	Do you smoke?
They live in London.	→ Where	do they live?
Jack smokes .	→	Does Jack smoke?
She gets up early.	→ What time	does she get up?
They worked hard.	→	Did they work hard?
You had dinner.	→ What	did you have for dinner?
She got up early.	→ What time	did she get up?

- Do** can also be the main verb (**do you do** / **did she do** etc.):
 - What **do you** usually **do** at weekends?
 - 'What **does your sister do**?' 'She works in a bank.'
 - 'I broke my leg.' 'How **did you do** that?' (*not* 'How did you that?')
- Negative questions with **Why ... ? (Why isn't...? / Why don't ... ? etc.)**:
 Be careful with word order in these questions:
 - Where's John? **Why isn't he** here? (*not* 'Why he isn't here?')
 - Why can't they** come to the meeting tomorrow? (*not* 'Why they can't ...?')
 - Why didn't you** phone me last night?

41.1 Write questions.

- | | | |
|---------------------------------|------------|------------------------------|
| 1 I can swim. | (and you?) | <u>Can you swim</u>? |
| 2 I smoke. | (and Jim?) | <u>Does Jim smoke</u>? |
| 3 I was late this morning. | (and you?) |? |
| 4 I've got a key. | (and Ann?) |? |
| 5 I'll be here tomorrow. | (and you?) |? |
| 6 I'm going out this evening. | (and Tom?) |? |
| 7 I've finished my work. | (and you?) |? |
| 8 I like my job. | (and you?) |? |
| 9 I live near the city centre. | (and Pam?) |? |
| 10 I enjoyed my holiday. | (and you?) |? |
| 11 I had a shower this morning, | (and you?) |? |


41.2 You are asking somebody questions. Write the full questions.

- 
- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 (tired?) | <u>Are you tired</u>? |
| 2 (play the piano?) |? |
| 3 (married?) |? |
| 4 (live in a city?) |? |
| 5 (been to India?) |? |
| 6 (go out last night?) |? |
| 7 (like chocolate?) |? |
| 8 (watch TV yesterday?) |? |
| 9 (sleep well last night?) |? |



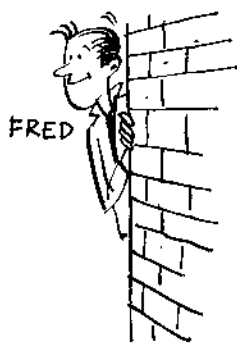
Yes, a little.
 Yes, but not very well.
 No, I'm single.
 No, in a small village.
 No, never.
 No, I stayed at home.
 Yes, I love it.
 No, I never watch TV.
 No, not very well.

41.3 Ask questions.

- 
- | | |
|----|-------------------------------|
| 1 | I want to go. |
| 2 | They aren't here. |
| 3 | It's important. |
| 4 | I'm reading. |
| 5 | Jan went home. |
| 6 | Dave and Mary are going away. |
| 7 | I like music. |
| 8 | I met Tim. |
| 9 | He is going to stay here. |
| 10 | The children have gone. |
| 11 | I can't come to the party. |
| 12 | I broke the window. |
| 13 | I need some money. |
| 14 | She did her driving test. |
| 15 | I don't like her. |
| 16 | It rains a lot. |



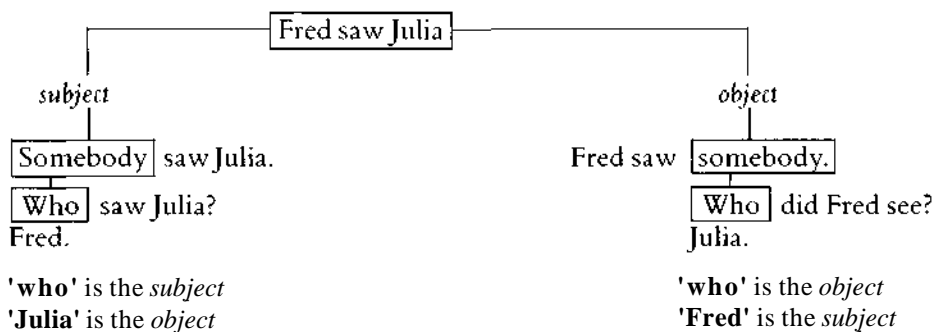
Where do you want to go.....?
 Why aren't they here.....?
 Why.....?
 What.....you.....?
 What time.....?
 When.....?
 What kind of music.....?
 Where.....?
 How long.....?
 Where.....?
 Why.....?
 How.....?
 How much money.....?
 When.....?
 Why.....?
 How often.....?



Fred saw Julia.

Who **saw** Julia? Fred.

Who **did** Fred **see**? Julia.



- In these questions **who** or **what** is the *subject*:
 - **Who lives** in that house? (= Somebody lives there - who?)
(not 'Who does live ...?')
 - **What happened?** (= Something happened - what?)
(not 'What did happen?')
 - **What's** (= **What is**) **burning?**
 - **Who's got** (= **Who has got**) my key?
- In these questions **who** or **what** is the *object*:
 - **Who did you meet** yesterday? (= You met somebody - who?)
 - **What did she say?** (= She said something - what?)
 - **Who are you phoning?**
 - **What was he wearing?**

Compare:

- George likes eggs. —> **Who likes** eggs? George.
What does George **like**? Eggs.
- Jill won some money. —> **Who won** some money? Jill.
What did Jill **win**? Some money.

- Use **who** for people (somebody), **what** for things, ideas etc. (something):
 - **Who** is your favourite singer?
 - **What** is your favourite song?

UNIT 42 Exercises

42.1 Make questions with **who** and **what**. In these sentences **who/what** is the subject.



- 1 Somebody broke the window.
- 2 Something happened.
- 3 Somebody is coming.
- 4 Somebody took my umbrella.
- 5 Something made me angry.
- 6 Somebody wants to see you.
- 7 Somebody told me about the accident.
- 8 Something went wrong.

Who broke the window..... ?
 What happened..... ?
 Who ?
 your umbrella ?
 you angry ?
 me ?
 you..... ?
 p



42.2 Make questions with **who** and **what**. In these sentences **who/what** is the object.



- 1 I met somebody.
- 2 I'm doing something.
- 3 I'm reading something.
- 4 I saw somebody.
- 5 I want something.
- 6 I phoned somebody.
- 7 I'm going to cook something.
- 8 I bought something.

Who did you meet..... ?
 What are you doing..... ?
 What you..... ?
 Who..... ?
 ?
 ?
 ?
 ?



42.3 Make questions with **who** and **what**. Sometimes **who/what** is the subject, sometimes **who/what** is the object.



- 1 Somebody lives in that house.
- 2 Tom said something.
- 3 They have lost something.
- 4 Somebody cleaned the kitchen.
- 5 I asked somebody for money.
- 6 Somebody asked me for money.
- 7 Something happened last night.
- 8 Jack bought something.
- 9 Somebody telephoned me yesterday.
- 10 I telephoned somebody yesterday.
- 11 Somebody knows the answer.
- 12 Something woke me up this morning.
- 13 Somebody has got my pen.
- 14 Tom and Ann saw something.
- 15 Somebody saw the accident.
- 16 Somebody did the washing-up.
- 17 Jill did something.
- 18 This word means something.

Who lives in that house..... ?
 What did Tom say..... ?
 What..... ?
 Who..... ?
 Who..... you..... money ?
 Who..... ?
 What..... ?
 What..... ?
 Who..... ?
 Who..... ?
 Who..... ?
 What..... ?
 What..... ?
 Who..... pen ?
 What..... ?
 Who..... ?
 Who..... ?
 What..... ?
 What..... ?





Julia is talking to someone.

Who?

Who is Julia talking to?

• Questions (**Who ... ?/What... ?/Where ... ?/Which ... ?**) often end with a *preposition* (**to/for/about/with** etc.):

- 'I'm thinking.' **'What** are you thinking **about**?'
 - 'I'm afraid.' 'Why? **What** are you afraid of?'
 - '**Where** is your friend **from**?' 'She's from Germany.'
 - '**Who** does this book belong to?' 'It's mine.'
 - '**Who** did she go on holiday **with**?' 'With her parents.'
 - '**What** does he look **like**?' 'He's got a beard and wears glasses.'
 - 'This book is very good.' 'Is it? **What** is it **about**?'
 - 'Tom's father is in hospital.' '**Which** hospital is he in?'

• **What (is/are/was/were) ... like?**



'What is it like?' = Tell me something about it; is it good or bad, big or small, old or new? etc.

When we say '**What... like?**', **like** is a *preposition*. It is *not* the verb **like** (**Do you like music?** etc.).

- A: **I** went to the new restaurant last night.
B: Oh, did you? **What's** it **like**? Good?
A: Yes, excellent.
- A: **What's** your new teacher **like**?
B: She's very good. We learn a lot.
- A: I met Linda's parents yesterday.
B: Oh, **what** are they **like**?
A: They're very friendly.
- A: **What** was the weather **like** when you were on holiday?
B: Very nice.

43.1 Write questions.



- 1 I'm thinking about something.
- 2 He went out with somebody.
- 3 I'm 'waiting for somebody.
- 4 She danced with somebody.
- 5 He's interested in something.
- 6 I had dinner with somebody.
- 7 They're looking for something.
- 8 George was with somebody.
- 9 I gave the money to somebody.
- 10 I'm looking at something.
- 11 They were talking about something.
- 12 I dreamt about somebody.
- 13 He was afraid of something.
- 14 They're going to a restaurant.
- 15 She spoke to somebody.
- 16 I stayed at a hotel.

- What are you thinking about ?
- Who did he go out with ?
- Who are you ?
- Who did she ?
- What ?
- Who ?
- What ?
- Who ?
- Who ?
- What ?
- What ?
- Who ?
- What ?
- Which restaurant ?
- Who ?
- Which hotel ?

43.2 You are talking to somebody from another country. You want some information about the country. Ask questions with **What is/are ... like?**

- 1 (the houses) What are the houses like ?
- 2 (the food) What ?
- 3 (the weather) ?
- 4 (the people) ?
- 5 (your city) ?
- 6 (the shops) ?
- 7 (the schools) ?
- 8 (TV programmes) ?

43.3 Ask questions with **What was/were ... like?**

- 1 Your friend has just come back from holiday. Ask about the weather.
What was the weather like ?
- 2 Your friend has just come back from the cinema. Ask about the film.
What ?
- 3 Your friend has just arrived at the airport. Ask about the flight.
..... ?
- 4 Your friend has just been to a concert. Ask about the concert.
..... ?
- 5 Your friend has just finished an English course. Ask about the lessons.
..... ?
- 6 Your friend has just come back from holiday. Ask about the hotel.
..... ?

UNIT 44 What...? Which...? How...?

• What... ?

What 4- *noun* (**What colour ... ? / What kind ... ?** etc.):

- **What colour** is your car? **What colour** are your eyes?
- **What size** is this shirt? **What kind of** job do you want?
- **What make** is your TV set? **What time** is it?

What *without a noun*:

- What's your favourite colour?
- **What** do you want to do this evening?

What and **Who** • Unit 42

• Which ... ?

Which + *noun* (*things or people*):

- **Which train** did you catch - the 9.50 or the 10.30?
- **Which doctor** did you see - Doctor Ellis, Doctor Gray or Doctor Hill?

Which *without a noun* (*not people*):

- **Which** is bigger - Canada or Australia?

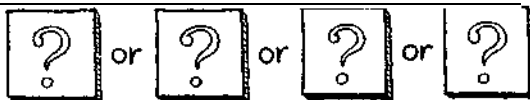
but **Who** is taller - Bill or Jerry? (**Who** *for people*)

Which one(s) • Unit 69

• What...? and Which...?

We say **Which** when we are thinking about a small number (perhaps two, three or four things):

- We can go this way or that way.
 Which way shall we go?
- There are four umbrellas here.
 Which is yours?



WHICH?

Use **What** in other situations:

- **What** is the capital of Italy?
- **What sort** of music do you like? (*not* 'Which sort ...?')

Compare:

- **What colour** are your eyes? (*not* 'Which colour ...?')

but **Which colour** do you prefer, pink or yellow?

• How ... ?

- '**How** was the party last night?' it was great!
- '**How** do you usually go to work?' 'By bus.'

How + *adjective/adverb* (**how old / how big / how fast** etc.):

- **How old** is your father? **How tall** are you? **How big** is the house?
- **How far** is it to the shops from here?
- **How often** do you go on holiday?

44.1 Write questions with Which.



- 1 He stayed at a hotel.
- 2 We're going to a restaurant.
- 3 She reads a newspaper.
- 4 I'm going to learn a language.
- 5 They visited many places.
- 6 I'm waiting for a bus.



Which hotel did he stay at

-to ?
?
?
?
?
?

44.2 Put in what/which/who.

- 1 What that man's name?
- 2 Which way shall we go? This way or the other way?
- 3 You can have tea or coffee.....do you want?
- 4 'I can't find my umbrella.' '.....colour is it?'
- 5.....is your favourite sport?
- 6 This is a very nice house.....room is yours?
- 7.....is more expensive, meat or fish?
- 8.....is older, Ann or George?
- 9.....is your telephone number?
- 10.....kind of TV programmes do you like watching?
- 11 'She's got three cars.' '.....car does she use most?'
- 12 '.....nationality are you?' 'I'm Brazilian.'

44.3 Write questions with What... ? or How ...?

- 1 Are his eyes blue? Green? Brown? What colour are his eyes
- 2 Did you get up at 7 o'clock? 7.30? 8.15?
- 3 Are you 20 years old? 21? 22?
- 4 Is the door red? Blue? Yellow?
- 5 Do you watch TV every day? Once a week? Never?
- 6 Are these shoes size 37? 38? 39?
- 7 Is it 1000 miles from Paris to Moscow? 1500? 2000?
- 8 Is your room very big? Quite big? Not very big?
- 9 Do you like classical music? Rock? Folk music?
- 10 Can you run one kilometre? Five? Ten?
- 11 Is your pullover size 38? 40? 42?
- 12 Are you 1.75 metres? 1.80? 1.85?
- 13 Is it Monday? Tuesday? Wednesday?
- 14 Is this box one kilogram? One and a half? Two?
- 15 Can this plane fly at 500 miles an hour? 600? 700?
- 16 Do you like horror films? Science fiction films? Thrillers? Comedies?

UNIT 45

How long does it take?



How long **does it take** by plane
from London to Madrid?

It takes two hours.

I started reading the book two
weeks ago. I finished it today.

It took me two weeks to read it.

How long does it take	by plane by train by car	from ... to ... ?
------------------------------	--------------------------------	-------------------

It takes	two hours ten minutes a long time	by plane by train by car	from ... to ...
-----------------	---	--------------------------------	-----------------

— **How long does it take** by tram from London to Manchester?

It takes two hours by train from London to Manchester.

- **How long does it take** by car from your house to the station?

It takes ten minutes by car from my house to the station.

How long	did does will	it take	(you) (Ann) (them)	to (do something)?
----------	--	----------------	--------------------------	---------------------------

It	took takes will take	(me) (Ann) (them)	a week a long time three hours	to (do something).
-----------	---	-------------------------	--------------------------------------	---------------------------

- **How long does it take to cross** the Atlantic Ocean by ship?
- **How long will it take me to learn** to drive?
- 'I came by train.' 'Did you? **How long did it take?**'
- **Did it take you a long time to find** a job?
- **It takes a long time to learn** a language.
- **It takes me 20 minutes to get** to work in the morning.
- **It took Tom an hour to do** his shopping.
- **It will take me an hour to cook** the dinner.
- **It doesn't take long to cook** an omelette.

45.1 Write questions with **How long does it take ... ?**

- 1 (by plane / London / Madrid) *How long does it take by plane from London to Madrid ... ?*
- 2 (by car / Rome / Milan).....?
- 3 (by bus / the city centre / the airport)?
- 4 (by plane / Cairo / London).....?
- 5 (by taxi / the station / the hotel).....?
- 6 (by train / Paris / Geneva).....?
- 7 (by boat / Dover / Ostend).....?
- 8 (by bicycle / your house / your work)?

45.2 Look at the timetable of flights from London. How long does it take to get to each place? Write sentences with **It takes...**

from LONDON	depart	arrive
to EDINBURGH	07.10	08.20
MANCHESTER	07.15	08.05
NEWCASTLE	07.30	08.30
CORK	11.15	12.30
ABERDEEN	09.25	10.50
BELFAST	08.30	09.40

How long does it take to fly to:

- 1 Edinburgh? *It takes an hour and ten minutes.*
- 2 Manchester? It
- 3 Newcastle?
- 4 Cork?
- 5 Aberdeen?
- 6 Belfast?

45.3 Write questions with **How long did it take ... ?**

- 1 She found a job. *How long did it take her to find a job ... ?*
- 2 I walked to the station.....you.....?
- 3 They cleaned the house.....?
- 4 I learnt to swim.....?
- 5 He found an apartment.....?

45.4 Write sentences with **It took ...**

- 1 (he read the book / two weeks) *It took him two weeks to read the book.*
- 2 (we walked home / an hour)
- 3 (I learnt to drive / a long time)
- 4 (they repaired the car / all day)
- 5 Write a true sentence about yourself:

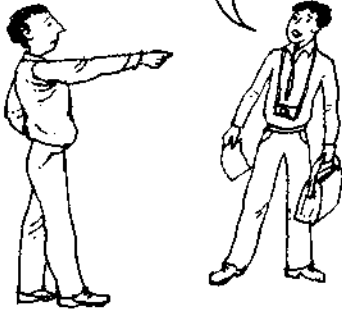
45.5 How long does it take (you) to do these things? Write full sentences.

- 1 (run five kilometres?) *It takes me about 30 minutes to run five kilometres.*
- 2 (have a shower?)
- 3 (fly to London from your country?)
- 4 (study to be a doctor in your country?)
- 5 (walk from your house to the nearest shop?)

UNIT 46

Can you tell me where...? Do you know what... ? etc.

Excuse me, can you tell me where the station is, please?



We say:

Where **is** the station?

but

Can you tell me where the station **is** ?

(not 'Can you tell me where is the station?')

also:

I know

I don't know

Do you know

I can't remember

I wonder

(etc.)

where the station is (?)

Who are those people?
Where **have they** gone?
How old **is** Tom?
What time **is the** bus?
When **is** Ann going away?
How much **is this** camera?
Why **were they** late?
What **was he** wearing?

but

Do you know	who those people are	
I don't know	where they've gone	(?)
I know	how old Tom is	
Can you tell me	what time the bus is	
I can't remember	when Ann is going away	(?)
	how much this camera is	
	why they were late	
	what he was wearing	

- Questions with **do/does/did** {present simple and past simple}:

Where **does he live** ?

Do you know where **he lives** ? (not 'Do you know where does he live?')

How **do** aeroplanes fly?
What **does** she want?
Why **did** she go home?
Where **did** I put the key?

but

Do you know	how aeroplanes fly	(?)
I don't know	what she wants	
I know	why she went home	
I can't remember	where I put the key	

- Questions beginning **Is ... ? / Do ... ? / Can ... ?** etc. (yes/no questions):

Is Jack at home?
Have they got a car?
Can he help us?
Does Ann smoke?
Did anybody see you?

but

Do you know	if	Jack is at home	
I don't know	or	they've got a car	(?)
	whether	he can help us	
		Ann smokes	
		anybody saw me	

You can use **if or whether** in these sentences:

- Do you know if she smokes? or Do you know whether she smokes?

46.1 You are a tourist. Ask **Excuse me, can you tell me where ... ?**

- 1 (the station) Excuse me, can you tell me where the station is
- 2 (the museum) Excuse me,
- 3 (the information centre).....
- 4 (the nearest bank).....

46.2 Answer these questions with **I don't know where/when/why ... etc.**



Have they gone to London?

- 1 Is he in the garden?
- 2 Are they leaving tomorrow?
- 3 Was he angry because I was late?
- 4 Are they from Australia?
- 5 Is the house very old?
- 6 Will he be here soon?



(where) I don't know where they've gone.

- (where) I don't know where
- (when).....when
- (why) I don't know
- (where) I
- (how old)
- (when)

46.3 Write sentences with **Do you know ... ? / I don't remember... etc.**

- 1 (How do aeroplanes fly?) Do you know how aeroplanes fly
- 2 (Where does Susan work?) I don't know
- 3 (Where do they live?) Do you know.....
- 4 (What did he say?) Do you remember.....
- 5 (What time does the concert begin?) Do you know.....
- 6 (Why did they leave early?) I don't know
- 7 (How did the accident happen?) I don't remember.....

46.4 Ask questions with **Do you know if (or whether)...**

- 1 (Have they got a car?) Do you know if they've got a car
- 2 (Are they married?) Do you know.....
- 3 (Does she like her job?) Do you know.....
- 4 (Will George be here tomorrow?) Do.....
- 5 (Did he pass his examination?).....

46.5 Write new questions beginning **Do you know ... ?**

- 1 (What does she want?) Do you know what she wants
- 2 (Where is Ann?) Do you know where.....
- 3 (Is Pat working today?) Do you.....
- 4 (What time do they start work?) Do.....
- 5 (Do they work on Sundays?).....
- 6 (Why were they so nervous?).....
- 7 (Where did Stella go?).....
- 8 (Are the shops open tomorrow?).....

UNIT 47 to... (I want to do) and -ing (I enjoy doing)

- *verbs* + **to ... (I want to do)**

want	decide	hope	try
need	offer	expect	forget
plan	refuse	promise	learn

+ **to ... (to do / to work / to be etc.)**

- What do you **want to do** this evening?
- I **hope to go** to university next year.
- We have **decided to leave** tomorrow morning.
- You **forgot to switch** off the light when you went out.
- My brother is **learning to drive**.
- I **tried to work** but I was too tired.

- *verbs* + **-ing (I like doing)**

like	love	suggest	stop
enjoy	hate	mind	finish

+ **-ing (doing/working/being etc.)**

- I **enjoy** dancing, (*not* 'enjoy to dance')
- Do you **like** driving?
- I **hate** getting up in the morning.
- Ann **loves going** to the cinema.
- Has it **stopped** raining?
- Mary **suggested** going to the cinema.
- I don't **mind** being alone.



but:

would like	would hate
would love	would prefer

+ **to ... (to do / to work / to be etc.)**

- Jan **would like to meet** you. (*not* 'would like meeting')
- I'd **love to go** to Australia. (I'd = I would)
- 'Would you **like to sit** down?' 'No, I'd **prefer to stand**, thank you.'
- I **wouldn't like to be** a teacher.

would like • Unit 30

- *verbs* + **to ... or -ing:**

start	continue
begin	prefer

+ **to ... (to do etc.)
or -ing (doing etc.)**

- It **started raining**, *or* It **started to rain**.
- I **prefer travelling** by car. *or* I **prefer to travel** by car.
(*but would prefer to do something*)

47.1 Put the verb in the right form, to ... or -ing.

- 1 I enjoy dancing (dance).
- 2 Where do you want to go (go)?
- 3 What have you decided.....(do)?
- 4 I learnt.....(swim) when I was five years old.
- 5 I'm trying.....(work). Please stop.....(talk).
- 6 Have you finished.....(clean) the kitchen?
- 7 I'm tired. I want.....(go) to bed.
- 8 The weather was nice, so I suggested.....(go) for a walk by the river.
- 9 Don't forget.....(send) me a postcard when you're on holiday.
- 10 Where's Bill? He promised.....(be) here on time.
- 11 Do you enjoy.....(read) books?
- 12 I don't mind.....(travel) by tram but I prefer.....(fly).
- 13 We invited Jane to the party but she didn't want.....(come).
- 14 Goodbye. I hope.....(see) you again soon.
- 15 You must stop.....(work) so hard. It's bad for you.
- 16 They were very angry and refused.....(speak) to me.
- 17 Where is Ann? I need.....(talk) to her.
- 18 Why did you start.....(cry)?
- 19 I enjoy.....(visit) other countries.

47.2 Ask questions with Do you like ... ?

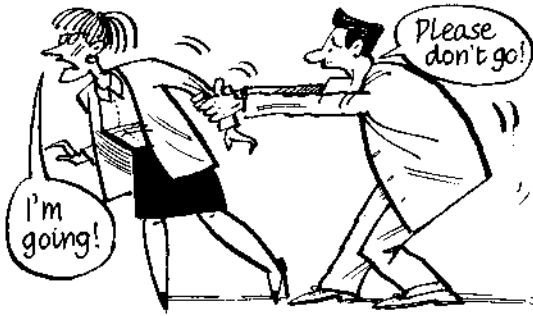
- 1 I often get up early. Do you like getting up early
- 2 I often write letters. Do you like.....?
- 3 I often travel by train. Do.....?
- 4 I often visit museums.....?
- 5 I often eat in restaurants.....?

Do you like doing these things? Use I like / don't like / hate / don't mind...

- 6 I don't mind getting up early (or I like .../I don't like ... I \ hate ...)
- 7 I.....letters.
- 8.....tram.
- 9.....
- 10.....

47.3 Put the verb in the right form, to ... or -ing.

- 1 Pam would like to meet (meet) you.
- 2 Do you like driving (drive)?
- 3 I like your house. Do you like.....(live) here?
- 4 What would you like.....(do) this evening?
- 5 I'd love.....(help) you but it's impossible.
- 6 I travel a lot. I love.....(travel).
- 7 My brother is a teacher but he doesn't like.....(teach) very much.
- 8 This ring is very beautiful. I'd hate.....(lose) it.
- 9 Would you prefer.....(leave) now or later?
- 10 He wasn't happy when he lost the game. He hates.....(lose).



The woman **wants to go**.

The man **doesn't want the woman to go**.
He **wants her to stay**.

(I) want to ...

(I) want (somebody) to ...

• We say **I want (you) to ...**:

- **I want you to be happy**, (*not* 'I want that you are happy.')
- They didn't **want anybody to know** their secret.

We also use this structure (*verb + somebody + to ...*) with:

tell	I	told	you	to be	careful.
ask	She	asked	her friend	to help	her.
advise	What do you	advise	me	to do?	
persuade	We	persuaded	George	to come	with us.
expect	I didn't	expect	you	to be	here.
teach	I	taught	my brother	to swim.	

• **I told (somebody) to ... / I told (somebody) not to ...**:



- Tom said (to Ann): '**Wait for me!**'
—* Tom **told** Ann **to wait for him**.
- Tom said (to Ann): '**Don't wait for me.**'
—> Tom **told** Ann **not to wait for him**.

• **make** and **let**

After **make** and **let** we do *not* use **to**:

- He's very funny. He **makes us laugh**, (*not* 'makes us to laugh')
- I don't want you to go alone. **Let me go** with you. (*not* 'Let me to go')

Let's (do something)

You can say **Let's ...** (= **let us**) when you want people to do things with you:

- Come on! **Let's dance!**
- 'Shall we go out tonight?' 'No, I'm tired. **Let's stay** at home.'

• **help**

You can say **help** somebody **do** or **help** somebody **to do**:

- Tom **helped me carry** the box. or Tom **helped me to carry** the box.

48.1 Write sentences beginning I (don't) want you ... / Do you want me ... ?

- 1 (you must come with me) ... I want you to come with me.
- 2 (shall I come with you?) ... Do you want me to come with you?
- 3 (listen carefully) ... I want
- 4 (please don't be angry) ... I don't
- 5 (shall I wait for you?) ... Do you
- 6 (don't phone me tonight)
- 7 (you must meet Sarah)
- 8 (shall I make some coffee?)

48.2 Write sentences with advised/persuaded/let etc.

- 1 (George came with us / we persuaded him) ... We persuaded George to come with us.
- 2 (I stayed in bed / the doctor advised me) ... The doctor
- 3 (she phoned me / I asked her) ... I
- 4 (I went to the party / Tom persuaded me) ... Tom
- 5 (I used their phone / they let me) ... They
- 6 (Ann plays the piano / her mother taught her) ... Ann's

48.3 Write sentences with told.

- 1 Tom said to Ann: 'Wait for me!' ... Tom told Ann to wait for him.
- 2 I said to you: 'Don't wait for me.' ... I told you not to wait for me.
- 3 The man said to me: 'Get into the car!' ... The man told
- 4 I said to the children: 'Be quiet.' ... I
- 5 She said to me: 'Don't lose the key.' ... She
- 6 Tom said to me: 'Phone me later.'
- 7 I said to Tom: 'Don't say anything.'

48.4 Complete these sentences with the verbs in the list. Sometimes **to** is necessary (**to get** / **to arrive** etc.) and sometimes **to** is not necessary (**get/arrive** etc.).

arrive clean cry do explain ~~go~~ get hear know sleep
wait walk

- 1 Please stay with me. I don't want you to go.
- 2 Kevin's parents didn't want him married.
- 3 She didn't understand the story, so she asked me it to her.
- 4 Don't wake me up tomorrow morning. Let me
- 5 Talk quietly. I don't want anybody us.
- 6 'Do you want to go by car?' 'No, let's'
- 7 You're here early. I expected you later.
- 8 It was a very sad film. It made me
- 9 Please don't tell Sarah about my plan. I don't want her
- 10 The kitchen is very dirty. Can you help me it?
- 11 'Shall we begin?' 'No, let's a few minutes.'
- 12 What do you think about my problem? What do you advise me



I'm tired.

He said that he was tired.



I have no money.

She told me that she had no money.

- After **said that / told** (somebody) **that...** a verb is usually *past*:

am/is → was	(she said) 'I'm working.' → She said that she was working. (they said to us) 'The hotel isn't very good.' → They told us that the hotel wasn't very good.
are → were	(I said) 'The shops are open.' → I said that the shops were open.
have/has → had	(I said to him) 'I've finished my work.' → I told him that I had finished my work.
can → could	(Tom said) 'I can't come to the party.' → Tom said that he couldn't come to the party.
will → would	(my friends said to me) 'The exam will be easy.' → My friends told me that the exam would be easy.
do/does → did	(I said) 'It doesn't matter.' → I said that it didn't matter. (he said) 'I don't know your address.' → He said that he didn't know my address.
like → liked	(Mary said) 'I like tomatoes.' → Mary said that she liked tomatoes.
go → went (etc.)	(they said) 'We often go to the cinema.' → They said that they often went to the cinema.

- **say** (↔ **said**) and **tell** (↔ **told**)

say something (to somebody): They **said that**. . . (not 'They said me that . . .')

tell somebody something: They **told me that**. . . / They **told Ann that**. . .

- **He said** that he was tired, (not 'He said *me* that he was tired.')
- but* He **told me** that he was tired, (not 'He told that he was tired.')
- What did he **say to you**? (not 'say you')
- but* What did he **tell you**? (not 'tell to you')











- '**that**' is not necessary in these sentences. You can say:

- He said **that** he was tired, *or* He said he was tired, (without '**that**')

49.1 A is talking to B about other people. Finish A's second sentence.

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------|
| 1 A: She likes you.
A: Yes, she told me that <u>she liked you.</u> | B: Does she? Are you sure? |
| 2 A: He is married.
A: Yes, he told me that he | B: Is he? Are you sure? |
| 3 A: She can play tennis.
A: Yes, she said that | B: Can she? Are you sure? |
| 4 A: They are from Italy.
A: Yes, they told me that | B: Are they? Are you sure? |
| 5 A: She has got a job.
A: Yes, she told me that | B: Has she? Are you sure? |
| 6 A: They will help us.
A: Yes, they said that | B: Will they? Are you sure? |
| 7 A: He is going to India.
A: Yes, he said that | B: Is he? Are you sure? |
| 8 A: She works in a bank.
A: Yes, she told me that | B: Does she? Are you sure? |
| 9 A: They live in London.
A: Yes, they told me that | B: Do they? Are you sure? |
| 10 A: She is studying art.
A: Yes, she said that | B: Is she? Are you sure? |

49.2 Read what these people say and then write sentences with **She/He said that...**

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1  I'm tired.
He said that he was tired. | 6  I'm learning German. |
| 2  I'll phone later.
She said that she | 7  I can't drive a car. |
| 3  I don't want to study.
He said | 8  I know the answer. |
| 4  I haven't been to London.
He | 9  I'm not going out. |
| 5  I've lost my key. | 10  I've got a lot of problems. |

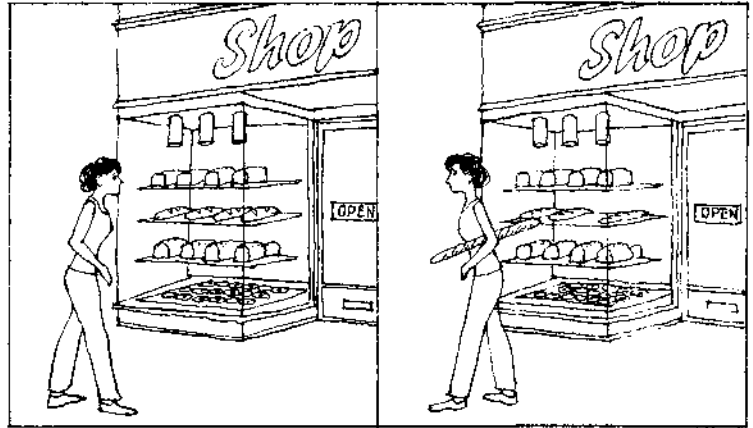
49.3 Put in **say/said** or **tell/told**.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 She <u>said</u> that she was tired. | 6 Did Lucy that she would be late? |
| 2 He <u>told</u> me that he was tired. | 7 I didn't the police anything. |
| 3 I her that it was important. | 8 The man us he was a reporter. |
| 4 Jack me you were ill. | 9 He he was a reporter. |
| 5 She she didn't like Peter. | 10 Did they you their names? |

Ann didn't have any bread.
But she wanted some bread.
So she went to the shop.

Why did she go to the shop?
To **buy** some bread.

She went to the shop **to buy**
some bread.



- **to ... (to do / to buy / to see etc.)** tells us *why* a person does something (*the purpose*):
 - "Why are you going out?" 'To **buy** a newspaper.'
 - George went to the station **to meet** his friend.
 - She turned on the TV **to watch** the news.
 - I'd like to go to Spain **to learn** Spanish.

money/time to (do something):

- We need some **money to buy** food.
- I haven't got **time to watch** television.

- **to ... and for ...:**

to + verb: **to buy / to have / to see** etc.

for + noun: **for some bread / for dinner / for a holiday** etc.

- She went to the shop **to buy** some bread, (**to + verb**)
- but* She went to the shop **for some bread**, (**for + noun**)
- They are going to Scotland **to see** their grandmother, (*not 'for to see'*)
- but* They are going to Scotland **for a holiday**.
- We need some money **to buy** food, (*not 'for buy'*)
- but* We need some money **for food**.

- wait

wait for somebody/something:

- Are you **waiting for the bus**?
- Please wait **for me**.

wait for somebody/something **to ...:**

- I can't go out yet. **I'm waiting for John to phone**.
- I was having dinner when they arrived. They **waited for me to finish** my meal.

50.1 Write sentences with **I went to the ... to ...** Choose from:

get some medicine meet a friend catch a train buy some food
get some stamps get some money

- 1 (the station) *I went to the station to catch a train.*
- 2 (the bank) I went
- 3 (the supermarket) I
- 4 (the post office).....
- 5 (the chemist).....
- 6 (the café).....

50.2 Finish the sentences with the best ending. Choose from:

to open this door to let some fresh air into the room to wake them up
~~**to watch the news**~~ **to tell him about the party** **to get some petrol**
to see the Pyramids **to read the newspaper** **to clean it**
to see who it was

- 1 I turned on the television *to watch the news.*
- 2 She sat down in an armchair.....
- 3 Do I need a key.....?
- 4 The house is dirty but they don't have time.....
- 5 She opened the window
- 6 I knocked on their bedroom door
- 7 We stopped at a petrol station
- 8 A lot of people go to Egypt
- 9 I phoned Tom.....
- 10 The doorbell rang, so I looked out of the window

50.3 Put in **to** or **for**.

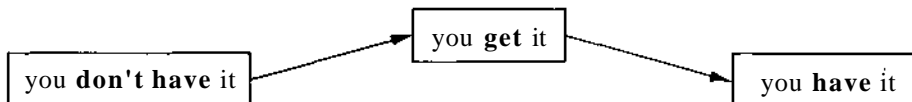
- 1 She went to the shop *to*..... buy some bread.
- 2 We stopped at a petrol station..... some petrol.
- 3 I'm going to walk home. I haven't got any money..... a taxi.
- 4 We went to a restaurant..... have dinner.
- 5 He wants to go to university..... study economics.
- 6 I'm going to London..... an interview next week.
- 7 I'm going to London..... visit a friend of mine.
- 8 I got up late this morning. I didn't have time..... wash;
- 9 Everybody needs money..... live.
- 10 The office is very small. There's space only..... a table and a chair.

50.4 Finish these sentences. Use the words in brackets ().

- 1 I can't go out yet. I'm waiting *for John to phone.* (John / phone).
- 2 We're not going out yet. We're waiting..... (the rain / stop).
- 3 We called the police and then we waited..... (them / come).
- 4 I sat down in the cinema and waited..... (the film / begin).

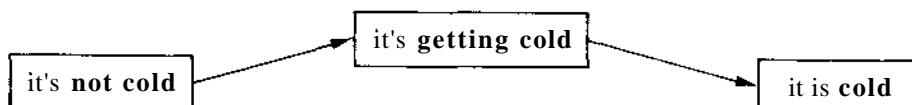
UNIT 51 **get**

- **get something/somebody** = receive/buy/fetch/find



- Did you **get my letter** last week? (= *receive*)
- I like your pullover. Where did you **get it**? (= *buy*)
- (*on the phone*) 'Hello, can I speak to Ann, please?' 'One moment. I'll **get her**.' (= *fetch*)
- Is it difficult to **get a job** in your country? (= *find*)

- **get cold/hungry/tired/better** etc. (**get** + *adjective*) = become



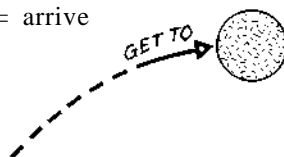
- Drink your coffee. It's **getting cold**.
- If you don't eat, you **get hungry**.
- I'm sorry he's ill. I hope he **gets better** soon.

also: **get married** and **get lost**:

- Linda and Frank **are getting married** next month.
- I went for a walk and **got lost**. (= I lost my way)

- **get to** a place (**get to work** / **get to London** / **get home** etc.) = arrive

- I usually **get to work** before 8.30. (= *arrive at work*)
- We went to Oxford yesterday. We left London at 8.00 and **got to Oxford** at 9.00.
- Can you tell me how to **get to the city centre**?



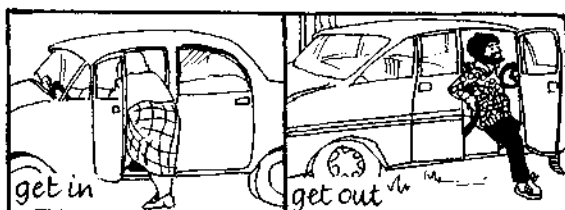
but **get home** (not 'get to home'):

- What time did you **get home** last night?

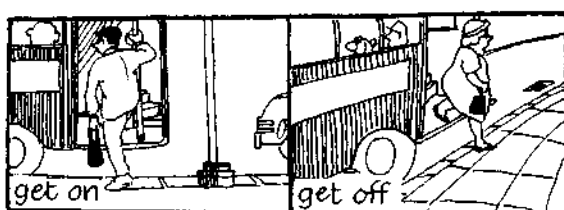
- **get in/out/on/off**

get in (a car)

get out (of a car)



get on } (a bus, a train, a plane)
get off }



- She **got in the car** and drove away, (*you can also say 'got into the car'*)
- A car stopped and a man **got out**. (*but 'got out of the car'*)
- They **got on** the bus outside the hotel and **got off** in Cross Street.

51.1 Finish these sentences. Use get(s) + the best ending.

your shoes my letter — some milk a ticket a doctor the job
some petrol a very good salary

- 1 I wrote to you last week. Did you get my letter.....?
- 2 We stopped at the petrol station to
- 3 Quick! This man is ill. We must
- 4 Where did you.....? They're very nice.
- 5 'Are you going to the concert?' 'Yes, if I can.....'
- 6 I had an interview with the manager but I didn't
- 7 When you go to the shop, can you.....?
- 8 She's got a good job. She

51.2 Complete these sentences. Use **getting** + one of these words:

dark late ~~cold~~ ready married

- 1 Drink your coffee. It's getting cold.....
- 2 It's.....It's time to go home.
- 3 'I'm.....next week.' 'Oh, are you? Congratulations!'
- 4 "Where's Sally?" 'She's in her room. She's.....to go out.'
- 5 Turn on the light. It's

51.3 Complete the sentences. Use **get/got** + one of these words:

tired old ~~hungry~~ married better wet lost

- 1 If you don't eat, you get hungry.....
- 2 If you work very hard, you
- 3 Don't go out in the rain. You'll.....
- 4 My brother.....last month. His wife's name is Julia.
- 5 We didn't know the way home, so we.....
- 6 Everybody wants to stay young, but we all.....
- 7 The beginning of the film wasn't very good but it

51.4 Write sentences with I left... and got to ...

- 1 (home/ 7.30-> work/ 8.15) I left home at 7.30 and got to work at 8.15.....
- 2 (London / 10.15 —> Bristol / 11.45) I left London at 10.15 and.....
- 3 (home / 8.30 -> the airport / 9.30) I left home
- 4 (the party / 11.15 —> home / midnight) I

51.5 Put in got + in/out (of)/on /off.

- 1 She got in.....the car and drove away.
- 2 I.....the bus and walked to my house from the bus-stop.
- 3 She.....the car, shut the door and went into a shop.
- 4 I made a stupid mistake. I.....the wrong train.

UNIT 52 go

• **go to ...** (go to London / go to work / go to a concert etc.)

- I'm **going to France** next week.
- What time do you usually **go to work**?
- Tom didn't want to **go to the concert**.
- I **went to the dentist** on Friday.
- What time did you **go to bed** last night?



also: **go to sleep** (= start to sleep):

- I went to bed and **went to sleep** very quickly.

go home (without to):

- I'm **going home** now. (not 'going to home')

• **go on** holiday / a trip / an excursion / a cruise

- We **go on holiday** (to Scotland) every year.
- When we were on holiday, we **went on** a lot of excursions **to** different places.
- Schoolchildren often **go away on school trips**.

• **go for** a walk / a run / a swim / a drink / a meal / a holiday

- The sea looks nice. Let's **go for a swim**.
- Last night we **went out for a meal**. The restaurant was very good.
- 'Where's Ann?' 'She's **gone for a walk** in the park.'
- They've **gone to Scotland for a holiday**.
(We say 'on holiday' but 'for a holiday')

• **go swimming** / **go shopping** etc.

We use **go -ing** for sporting activities (**go swimming** / **go skiing** / **go jogging** / **go fishing** etc.) and also **shopping** (**go shopping**):

I go	shopping
he is going	swimming
we went	fishing
they have gone	sailing
she wants to go	skiing
	etc.

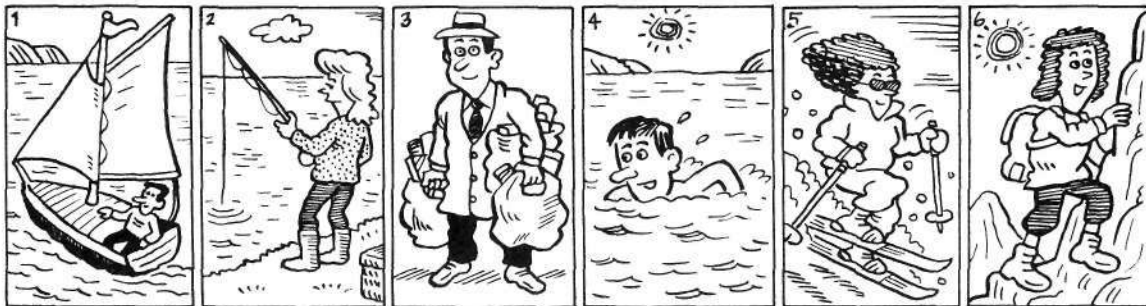


- We live near the mountains. In winter we **go skiing** every weekend.
- She has a small boat and she often **goes sailing**.
- Are you **going shopping** this afternoon?
- It's a nice day. Let's **go swimming**, (or Let's **go for a swim**.)
- George **went fishing** last Sunday. He caught a lot of fish.

52.1 Put in **to/on/for** where necessary.

- 1 I'm going to France next week.
- 2 She has a small boat, so she often goes rrrrr... sailing, (*no preposition*)
- 3 Sue went to New York last year.
- 4 Would you like to go to the cinema this evening?
- 5 Jack goes to jogging every morning before breakfast.
- 6 I'm going out for a walk. Do you want to come?
- 7 I'm tired because I went to a party last night and went to bed very late.
- 8 They're going on holiday to Italy next week.
- 9 The weather was warm and the river was clean, so we went for a swim.
- 10 Excuse me, I must go to the toilet.
- 11 It's late. I must go home now.
- 12 I need some stamps, so I'm going to the post office.
- 13 One day, I'd like to go on a trip round the world.
- 14 She isn't feeling well, so she's gone to the doctor.

52.2 What did these people do yesterday afternoon? Look at the pictures and write a sentence with **went -ing**.



George

Diane

Peter

Harry

Linda

Sheila

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| 1. <u>George went sailing.</u> | 4 |
| 2. <u>Diane</u> | 5 |
| 3. | 6 |

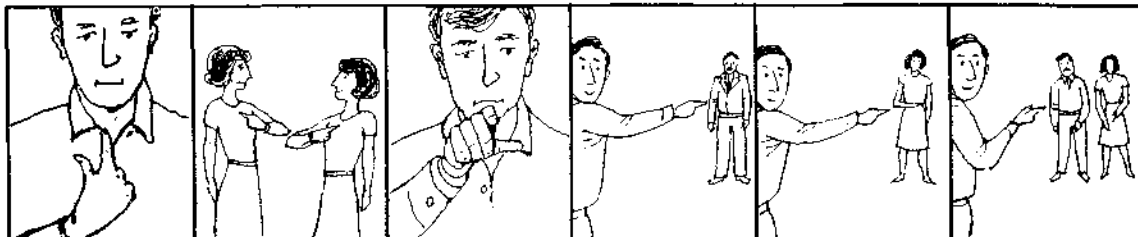
52.3 Use the words in the list to finish these sentences. Use **to/on/for** if necessary.

home shopping ~~a swim~~ Portugal riding holiday the bank
 sleep fishing a walk

- 1 The sea looks nice. Let's go for a swim.
- 2 George went and caught a lot offish.
- 3 I went in the cinema because the film was very boring.
- 4 'Is Ann at home?' 'No, she's gone to get some money.'
- 5 He has three horses. He often goes
- 6 The weather is nice. Shall we go in the park?
- 7 I'm going I have to buy a lot of things.
- 8 It's late and I'm tired. I'm going Goodnight.
- 9 'Are you going soon?' 'Yes, next month. We're going

UNIT 53 I/me he/him they/them etc.

■ people



subject	I	we	you	he	she	they
object	me	us	you	him	her	them

subject			object
I	I like Ann.	Ann likes me .	me
we	We like Ann.	Ann likes us .	us
you	You like Ann.	Ann likes you .	you
he	He likes Ann.	Ann likes him .	him
she	She likes Ann.	Ann likes her .	her
they	They like Ann.	Ann likes them .	them

Use **me/him/her** etc. (*object*) after *prepositions* (**for/to/at/with** etc.):

- This letter isn't **for you**. It's **for me**.
- Where's Alan? I want to talk **to him**.
- Who is that woman? Why are you looking **at her**?
- We're going to the cinema. Do you want to come **with us**?
- They are going to the cinema. Do you want to go **with them**?

B things



subject	it	they
object	it	them

- I want **that book**. Please give **it** to me.
- I want **those books**. Please give **them** to me.
- Diane never drinks **milk**. She doesn't like **it**.
- I never go to **parties**. I don't like **them**.
- 'Where's **the newspaper**?' 'You're sitting **on it**.'

53.1 Finish the sentences with **him/her/them**.

- 1 I don't know those girls. Do you know ...thft-XY).....?
- 2 I don't know that man. Do you know.....?
- 3 I don't know those people. Do you know.....?
- 4 I don't know Fred's wife. Do you know.....?
- 5 I don't know his friends. Do you know.....?
- 6 I don't know the woman in the black coat. Do you know.....?
- 7 I don't know Mr Stevens. Do you know.....?
- 8 I don't know those students. Do you know.....?

53.2 Finish the sentences. Use **I/me/we/us/you/he/him/she/her/they/them**.

- 1 I want to see **her** but.....**she**..... doesn't want to see**me**.....
- 2 I want to see **him** but.....doesn't want to see.....
- 3 **They** want to see **me** but.....don't want to see.....
- 4 We want to see **them** but.....don't want to see.....
- 5 **She** wants to see **him** but.....doesn't want to see.....
- 6 **They** want to see **her** but.....doesn't want to see.....
- 7 I want to see **them** but.....don't want to see.....
- 8 He wants to see us but.....don't want to see.....
- 9 **You** want to see **her** but.....doesn't want to see.....

53.3 Finish the sentences. Use **me/us/him/her/it/them**.

- 1 Who is that woman? Why are you looking at**her**.....?
- 2 'Do you know that man?' 'Yes, I work with.....'
- 3 I'm talking to you. Please listen to.....
- 4 These photographs are nice. Do you want to look at.....?
- 5 I like that camera. I'm going to buy.....
- 6 Where are the tickets? I can't find.....
- 7 We're going out. You can come with.....
- 8 I don't like dogs. I'm afraid of.....
- 9 Where is she? I want to talk to.....
- 10 Those apples are bad. Don't eat.....

53.4 Put in **it/them + me/us/him/her/them**.

- 1 I want those books. Please give**them**..... to**me**.....
- 2 He wants the key. Please give.....to
- 3 She wants the keys. Please give.....to
- 4 I want the letter. Please give.....to
- 5 They want the money. Please give.....to
- 6 We want the photographs. Please give.....to















I → my	I like my job.
we → our	We like our jobs.
you → your	You like your job.
he → his	He likes his job.
she → her	She likes her job.
they → their	They like their jobs.
it → its	Oxford (= it) is famous for its university.

We use **my/your/his/her** etc. + *a noun*:

my hands	his mother	her new car
our house	your best friend	their room

• his/her/their:

 <p>Ann (her)</p>	 <p>George (his)</p>	 <p>Mr and Mrs Thomson (their)</p>
 <p>her car (= Ann's car)</p>  <p>her husband (= Ann's husband)</p>  <p>her children (= Ann's children)</p>	 <p>his bicycle</p>  <p>his sister</p>  <p>his parents</p>	 <p>their son</p>  <p>their daughter</p>  <p>their children</p>

• its and it's:

its	Oxford is famous for its university.
it's (= it is)	I like Oxford. It's a nice city. (= It is nice.)

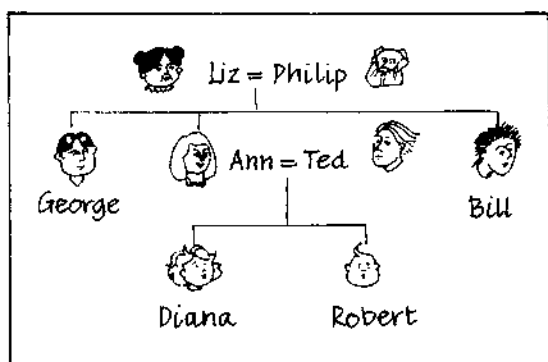
54.1 Finish these sentences.

- 1 He He lives with his parents.
- 2 They live with parents.
- 3 We parents.
- 4 Ann lives
- 5 I parents.
- 6 John
- 7 Do you live
- 8 Most children

54.2 Finish these sentences.

- 1 I 'm going to wash my hands.
- 2 She's going to wash
- 3 We're going to
- 4 He's going to
- 5 They're going
- 6 Are you going

54.3 Look at the family tree and finish the sentences.



- 1 I saw Liz with her husband, Philip.
- 2 I saw Ann and Ted with children.
- 3 I saw Ted with wife, Ann.
- 4 I saw George with brother, Bill.
- 5 I saw Ann with brother, Bill.
- 6 I saw Liz and Philip with son, Bill.
- 7 I saw Ann with parents.
- 8 I saw Diana and Robert with parents.

54.4 Put in my/our/your/his/her/their/its.

- 1 I like my job.
- 2 Do you like job?
- 3 Does your father like job?
- 4 Sally is married husband works in a bank.
- 5 I know Mr Watson but I don't know wife.
- 6 Put on coat when you go out. It's very cold.
- 7 favourite sport is tennis. I play a lot in summer.
- 8 My sister plays tennis too but favourite sport is athletics.
- 9 We're staying at a very nice hotel room is very comfortable.
- 10 Mr and Mrs Baker live in London but son lives in Australia.
- 11 Thank you for letter. It was good to hear from you again.
- 12 We are going to invite all friends to the party.
- 13 John is a teacher but sister is a nurse.
- 14 Do you think that most people are happy in jobs?
- 15 I gave the money to my mother and she put it in bag.
- 16 I often see that man but I don't know name.
- 17 They've got two children but I don't remember names.
- 18 The company has offices in many places but head office is in New York.

UNIT 55 Whose is this? It's mine.



mine

ours

yours

his

hers

theirs

I	→	my	→	mine
we	→	our	→	ours
you	→	your	→	yours
he	→	his	→	his
she	→	her	→	hers
they	→	their	→	theirs

It's my money.	It's mine.
It's our money.	It's ours.
It's your money.	It's yours.
It's his money.	It's his.
It's her money.	It's hers.
It's their money.	It's theirs.

- **my/our/your/her/their** + a noun (my hands / your book etc.):
 - My hands are cold.
 - Is this **your** book?
 - Ann gave me **her** umbrella.
 - It's **their** problem, not **our** problem.
- **mine/ours/yours/hers/theirs** without a noun:
 - These books are **mine** but this newspaper is **yours**. (= your newspaper)
 - I didn't have an umbrella, so Ann gave me **hers**. (= her umbrella)
 - It's their problem, not **ours**. (= our problem)
 - 'Is that their car?' 'No, **theirs** is green.' (= their car)

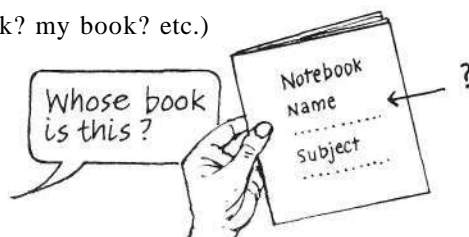
- I **his** with or without a noun:
 - Is this **his** camera?
 - It's a nice camera. Is it **his**?

- We say: a friend **of mine** / a friend **of his** / some friends **of yours** etc.:
 - I went out to meet a **friend of mine**, (not 'a friend of me')
 - Are those people **friends of yours**? (not 'friends of you')

- **Whose ... ?**
 - **Whose book** is this? (= Is it your book? his book? my book? etc.)

You can use **whose** with or without a noun:

- **Whose money** is this? } It's mine.
- **Whose** is this? }
- **Whose shoes** are these? } They're John's.
- **Whose** are these? }



UNIT 55 Exercises

55.1 Finish the sentences with mine/yours etc.

- | | |
|--|---------------------------|
| 1 It's your money. It's <u>yours</u> | 5 It's their house..... |
| 2 It's my bag. It's..... | 6 They're your books..... |
| 3 It's our car. It's..... | 7 They're my glasses..... |
| 4 They're her shoes. They're..... | 8 It's his coat..... |

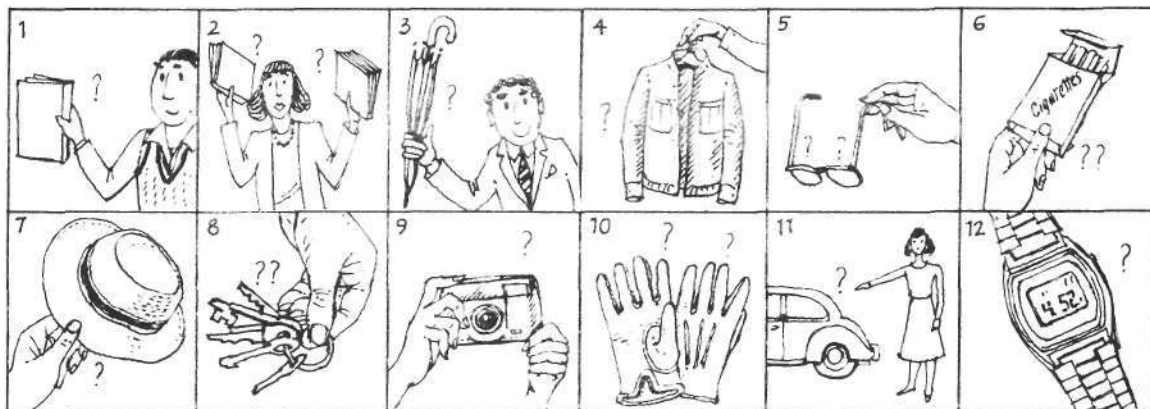
55.2 Choose the right word.

- Is this your/yours book? (your is right)
- It's their/theirs problem, not our/ours. (their and ours are right)
- Are these your/yours shoes?
- Is this camera your/yours?
- That's not my/mine umbrella. My/Mine is yellow.
- They know our/ours address but we don't know their/theirs.
- They've got two children but I don't know their/theirs names.
- My/Mine room is bigger than her/hers, but her/hers is nicer.

55.3 Finish these sentences with ... friend(s) of mine/yours etc.

- I went to the cinema with friend of mine.....a
- They went on holiday with some friends of theirs.....
- She's going out with a friend.....
- We had dinner with some.....
- I played tennis with a.....
- He's going to meet a.....
- Do you know that man? Is he a.....?

55.4 Look at the pictures. Write questions with Whose ... ?



- | | |
|---------------------------|----------|
| 1 Whose book is this..... | 7.....? |
| 2 Whose..... | 8.....? |
| 3..... | 9.....? |
| 4..... | 10.....? |
| 5..... | 11.....? |
| 6..... | 12.....? |

UNIT 56

I/me/my/mine



I etc.

me etc.

my etc.

mine etc.

	I know Tom.	Tom knows me.	It's my car.	It's mine.
	We know Tom.	Tom knows us.	It's our car.	It's ours.
	You know Tom.	Tom knows you.	It's your car.	It's yours.
	He knows Tom.	Tom knows him.	It's his car.	It's his.
	She knows Tom.	Tom knows her.	It's her car.	It's hers.
	They know Tom.	Tom knows them.	It's their car.	It's theirs.

► Unit 53

► Unit 53





► Unit 54

► Unit 55

- 'Do you know that man?' 'Yes, I know him but I can't remember his name.'
- She was very happy because we invited her to stay with us at our house.
- 'Where are the children? Have you seen them?' 'Yes, they are playing with their friends in the garden.'
- That pen is mine. Can you give it to me, please?
- 'Is this your umbrella?' 'No, it's yours.'
- He didn't have an umbrella, so she gave him hers. (= she gave her umbrella to him)
- I gave him my address and he gave me his. (= he gave his address to me)

UNIT 56 Exercises

56.1 Finish the sentences in the same way.

<p>1</p>  <p>Do you know that man?</p>	<p>2</p>  <p>Do you know that woman?</p>
<p>Yes, I know him but I can't remember his name.</p>	<p>Yes, I know, but I can't remember</p>
<p>3</p>  <p>Do you know these people?</p>	<p>4</p>  <p>Do you know me?</p>
<p>Yes, I but I names.</p>	<p>Yes, I but</p>

56.2 Finish these sentences in the same way.

- 1 We invited her to stay with us at our house.
- 2 He invited us to stay with house.
- 3 They invited me to stay with house.
- 4 I invited her to stay
- 5 We invited them to
- 6 You invited him
- 7 She invited me

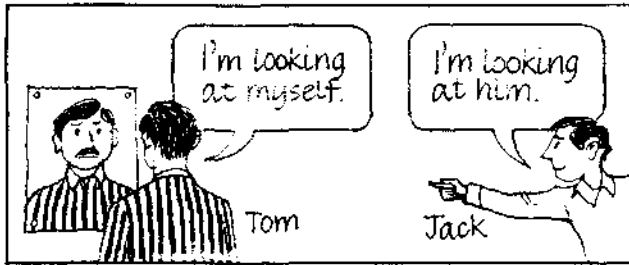
56.3 Finish the sentences.

- 1 It's hers. Give it to her.
- 2 They're mine. Give them to me.
- 3 It's his. Give it
- 4 They're hers. Give them
- 5 It's ours. Give
- 6 It's theirs. Give
- 7 They're his. Give
- 8 It's mine. Give

56.4 Finish the sentences in the same way.

- 1 I gave him my address and he gave me his.
- 2 I gave her address and she gave me
- 3 He gave me address and I gave
- 4 We gave her address and she gave
- 5 I gave them address and they
- 6 She gave us address and
- 7 You gave him address and
- 8 We gave them address and
- 9 They gave you address and
- 10 She gave him address and



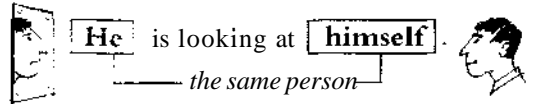
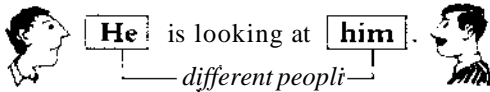


Jack is looking at Tom.

He is looking at **him**.

Tom is looking in the mirror.

He is looking at **himself**.



I → me	→	myself	I looked at myself .	
he → him	→	himself	He looked at himself .	
she → her	→	herself	She looked at herself .	
you → you	→	{ yourself	You looked at yourself .	(one person)
		{ yourselves	You looked at yourselves .	(two or more people)
we → us	→	ourselves	We looked at ourselves .	
they → them	→	themselves	They looked at themselves .	

- **I cut myself** with a knife, (*not* 'I cut me')
- She fell off her bicycle but **she didn't hurt herself**.
- Do **you** sometimes **talk to yourself** when you are alone?
- If you want some more food, **help yourselves**.
- Did **they pay for themselves** or did you pay for them?
- 'Did you all have a nice time?' 'Yes, **we enjoyed ourselves**.'

• **by myself/by yourself** etc. = alone

- I went on holiday **by myself**. (= I went on holiday alone.)
- She wasn't with her friends. **She was by herself**.

• **-selves and each other**

- **I looked at myself** and Tom looked at **himself**
= We looked at **ourselves** (*in the mirror*).

but I looked at Tom and he looked at me.
= We looked at **each other**.



- Jill and Ann are good friends. They know **each other** very well.
(= Jill knows Ann and Ann knows Jill.)
- Paul and I live near **each other**.
(= Paul lives near me and I live near him.)



57.1 Finish the sentences with **myself/yourself** etc.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1 He enjoyed <u>himself</u> | 5 Did you enjoy.....? (one person) |
| 2 I enjoyed | 6 Bill and I enjoyed |
| 3 She enjoyed | 7 The children enjoyed |
| 4 We enjoyed | 8 Jack didn't enjoy |

57.2 Finish the sentences with **myself/yourself** etc.

- 1 I cut myselfwith a knife.
- 2 Be careful! That plate is very hot. Don't burn
- 3 I'm not angry with you. I'm angry with
- 4 They never think about other people. They only think about
- 5 I got out of the bath and driedwith a towel.
- 6 When people are alone, they often talk to
- 7 The police say that the woman shotwith a gun.
- 8 Don't pay for me. I want to pay for
- 9 He fell off the ladder but he didn't hurt
- 10 I'd like to know more about you. Tell me about(one person)
- 11 Goodbye! Have a good holiday and look after! (two people)

57.3 Make sentences with **by myself / by yourself** etc.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1 I went on holiday alone. | <u>I went on holiday by myself.</u> |
| 2 John lives alone. | John lives |
| 3 Do you live alone? | Do you |
| 4 She went to the cinema alone. | She |
| 5 When I saw him, he was alone. | When I saw him, |
| 6 Don't go out alone. | Don't |
| 7 I had dinner alone. | I |

57.4 Finish the sentences. Use **each other**.

- 1 I looked at Bill and Bill looked at me. Hill and I looked at each other.
- 2 I know him and he knows me. We
- 3 She likes him and he likes her. They
- 4 You can help me and I can help you. We can
- 5 He understands her and she understands him.
They
- 6 He gives her presents and she gives him presents.
They
- 7 Tom didn't see Jill and Jill didn't see Tom.
Tom and Jill
- 8 I didn't speak to her and she didn't speak to me.
We
- 9 She often writes letters to him and he often writes letters to her.

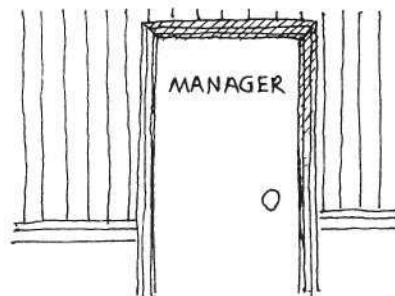


Ann's camera
(**her** camera)



My brother

my brother's car
(**his** car)



the manager's office
(**his or her** office)

- We normally use -'s (*not of...*) for *people*:

- I stayed at **my sister's** house, (*not 'the house of my sister'*)
- Have you met **Mr Kelly's** wife? (*not 'the wife of Mr Kelly'*)
- Are you going to **James's** party?
- Ann is **a girl's** name.

You can use -'s without a noun:

- Mary's hair is longer than **Ann's**. (= Ann's hair)
- 'Whose umbrella is this?' 'It's **my mother's**.' (= my mother's umbrella)
- 'Where were you last night?' 'At **John's**.' (= John's house)

- friend's and friends'



my friend's house = *one friend*
(= **his** house *or* **her** house)



my friends' house = *two or more friends*
(= **their** house)

We write -'s after **friend/student/mother** etc. (*singular*):

my mother's car (*one mother*) my father's car (*one father*)

We write -' after friends/students/parents etc. (*plural*):

my parents' car (*two parents*)

- We use **of...** (*not usually -'s*) for *things, places* etc.:

the roof **of the building** (*not 'the building's roof'*)

the beginning **of the film** (*not 'the film's beginning'*)

the time **of the next train** the name **of this town**

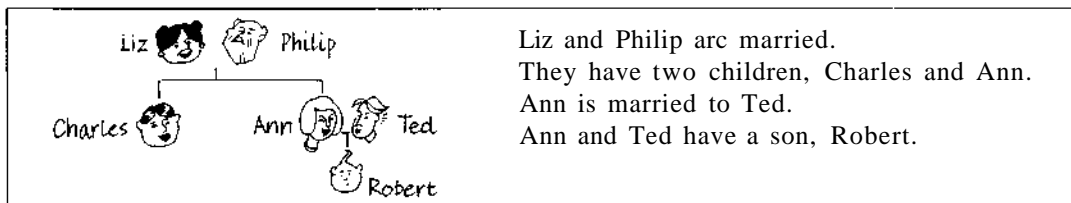
the capital **of Spain**

the cause **of the problem**

the meaning **of this word**

the back **of the car**

58.1 Look at the family tree and finish the sentences. Use -'s.



- 1 Philip is Liz's husband.
- 2 Liz is wife.
- 3 Charles is brother.
- 4 Charles is uncle.
- 5 Ann is wife.
- 6 Liz is grandmother.
- 7 Ann is sister.
- 8 Ted is husband.
- 9 Ted is father.
- 10 Robert is nephew.

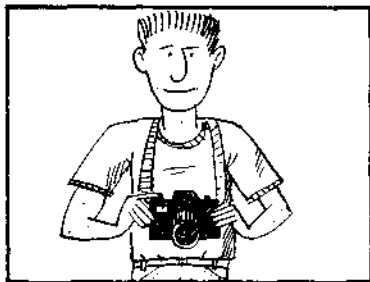
58.2 Look at the big picture and then answer the questions.



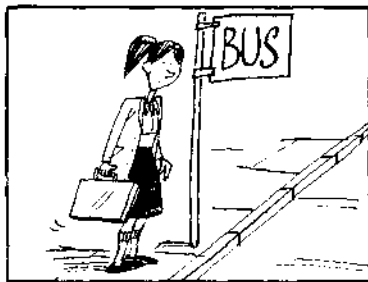
- 1 Whose is this? Jane's
- 2 Whose are these?
- 3 Whose are these?
- 4 Whose is this?
- 5 Whose is this?
- 6 Whose are these?
- 7 Whose is this?
- 8 Whose is this?
- 9 Whose are these?
- 10 Whose is this?

58.3 Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need -'s, sometimes of...

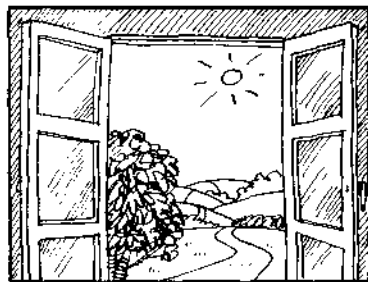
- 1 I like Ann's camera (the camera / Ann)
- 2 What is the name of this town? (the name / this town)
- 3 When is? (the birthday / your sister)
- 4 Do you like? (the colour / this coat)
- 5 Write your name at (the top / the page)
- 6 What is? (the address / Jill)
- 7 What was? (the cause / the accident)
- 8 is near the city centre, (the house / my parents)
- 9 is very good, (the spoken English / Maria)
- 10 For me the morning is (the best part / the day)
- 11 very interesting, (the job / my brother)
- 12 The car stopped at (the end / the street)
- 13 is blue, (the favourite colour / Pat)
- 14 are very thin, (the walls / this house)



He's got **a** camera.



She's waiting for **a** bus.



It's **a** nice day.

- **a** = 'one'. Don't forget a:
 - Do you want **a cup** of tea? (*not* 'Do you want cup of tea?')
 - Alice works in **a bank**, (*not* 'in bank')
 - I want to ask **a question**, (*not* 'ask question')
 - When **I** was **a child**, I liked reading stones.
 - Birmingham is **a large city** in central England.

- **an** (*not a*) before **a/e/i/o/u**:
 - They live in **an** old house, (*not* 'a old house.')
 - A mouse is **an** animal. It's **a** small animal.
 - Can you give me **an** example, please?
 - This is **an** interesting book.
 - I bought **a** hat and **an** umbrella.

also **an hour** (**h** is not pronounced: an (h)our)

but **a university** **a European** country
(these words are pronounced 'yuniversity', 'yuropean ,

- We use **a/an** for jobs etc.:
 - 'What's your job?'
'**I'm a dentist.**' (*not* 'I'm dentist.')
 - 'What does she do?' '**She's an engineer.**'
 - Would you like **to be a teacher**?
 - Beethoven **was a composer**.
 - Picasso **was a famous painter**.
 - Are you **a student**?



- **another** (an + other) is one word (*not* 'an other'):
 - Can I have **another cup** of coffee?
 - Open **another window**. It's very hot.

59.1 Write a or an.

- | | | |
|----------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 <u>a</u> book | 7 organisation | 13 question |
| 2 <u>an</u> old book | 8 restaurant | 14 important question |
| 3 window | 9 Chinese restaurant | 15 hamburger |
| 4 horse | 10 Indian restaurant | 16 hour |
| 5 airport | 11 accident | 17 economic problem |
| 6 university | 12 bad accident | 18 nice evening |

59.2 What are these things? Choose your answer from the list and write a sentence.

animal bird flower fruit musical instrument planet river
tool game vegetable

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 a duck? It <u>'s a bird</u> | 6 a hammer? It |
| 2 the Nile? It | 7 a carrot? It |
| 3 a rabbit? It | 8 Mars? It |
| 4 tennis? It | 9 a trumpet? It |
| 5 a rose? It | 10 a pear? It |

59.3 What are their jobs? Look at the pictures and finish the sentences. The jobs are: nurse / photographer / private detective / dentist / taxi-driver / road-sweeper / shop assistant.



- | | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1 She <u>'s a dentist</u> | 5 She |
| 2 He's | 6 He |
| 3 He | 7 She |
| 4 She | 8 And you? I'm |

59.4 Write sentences from the words in brackets (). Write a or an where necessary.

- (I bought newspaper) I bought a newspaper
- (we went to party last night) We went
- (my brother is artist)
- (it's beautiful day today)
- (I ate sandwich and apple)
- (Britain is industrial country)
- (I had bath this morning)
- (Barbara works in office)
- (it's very difficult question)
- (we stayed at expensive hotel)

UNIT 60 flower/flowers (*singular and plural*)

U The plural of a noun is usually -s:

singular (= one) *plural* (= two or more)

a flower → **some** flowers

a week → **six** weeks

a baby → **two** babies

a nice place → **many** nice places



a flower



some flowers

Spelling of plural endings • Appendix 4 (4.1 and 4.2):

-es after **-s/-sh/-ch/-x**:

bus → buses dish → dishes church → churches box → boxes

also: potato → potatoes tomato → tomatoes

-y → **-ies**:

baby → babies party → parties dictionary → dictionaries

but **-ay** → **-ays** / **-ey** → **-eys** / **-oy** → **-oys** / **-uy** → **-uys**

day → days monkey → monkeys boy → boys guy → guys

-f/-fe → **-ves**:

shelf → shelves knife → knives wife → wives

• These things are plural in English:



scissors



glasses



trousers



jeans



shorts



pyjamas



tights

- Do you wear **glasses**?

- I need the **scissors**. Where **are they**?

You can also say **a pair of**... with these words:

a pair of scissors **a pair of jeans** **a pair of tights** etc.

- I need a new **pair of jeans**, or I need **some** new **jeans**, (*but not 'a new jeans'*)

• Some plurals do *not* end in **-s**:

a **man** → two men

a **woman** → some women

a **child** → many children

one **foot** → two feet

a **tooth** → all my teeth

a **mouse** → some **mice**

a **sheep** → two **sheep**

a **fish** → many **fish**

also: a **person** —* **two people** / **some people** / **many people** etc.

- **She's** a nice **person**, *but* **They** are nice **people**, (*not 'nice persons'*)

- **Some people** are very stupid, (*not 'Some people is'*)

Police is a plural word:

- **The police** are coming, (*not 'The police is coming.'*)

60.1 Write the plural.

1 flower. . . <u>flowers</u>	8 woman.....	15 umbrella
2 man <u>men</u>	9 address.....	16 person
3 boat	10 sheep.....	17 family.....
4 language.....	11 tooth.....	18 holiday
5 watch.....	12 leaf.....	19 sandwich
6 country	13 child.....	20 city
7 knife	14 foot.....	21 mouse

60.2 Put in is or are.

1 <u>Is</u> shop open?	6 Where .....my camera?	11 Who .....those men?
2 <u>Are</u> the shops open?	7 Where .....my glasses?	12 Who .....that woman?
3 My hands .....cold.	8 Where .....the children?	13 Who .....those people?
4 My nose .....cold.	9 Your coat .....dirty.	14 Mice .....small animals.
5 My feet .....cold.	10 Your jeans .....dirty.	15 Where .....the scissors?

60.3 Some of these sentences are right and some are wrong. Correct the sentences that are wrong. Write 'okay' if the sentence is right.

- 1 She's a very nice person. okay
- 2 I need a new jeans. I need a new pair of jeans. or I need some new jeans.
- 3 I've got two brother and four sister.....
- 4 It's a lovely park with a lot of beautiful tree.....
- 5 There are a lot of sheep in that field.....
- 6 Do you make many mistake when you speak English?
- 7 She's married and she has three childs.....
- 8 Most of my friend are students.....
- 9 He put on his pyjama and went to bed.....
- 10 We went fishing but we didn't catch many fish.....
- 11 There were three persons in the car, two women and a man.....
- 12 I like your trouser. Where did you get it?.....
- 13 The town centre is usually full of tourist.....
- 14 This scissor isn't very sharp.....

60.4 Which is right? Complete the sentences.

- 1 It's a nice place. Many people go there for a holiday, (go or goes?)
- 2 Some people.....always late, (is or are?)
- 3 The president is not popular. The people.....like him. (don't or doesn't?)
- 4 A lot of people.....television every day. (watch or watches?)
- 5 Three people.....killed in the accident, (was or were?)
- 6 How many people.....in that house? (live or lives?)
- 7.....the police carry guns in your country? (Do or Does?)
- 8 The police.....looking for the stolen car. (is or are?)
- 9 I need my glasses, but I can't find.....(it or them?)
- 10 I'm going to buy.....new trousers today, (a or some?)

UNIT 61

a car / some money {countable/uncountable 1}

A noun can be *countable* or *uncountable*.

Countable nouns For example:

(a) car (a) hat (a) flower (a) man (a) house (a) party (an) idea

You can use **one/two/three ...** + *countable nouns* (you can *count* them):



one car



two cars



three men



four houses

Countable nouns can be *singular* (= one) or *plural* (= two or more):

singular, a car my car the car etc.

plural: cars two cars the cars some cars many cars etc.

- I've got **a car**.
- There aren't **many cars** in the car-park.

Don't use the singular (**car/house** etc.) alone. You need **a/an** (• Unit 59):

- I haven't got **a car**. (*not* 'I haven't got car.')

Uncountable nouns For example:

water rain air rice salt oil plastic money music tennis



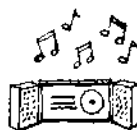
salt



rain



money



music

You *cannot* say **one/two/three ...** + these things: ~~one salt~~ ~~two moneys~~

Uncountable nouns have only *one* form:

money the money my money some money much money etc.

- I've got **some money**.
- There isn't **much money** in the box.
- **Money** isn't everything.

Don't use **a/an** + *uncountable nouns*: ~~a money~~ ~~a music~~

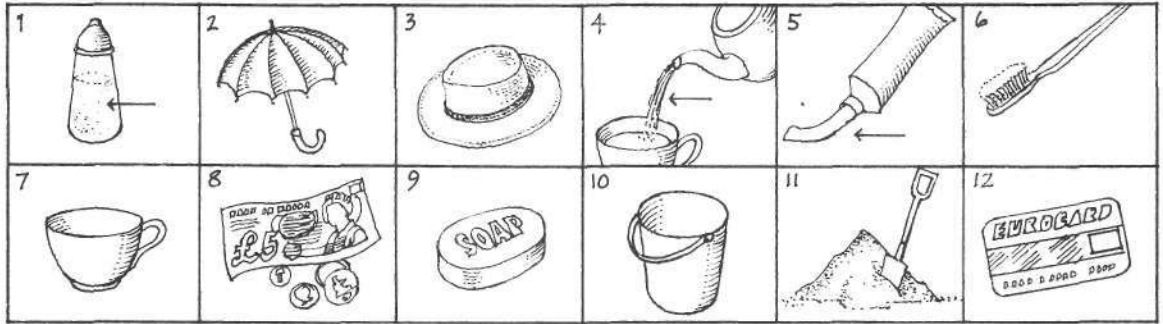
But you can say **a piece of... / a bottle of...** etc. + *uncountable nouns*:

a piece of cheese **a piece of** music **a glass of** water
a bowl of rice **a cup of** coffee **a bottle of** milk
a game of tennis **a can of** oil **a bar of** chocolate

UNIT 61 Exercises

61.1 What are these things? Some are countable and some are uncountable. Write a/an if necessary. The names of the things are:

bucket cup sand tea toothpaste credit card money hat ~~salt~~
 soap toothbrush ~~umbrella~~



1 salt 4 7 10
 2 an umbrella 5 8 11
 3 6 9 12

61.2 Some of these sentences need a/an. Some of the sentences are right. Put in a/an where necessary.

1 I haven't got car. a car 8 Do you want cup of coffee?
 2 Salt is not expensive. okay 9 I never drink milk
 3 Ann never wears hat 10 Britain is island
 4 Are you looking for job? 11 Jack made very bad mistake
 5 Mary doesn't eat meat 12 Everybody needs food
 6 I'm going to party tonight 13 Can you drive car?
 7 Do you like cheese? 14 I've got very good idea

61.3 What are these things? Look at the pictures and write a ... of... for each picture. Use the words in the boxes.

a bar cup loaf
~~bottle~~ glass piece
 bowl jar piece

of bread ~~milk~~ tea
 chocolate paper water
 honey soup wood



1 a bottle of milk 4 7
 2 5 8
 3 6 9

UNIT 62

a car / some money (countable/uncountable 2)

- Unit 61 countable/ uncountable 1

a/an and some

a/an + *singular countable nouns* (car/apple/shoes etc.):

- I need **a** new **car**.
- Would you like **an** apple?



an apple

some + *plural countable nouns* (cars/apples/shoes etc.):

- I need **some** new **shoes**.
- Would you like **some** apples?
(= two or more apples)



some apples

some + *uncountable nouns* (water/money/music etc.):

- I need **some** **money**.
- Would you like **some** **cheese**?
(or Would you like **a piece of** cheese?)



some cheese
or a piece of cheese

Compare **a/an** and **some**:

- She bought **a** **hat**, **some** **shoes** and **some** **perfume**.
- I read **a** **newspaper**, wrote **some** **letters** and listened to **some** **music**.

Many nouns are *sometimes countable* and *sometimes uncountable*. For example:



a cake



some cakes



some cake or a piece of cake



a chicken



some chickens



some chicken or a piece of chicken

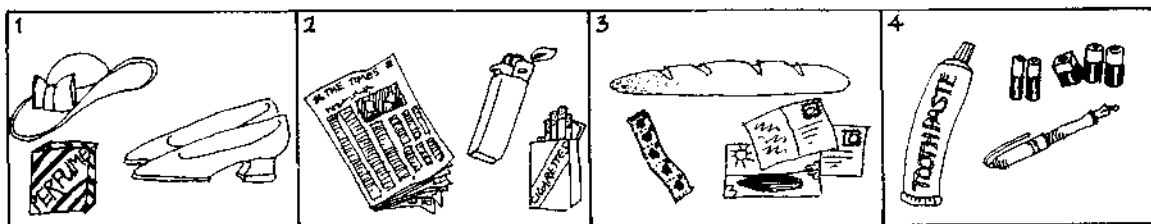
- Be careful with these words - they are usually uncountable in English:

bread weather information advice hair furniture paper news

- I'm going to buy **some** **bread** (or **a loaf of** bread), (*not* 'a bread')
- It's nice **weather** today, (*not* 'It's a nice weather')
- I need **some** **information** about hotels in London.
- They have **some** very nice **furniture** in their house, (*not* 'furnitures')
- She's got long **hair**, (*not* 'long hairs')
- I want to make a list. Can you give me **some** **paper** (or **a piece of** paper / **a sheet of** paper)? (*not* 'a paper' - 'a paper' = **a newspaper**)
- I've just had **some** good **news** about my holiday, (*not* 'a good news')

- Unit 59 a/an
- Unit 70 some any

62.1 What did you buy? Use the pictures to make sentences (**I bought...**).



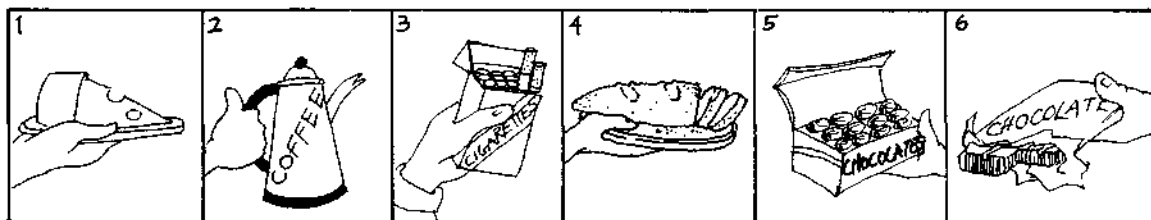
1 I bought a hat, some shoes and some perfume.

2 I bought.....

3 I.....

4.....

62.2 Write sentences with **Would you like a/an ... ?** or **Would you like some ... ?**



1 Would you like some cheese.....?

2 Would you like.....?

3 Would.....?

4.....?

5.....?

6.....?

62.3 Put in **a/an** or **some**.

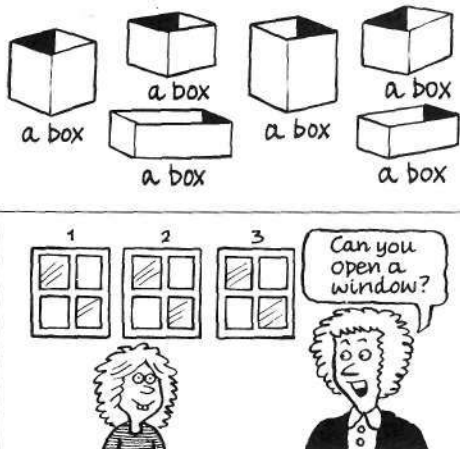
- 1 I read a newspaper, wrote some letters and listened to some music.
- 2 I need money. I want to buy food.
- 3 We met interesting people at the party.
- 4 I'm going to open window to get fresh air.
- 5 She didn't eat much for lunch - only apple and bread.
- 6 We live in big house. There's nice garden with beautiful trees.
- 7 I'm going to make table. First, I need wood.
- 8 We talked to her and she gave us very good advice.
- 9 I want to write letter. I need pen and paper.
- 10 We had nice weather when we were on holiday.

62.4 Look at the underlined words in these sentences. Which is right?

- 1 I'm going to buy some new ~~shoe~~/shoes. (shoes is right)
- 2 They are going to buy some new chair/chairs.
- 3 They are going to buy some new furniture/furnitures.
- 4 He's got big blue eye/eyes.
- 5 He's got short fair hair/hairs.
- 6 The tourist guide gave us some information/informations about the town.

UNIT 63 a/an and the

a/an



(There are three windows here.
a window = window 1 or 2 or 3)

- They've got **a car**. (*there are many cars and they've got one*)
- I'm writing **a letter**, (*there are many letters and I'm writing one*)
- When we were in London, we stayed at **a small hotel**, (*there are many small hotels in London*)
- Rome is **a big city** in Italy, (*there are many big cities in Italy and Rome is one*)
- Britain is **an island**, (*there are many islands and Britain is one*)

the



(There is only one window here, so we know which window.)

- I'm going to clean **the car** tomorrow. (= my car)
- I wrote to her but **the letter** never arrived. (= the letter that I wrote)
- We didn't enjoy our holiday. **The hotel** was terrible. (= our hotel)
- Rome is **the capital** of Italy, (*there is only one capital of Italy*)
- What is **the largest island in the world**?

• We say **the** ... when it is clear which thing we mean. For example:

the door / the ceiling / the floor / the carpet / the light etc. (*of a room*)

the roof/ the garden / the kitchen / the bathroom etc. (*of a house*)

the centre / the station / the airport / the town hall etc. (*of a town*)

- 'Where's Tom?' 'In **the garden**.' (= the garden of this house)
- I turned off **the light**, opened **the door** and went out. (= the light and the door of the room)
- Do you live very far from **the centre**? (= the centre of your town)
- I'd like to speak to **the manager**, please. (= the manager of this shop)

63.1 Put in **a/an** or **the**.

- 1 I wrote to her but ~~the~~ letter never arrived.
- 2 Britain is ~~an~~ island.
- 3 What is name of this village?
- 4 Jane is very nice person. You must meet her.
- 5 Montreal is large city in Canada.
- 6 What is largest city in Canada?
- 7 'What time is it?' 'I don't know. I haven't got watch.'
- 8 When I went to Rome, I stayed with Italian friend of mine.
- 9 You look very tired. You need holiday.
- 10 Don't sit on floor. It's very dirty.
- 11 'Let's go to restaurant this evening.'
- 'That's good idea. Which restaurant shall we go to?'
- 12 Can you turn on radio, please? I want to listen to some music.
- 13 Tom is in bathroom. He's having bath.
- 14 This is a nice room, but I don't like colour of carpet.
- 15 We live in old house near station. It's two miles from centre.

63.2 Put in **a/an** or **the** where necessary in these sentences.

- 1 I turned off the light, opened the door and went out. the light the door
- 2 Excuse me, can I ask question, please?
- 3 Alan is best player in our football team
- 4 How far is it from here to airport?
- 5 Enjoy your holiday and don't forget to send me postcard!
- 6 Have you got ticket for concert tomorrow night?
- 7 What is name of director of film we saw last night?
- 8 Yesterday I bought jacket and shirt. Jacket was cheap but shirt was expensive.
.....
- 9 Peter and Mary have two children, boy and girl. Boy is seven years old and girl is three.
.....

63.3 Complete the sentences. Use **a/an** or **the** + one of these:

bicycle ~~capital~~ cigarette play difficult language kitchen nice day
next train roof ~~small hotel~~

- 1 Rome is the capital of Italy.
- 2 When we were in London, we stayed at a small hotel
- 3 Can you ride ?
- 4 What's that man doing on of that house? Is he repairing something?
- 5 We went to the theatre last night but wasn't very good.
- 6 Do you think English is for people to learn?
- 7 'Would you like?' 'No, thanks. I don't smoke.'
- 8 'Where's Jack?' 'He's in He's cooking something.'
- 9 Excuse me, what time is to London?
- 10 It's today. Let's go out.

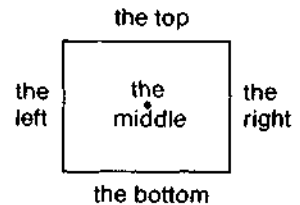
UNIT 64 the

- **the** ... = it is clear which thing or person we mean (• Unit 63):
 - Rome is **the capital of Italy**, (*there is only one capital*)
 - What is **the name of this village**? (*the village has only one name*)
 - Excuse me, where is **the nearest bank**?
 - Who is **the President of the United States**?
 - Can you tell me **the time**, please? (= the time now)
 - My office is on **the first floor**. (= the first floor of the building)

Don't forget **the**:

- Do you live near **the city centre**? (*not 'near city centre'*)
- Which is **the best restaurant** in this town? (*not 'Which is best'*)

- **the top of**____/ **the end of**____ etc.
 - Write your name at **the top of the page**.
 - **The beginning of the film** was not very good.
 - My house is at **the end of this street**.
 - The table is in **the middle of the room**.
 - Do you drive on **the left** or on **the right** in your country?



- **the same**____
 - We live in **the same street**, (*not 'in same street'*)
 - These books are not different. They are **the same**, (*not 'They are same.'*)

Note that we say:

the	the sun / the moon / the world / the sky / the sea / the ground / the country: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The sky is blue and the sun is shining. - I like swimming in the sea. - They live in a town but they want to live in the country.
the	the police / the fire brigade / the army (<i>of a city, country etc.</i>): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - My brother is a soldier. He's in the army.
the	the piano/guitar/trumpet etc. (<i>musical instruments</i>): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Tom is learning to play the piano.
the	the radio but television (<i>without the</i>): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - I often listen to the radio. What's on the radio tonight? - I like watching television. What's on television tonight? <p><i>but</i> Can you turn off the television (= the TV set)?</p>
the	breakfast/lunch/dinner (<i>without the</i>): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - I never have breakfast, (<i>not 'the breakfast'</i>) - What are you going to have for lunch? - Dinner is ready!

64.1 Put in **the** where necessary. Write 'okay' if the sentence is correct.

- 1 Sky is blue and sun is shining. The sky the sun
- 2 What are you going to have for lunch? okay
- 3 Our apartment is on third floor.
- 4 Help! Fire! Somebody call fire brigade.
- 5 Who was first man to walk on moon?
- 6 Which city is capital of your country?
- 7 What is largest city in world?
- 8 Would you like to be in army?
- 9 Do you live near sea?
- 10 After dinner we watched television.
- 11 'Where is your dictionary?' 'It's on top shelf on right.'
- 12 We live in country, about five miles from nearest village.
- 13 Ann is coming to see us at end of May or beginning of April.
- 14 'Is this book cheaper than that one?' 'No, they're same price.'
- 15 Prime Minister is most important person in British government.
- 16 I don't know everybody in this photograph. Who is man on left?
- 17 It was a very nice hotel but I don't remember name.
- 18 I didn't like her first time I met her.
- 19 What do you usually have for breakfast?
- 20 'Have you got any milk?' 'Yes, there's some in fridge.'

64.2 Complete these sentences. Use **the same** + one of these words:

age colour day problem ~~street~~ time

- 1 I live in King Street and you live in King Street. We live in the same street.
- 2 I arrived at 8.30 and you arrived at 8.30. We arrived at
- 3 I've got no money and you've got no money. We've got
- 4 He's 25 and she's 25. They are
- 5 My shirt is dark blue and my jacket is dark blue. They are
- 6 I'm leaving on Monday and you're leaving on Monday. We're leaving on

64.3 Complete these sentences. Use the words in the list. Use **the** if necessary.

breakfast ~~dinner~~ guitar lunch police radio sky sun
television ~~time~~

- 1 'Can you tell me the time please?' 'Yes, it's half past six.'
- 2 We had dinner at a restaurant last night.
- 3.....is a star. It gives us light and warmth.
- 4 Did you see the film on.....last night?
- 5 I was hungry this morning because I didn't have.....
- 6.....stopped me because I was driving too fast.
- 7 'Can you play.....?' 'No, I can't play any musical instruments.'
- 8 'What did you have for.....?' 'Just a salad.'
- 9 When I'm working at home I like listening to.....
- 10.....is very clear tonight. You can see all the stars.



She's **at work**.



They're going **to school**.



He's **in bed**.

~~the~~ (without the)

go to work / get to work / be at work / start work / finish work etc.

- What time do you **go to work** in the morning? (*not* 'to the work')
- **I finish work** at 5 o'clock every day.

go to school / be at school / start school / leave school etc.

- What did you **learn at school** today? (*not* 'at the school')

go to university / be at university etc.

- After she **leaves school**, (*not* 'leaves the school') she wants to **go to university**, (*not* 'go to the university')

go to church / be at (or in) church

- Don usually **goes to church** on Sundays, (*not* 'to the church')

go to bed / be in bed

- I'm tired. I'm **going to bed**. (*not* 'to the bed')

go to hospital / be in hospital

- Jack is very ill. He's **in hospital**, (*not* 'in the hospital')

go to prison / be in prison

- **I wouldn't like to be in prison**, (*not* 'in the prison')

go home / get home / arrive home / come home / walk home / leave home etc.

be at home / stay at home etc.

- I'm tired. **I'm going home**, (*not* 'to home')
- Are you going out or are you **staying at home**?

the (with the)

the cinema

Do you often **go to the cinema**?

the theatre

We're **going to the theatre** this evening.

the bank

I must **go to the bank** today.

the post office

Are you **going to the post office**?

the doctor

You're ill. You must **go to the doctor**.

the dentist

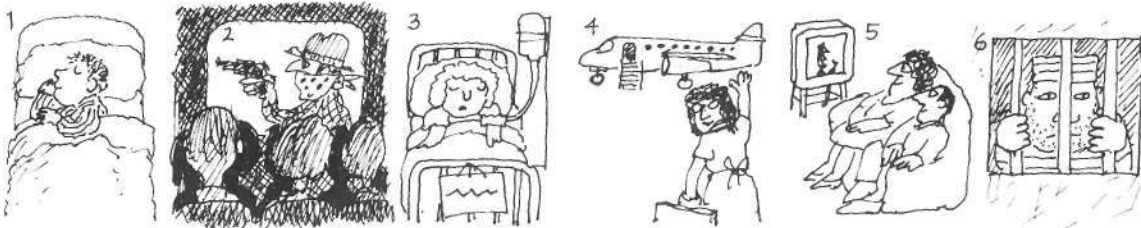
I'm going to the dentist tomorrow.

the toilet

Excuse me, I must **go to the toilet**.

also **the station / the airport / the city centre** etc. (• Unit 63)

65.1 Where are these people? Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Sometimes you need **the**.



- 1 He's in bed 3 She's in 5 They're at
 2 They're at 4 She's at 6 He's in

65.2 Complete these sentences with the words in the list. Use **the** if necessary.

airport ~~bank~~ bed ~~church~~ cinema dentist home school
 station university

- 1 I need some money. I must go to the bank.
 2 Don usually goes to church on Sundays.
 3 Jane has a bad tooth, so she's going to
 4 It's late and I'm very tired. I'm going to
 5 Gary wants to study computer science at
 6 She loves films. She goes to very often.
 7 My plane leaves at 8.30, so I must be at at about 7.30.
 8 In Britain, children go to from the age of five.
 9 I telephoned you last night but you weren't at
 10 There were a lot of people at waiting for the train.

65.3 Put in **the** where necessary. Write 'okay' if the sentence is complete.

- 1 I must go to bank today. the bank
 2 I finish work at 5 o'clock every day. okay
 3 Mary has gone to doctor. She isn't feeling well
 4 What time do you usually get home from work?
 5 'Where are you going?' 'To bed.'
 6 'Where are you going?' 'To bank.'
 7 My children usually arrive home from school at 4.30
 8 Do you live a long way from city centre?
 9 What time do you start work in the morning?
 10 Would you like to go to theatre this evening?
 11 Would you like to go to university?
 12 'Where's Fred?' 'He's in toilet.'
 13 What are you going to do when you leave school?
 14 Jim is in hospital. He's going to have an operation
 15 Do you ever go to church?
 16 Excuse me, can you tell me where post office is?
 17 Why is Angela always late for work?
 18 Why is he in prison? He didn't do anything wrong

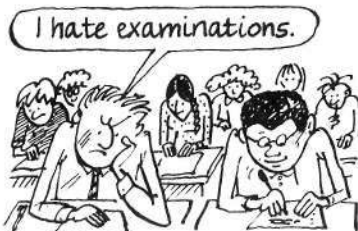
UNIT 66

I like **music**

I hate **examinations**



(not 'the music')



(not 'the examinations')



(not 'the cold weather')

~~the~~

Do not say 'the' for *general ideas*:

- I like **music**. (= music in general)
- I like **classical music**. (= classical music in general)
- We don't eat **meat** very often, (not 'the meat')
- **Life** is not possible without **water**, (not 'the life / the water')
- I hate **examinations**. (= examinations in general)
- Do they sell **foreign newspapers** in that shop?
- I'm not very good at writing **letters**.

Do not say '**the**' for *games and sports*:

- My favourite sports are **tennis** and **skiing**, (not 'the tennis / the skiing')

Do not say '**the**' for *languages or academic subjects (history/geography/biology/physics etc.)*:

- Do you think **English** is difficult? (not 'the English')
- Tom's brother is studying **physics** and **chemistry**.

the and ~~the~~

- **Flowers** are beautiful. (= flowers in general)
- but Your garden is very nice. **The flowers** are beautiful. (= the flowers in your garden)
- I don't like **cold weather**. (= cold weather in general)
- but **The weather** isn't very nice today. (= the weather today)
- Are you interested in **history**?
- but Are you interested in **the history of your country**?
- Everybody needs **food**. (= food in general)
- but It's a nice hotel and **the food** is very good.



66.1 What do you think about these things? Begin your sentences with:

I love... / I like... / I don't mind... (= it's okay) **/ I don't like... / I hate...**

- 1 (examinations) I hate examinations.
- 2 (dogs)
- 3 (hard work)
- 4 (Italian food)
- 5 (loud music)
- 6 (small children)
- 7 (hot weather)
- 8 (staying in hotels)
- 9 (opera)
- 10 (big cities)

66.2 Are you interested in these things? Write sentences with:

I'm very interested in ... I know a lot about ...
 I'm interested in ... I don't know much about ...
 I'm not interested in ... I don't know anything about ...

- 1 (history) I'm very interested in history.
- 2 (politics) I
- 3 (sport)
- 4 (art)
- 5 (astronomy)
- 6 (economics)

66.3 Look at the underlined words in these sentences. Which is right (**the** or ~~**the**~~)?

- 1 Potatoes / ~~The potatoes~~ are not expensive. (Potatoes is right.)
- 2 This is a good meal. ~~Potatoes~~ / The potatoes are very nice. (The potatoes is right.)
- 3 Everybody needs friends / ~~the friends~~.
- 4 I never drink coffee / ~~the coffee~~.
- 5 'Where's coffee / ~~the coffee~~?' 'It's in the cupboard.'
- 6 Jan doesn't go to parties / ~~the parties~~ very often.
- 7 Tennis / ~~The tennis~~ is a very popular sport.
- 8 We went for a swim in the river. Water / ~~The water~~ was very cold.
- 9 I don't like swimming in cold water / ~~the cold water~~.
- 10 You must visit the art gallery. Paintings / ~~The paintings~~ are very beautiful.
- 11 Money / ~~The money~~ doesn't always bring happiness / ~~the happiness~~.
- 12 English / ~~The English~~ is the language of international business.
- 13 Children / ~~The children~~ learn things / ~~the things~~ very quickly.
- 14 Excuse me, can you pass salt / ~~the salt~~, please?
- 15 I enjoy eating in restaurants / ~~the restaurants~~.
- 16 Do you think that capitalism / ~~the capitalism~~ is a good economic system?
- 17 I enjoy taking photographs / ~~the photographs~~. It's my hobby.
- 18 I must show you photographs / ~~the photographs~~ I took when I was on holiday.

UNIT 67

the {names of places}

Places (continents/countries/states/islands/cities/towns/villages etc.)

Usually we do *not* say 'the' + names of places:

- ~~the~~
- **France** is a very large country, (*not* 'the France')
 - **Cairo** is the capital of **Egypt**.
 - **Corsica** is an island in the Mediterranean.

But we say **the** + republic/states/kingdom/union:

the	the Republic of Ireland / the Irish Republic	the Soviet Union (the USSR)
	the United States (of America) (the USA)	the United Kingdom (the UK)

Places in towns (streets/buildings etc.)

Usually we do *not* say 'the' + names of streets, squares etc.:

- ~~the~~
- Kevin lives in **Coronation Street**.
 - Where is **Highfield Road**, please?
 - **Trafalgar Square** is in the centre of London.

We do *not* say 'the' + name of place + airport/station/university/castle etc.:

the	Munich Airport	Paddington Station	Cambridge University
	Westminster Abbey	Edinburgh Castle	London Zoo

But we usually say **the** + names of hotels/restaurants/pubs/cinemas/theatres/museums:

the	the Hilton (Hotel)	the Star of India (restaurant)
	the Science Museum	the Odeon (cinema)
	the National Theatre	the Tate Gallery (art gallery)

Seas, rivers etc.

We say **the** + names of oceans/seas/rivers/canals:

the	the Atlantic (Ocean)	the Mediterranean (Sea)
	the (River) Nile	the Suez Canal

the... of...

We say **the** + names with ... of...:

the	the Republic of Ireland	the Bank of England
	the Great Wall of China	the Tower of London

the north/south/east/west/middle (of...):

- I've been to **the north of Italy** but not to **the south**.

the -s (plural names)

We say **the** + plural names (**the** -s) of countries/islands/mountains:

the	the Netherlands	the Canary Islands	the Philippines	the Andes
------------	------------------------	---------------------------	------------------------	------------------

UNIT 67 Exercises

67.1 These are geography questions. Choose your answer from the box. Sometimes you need to use 'The'.

Alps	Amazon	Atlantic	Bahamas	Cairo	Kenya	Red Sea
Soviet Union	Asia	Andes	Pacific	Malta	Tokyo	Rhine
Switzerland	United States					

1. Cairo is the capital of Egypt.
2. The Atlantic is between Africa and America.
3. is a country in the middle of Europe.
4. is the largest country in the world.
5. is a river in South America.
6. is the largest continent in the world.
7. is the largest ocean.
8. is a river in Europe.
9. is between Canada and Mexico.
10. is in East Africa.
11. are mountains in South America.
12. is the capital of Japan.
13. is an island in the Mediterranean.
14. are mountains in central Europe.
15. is between Saudi Arabia and Africa.
16. are a group of islands near Florida.

67.2 Put in **the** where necessary. If the sentence is correct, write 'okay'.

- 1 Kevin lives in Coronation Street. okay
- 2 Have you ever been to the National Theatre? the National Theatre
- 3 'Where are you staying?' 'At Intercontinental Hotel.'
- 4 Milan is a large city in north of Italy.
- 5 Brussels is the capital of Belgium.
- 6 Manila is the capital of Philippines.
- 7 National Gallery is in Trafalgar Square in London.
- 8 Most of the best shops are in Merrion Street.
- 9 Ural Mountains are in Soviet Union.
- 10 In London, Houses of Parliament are beside River Thames.
- 11 Have you ever been to British Museum?
- 12 Texas is famous for oil and cowboys.
- 13 Last night we saw a play at Royal Theatre.
- 14 You must visit Museum of Modern Art. It's very interesting.
- 15 Alan studied chemistry at London University.
- 16 When I finish my studies, I'm going to United States for a year.
- 17 Panama Canal joins Atlantic Ocean and Pacific Ocean.
- 18 There are two cinemas in our town - Regal and Plaza.
- 19 If you sail from Britain to Denmark, you cross North Sea.
- 20 Mary comes from a small village in west of Ireland.
- 21 Europe is not a large continent but it has a large population.
- 22 Have you ever been to USA?

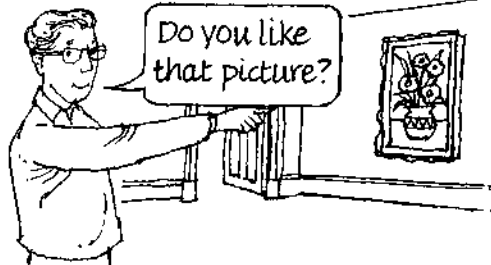
this (*singular*)
this house/picture/man etc.

Do you like
this picture?



that (*singular*)
that house/picture/man etc.

Do you like
that picture?



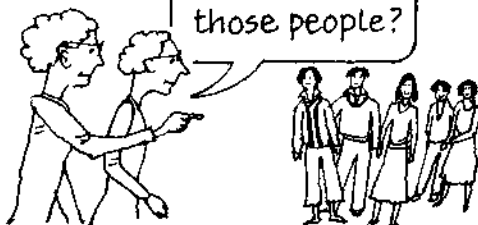
these (*plural*)
these houses/flowers/men etc.

These flowers
are for you.



those (*plural*)
those houses/flowers/people etc.

Who are
those people?



this

these



this picture
(= the picture *here*)

these flowers
(= the flowers *here*)

that

those



that picture
(= the picture *there*)

those people
(= the people *there*)

■ We use **this/that/these/those** with a noun (**this** hotel / **that** girl etc.) or without a noun (**this/that** etc.):

- **This** hotel is expensive but it's very nice.
- 'Who's **that** girl?' 'I don't know.'
- Do you like **these** shoes? I bought them last week.
- Don't eat **those** apples. They're bad.
- **This** is a nice hotel but it's very expensive.
- 'Excuse me, is **this** your bag?' 'Oh, yes. Thank you very much.'
- 'Who's **that**?' (= Who's that girl/woman?) 'I don't know. I've never seen her before.'
- Which shoes do you like most? **These** or **those**?

UNIT 68 Exercises

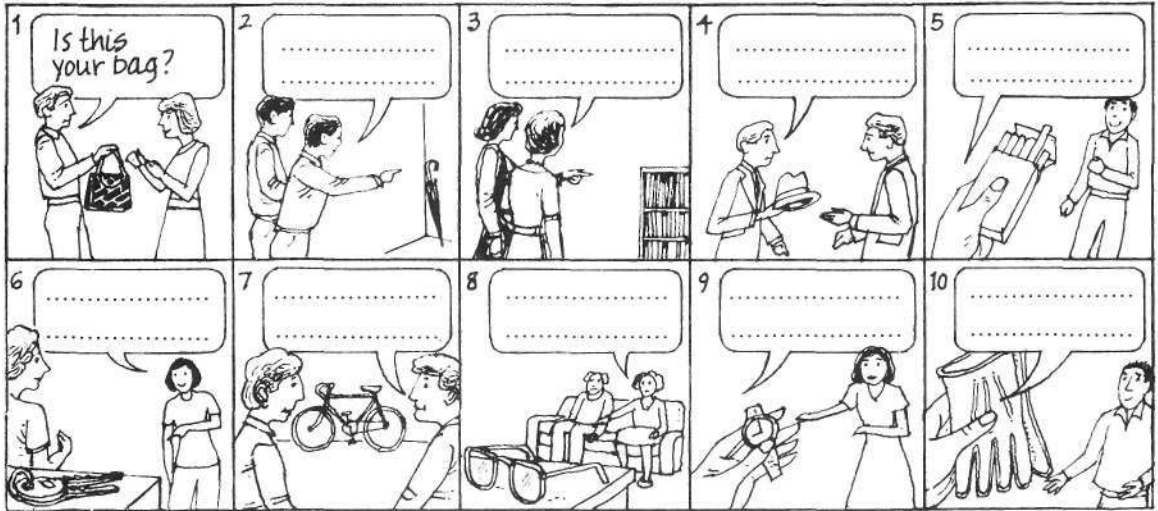
68.1 Put in this or these.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| 1 <u>this</u> chair | 3 sandwich | 5 children | 7 houses |
| 2 <u>these</u> chairs | 4 things | 6 place | 8 trousers |

Put in that or those.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 9 picture | 11 men | 13 eggs | 15 room |
| 10 socks | 12 tree | 14 woman | 16 plates |

68.2 Write questions: Is this/that your... ? or Are these/those your... ?



68.3 Complete the sentences. Use **this/that/these/those** + these words:

birds house plates postcards seat ~~shoes~~



- **one** (= a ...)



Would you like **one** ?

= Would you like **a chocolate** ?

one = a/an ... (a chocolate / a book / an apple etc.)

- I need **a pen**. Have you got **one**? (**one** = a pen)
- A: Is there **a bank** near here?
- B: Yes, there's **one** at the end of this street, (**one** = a bank)

- **one and ones**

one (singular)



Which **one**? (= Which hat?)

one = hat/book/girl etc.

this one / that one

- Which **car** is yours? **This one** or **that one**? (= this/that car)

the one ...

- A: Which **hotel** did you stay at?
- B: **The one** near the station.

the ... one

- I don't like the black **coat** but I like the **brown one**.
- Don't buy that **camera**. Buy the **other one**.

a/an ... one

- This **cup** is dirty. Can I have **a clean one**?
- **That biscuit** was nice. I'm going to have **another one**. (**another** • Unit 59)

ones (plural)



Which **ones**? (= Which flowers?)

ones = flowers/books/girls etc.

We use **these/those** alone (*not usually* 'these ones / those ones'):

- Which **flowers** do you want? **These** or **those**?

the ones ...

- A: Which **cigarettes** are yours?
- B: **The ones** on the table.

the ... ones

- I don't like the red **shoes** but I like the **green ones**.
- Don't buy those **apples**. Buy the **other ones**.

(some) ... ones

- These **cups** are dirty. Can we have **some clean ones**?
- **My shoes** are very old. I must buy **some new ones**.

UNIT 69 Exercises

69.1 A asks B some questions. Use the information in the box to write B's answers. Use one (not 'a/an...') in the answers.

B doesn't need a car
there's a chemist in Mill Road
~~B hasn't got a pen~~

B has just had a cup of coffee
B can't ride a bicycle
B hasn't got an umbrella

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1 A: Can you lend me a pen? | B: I'm sorry, <u>I haven't got one.</u> |
| 2 A: Would you like to have a car? | B: No, I don't |
| 3 A: Have you got a bicycle? | B: No, I can't |
| 4 A: Can you lend me an umbrella? | B: I'm sorry, |
| 5 A: Is there a chemist near here? | B: Yes, |
| 6 A: Would you like a cup of coffee? | B: No thank you, |

69.2 Complete the sentences. Use a/an ... one. Use these words in your answers:

~~clean~~ better big different new old

- This cup is dirty. Can I have a clean one?
- I'm going to sell my car and then I'm going to buy
- That's not a very good photograph but this is
- This box is too small. I need
- I want today's newspaper. This is
- Why do we always go to the same restaurant? Let's go to

69.3 Use the information in the box to complete these conversations. Use one/ones.

the coat is black
the girl is tall with long hair
~~the hotel is near the station~~
the house has got a red door
I took the photographs on the beach last week

the pictures are on the wall
the books are on the top shelf
the flowers are yellow
the shoes are green
the man has got a moustache and glasses

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 A: We stayed at a hotel.
B: <u>Which one</u> ?
A: <u>The one near the station.</u> | 6 A: Are those your books?
B:
A: |
| 2 A: Those shoes are nice.
B:
A: | 7 A: Do you know that girl?
B:
A: |
| 3 A: That's a nice house.
B:
A: with | 8 A: Those flowers are beautiful.
B:
A: |
| 4 A: I like that coat.
B:
A: | 9 A: Who's that man?
B:
A: |
| 5 A: I like those pictures.
B:
A: | 10 A: Have you seen my photographs?
B:
A: |

some



Use **some** in *positive* sentences:

- I'm going to buy **some** eggs.
- There is **some** ice in the fridge.
- They made **some** mistakes.
- She said **something**.
- I saw **somebody** (or **someone**).

any



Use **any** in *negative* sentences:

- I'm **not** going to buy **any** eggs.
- There isn't **any** ice in the fridge.
- They didn't make **any** mistakes.
- She **didn't** say **anything**.
- I **didn't** see **anybody** (or **anyone**).

any and some in questions

In most questions (but not all) we use **any**:

- Is there **any** ice in the fridge?
- Did they make **any** mistakes?
- Are you doing **anything** this evening?
- I can't find Ann. Has **anybody** seen her?

We normally use **some** (*not any*) when we offer things (**Would you like some ...?**):

- A: Would you like **some** coffee?
- B: Yes, please.
- A: Would you like **something** to eat?
- B: No, thank you. I'm not hungry.

or ask for things (**Can I have some ...?** /

Can you lend me some ...? etc.):

- 'Can I have **some** soup, please?' 'Yes, of course. Help yourself.'
- 'Can you lend me **some** money?' 'I'm sorry, I can't.'



• Compare **some** and **any**:

- We've got **some** cheese but we haven't got **any** bread.
- I didn't take **any** photographs but Ann took **some**. (= some photographs)
- You can have **some** coffee, but I **don't** want **any**. (= any coffee)
- I've just made **some** coffee. **Would you like some?** (= some coffee)
- I haven't got **any** money. **Can you lend me some?** (= some money)

70.1 Put in some or any.

- 1 I'm going to buy some eggs.
- 2 They didn't make any mistakes.
- 3 I can pay. I've gotmoney.
- 4 There aren'tshops in this part of the town.
- 5 George and Alice haven't gotchildren.
- 6 Have you gotbrothers or sisters?
- 7 There arebeautiful flowers in the garden.
- 8 Are thereletters for me this morning?
- 9 I haven't gotstamps but Ann's got
- 10 Do you knowgood hotels in London?
- 11 'Would you liketea?' 'Yes, please.'
- 12 Don't buyrice. We don't need
- 13 We haven't gotbread, so I'm going out to buy
- 14 When we were on holiday, we visitedvery interesting places.
- 15 I went out to buymilk but they didn't havein the shop.
- 16 I'm thirsty. Can I havewater, please?

70.2 Complete the sentences. Use **some** or **any** + one of these words:

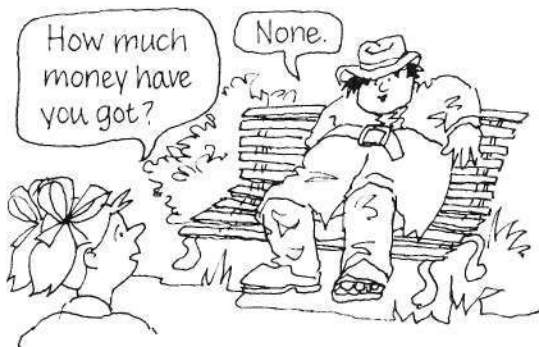
air batteries chairs cheese friends languages milk ~~money~~
 photographs problems shampoo stamps

- 1 I can't buy you a drink. I haven't got any money
- 2 I want to wash my hair. Is there?
- 3 I'm going to the post office to get
- 4 Can you speakforeign.....?
- 5 I haven't got my camera, so I can't take
- 6 Sorry we're late. We hadwith the car.
- 7 Everybody was standing because there weren'tin the hall.
- 8 It's hot in this office. I'm going out forfresh.....
- 9 Why isn't the radio working? Are therein it?
- 10 Can I havein my coffee, please?
- 11 Yesterday evening I went to a restaurant withof mine.
- 12 'Would you like?' 'No, thank you. I've had enough to eat.'

70.3 Put in somebody (or someone) / something / anybody (or anyone) / anything.

- 1 She said somethingbut I didn't understand it.
- 2 'What's wrong?' 'There'sin my eye.'
- 3 Do you knowabout politics?
- 4 I went to the shop but I didn't buy
- 5has broken the window. I don't know who.
- 6 There isn'tin the box. It's empty.
- 7 I'm looking for my keys. Hasseen them?
- 8 Would you liketo drink?
- 9 I didn't eatbecause I wasn't hungry.
- 10 I can do this job alone. I don't needto help me.

UNIT 71 not + any no none



He **hasn't** got **any** money.

He's got **no** money.

A: How much money has he got?

B: **None.**

• not (n't) + any

- I'm **not** going to do **any** work this evening.
- There aren't **any** good hotels in the town.
- Ann took some photographs but I didn't take **any**. (= any photographs)

• no + noun (no money / no job etc.): no ... = not + any or not + a

We use **no** ... especially after **have/has (got)** and **there is/are**:

- He has got **no** money. (= He hasn't got **any** money.)
- There are **no** buses after 11.30. (= There aren't **any** buses after 11.30.)
- It's a nice house but there's **no** garden. (= It's a nice house but there isn't **a** garden.)

• Remember: negative verb + any positive verb + no

- **I haven't** got **any** friends, *or* I've got **no** friends.
(but not 'I haven't got no friends.')
- There **aren't** **any** good hotels in this town, or There **are** **no** good hotels in this town.

• no and none

Use **no** + noun (no money / no friends / no sugar etc.):

- I can't wait. I've got **no** time.
- There is **no** sugar in your coffee.

Use **none** alone (without a noun):

- 'How much time have we got?' '**None** (= no time). We must go now.'
- 'How many mistakes did you make?' '**None.**' (= no mistakes)

• none and no-one

none = 0 (zero). **None** is an answer for **How much?** / **How many?** (things or people):

- '**How much** money have you got?' '**None.**' (= no money)
- '**How many** people did you meet?' '**None.**' (= no people)

no-one = **nobody** (• Unit 72). **No-one** is an answer for **Who?**:

- '**Who** did you meet?' '**No-one.**' (= nobody)

71.1 Write these sentences again with **no**.

- 1 He hasn't got any money. He's got no money.
- 2 There aren't any pictures on the walls. There are.....
- 3 Carol hasn't got any free time. Carol.....
- 4 There isn't a restaurant in this hotel.....

Write these sentences again with **any**.

- 5 He's got no money. He hasn't got any money.
- 6 There's no oil in the tank. There.....
- 7 I've got no stamps. I.....
- 8 Tom's got no brothers or sisters.....

71.2 Put in **no** or **any**.

- 1 There aren't any good hotels here.
- 2 There are no buses today.
- 3 I didn't write.....letters last night.
- 4 There are.....shops in this part of the town.
- 5 She can't speak.....foreign languages.
- 6 Don't buy.....food. We don't need.....
- 7 My brother is married but he's got.....children.
- 8 I'm afraid there's.....coffee. Would you like some tea?
- 9 'Look at those birds!' 'Birds? Where? I can't see.....birds.'
- 10 The man asked me for money but I didn't give him.....

71.3 Complete the sentences. Use **any** or **no** + one of these words:

cigarettes difference film friends furniture money photographs
questions work swimming-pool

- 1 I'm not going to do any work.....this evening.
- 2 I didn't smoke.....yesterday.
- 3 They want to go on holiday but they've got.....
- 4 It's a nice hotel but there's.....
- 5 I'm not going to answer.....
- 6 He's always alone. He's got.....
- 7 There is.....between these two machines. They are the same.
- 8 I can't take.....There's.....in the camera.
- 9 There wasn't.....in the room. It was completely empty.

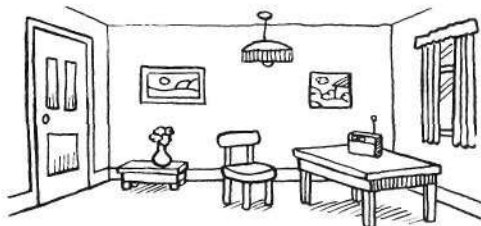
71.4 Give short answers (one or two words) to these questions. Use **none** where necessary.

- 1 How many letters have you written today? Two / A lot / None.
- 2 How many sisters have you got?
- 3 How much coffee did you drink yesterday?
- 4 How many photographs have you taken today?
- 5 How many legs has a snake got?

UNIT 72

not + anybody/anyone/anything nobody/no-one/nothing

not + anybody/anyone
nobody/no-one
(for people)



There **isn't anybody** in the room.
There **is nobody** in the room.

A: **Who** is in the room?

B: **Nobody**.

not + anything
nothing
(for things)



There **isn't anything** in the bag.
There **is nothing** in the bag.

A: **What's** in the bag?

B: **Nothing**.

anybody = anyone nobody = no-one (-body and -one are the same):

- I don't know **anybody** (or **anyone**).
- There is **no-one** (or **nobody**) here.

not (n't) + anybody/anyone/anything

- Please don't tell **anybody** (or **anyone**).
- Jack has a bad memory. He can't remember **anything**.

nobody = not + anybody

nothing = not + anything

no-one = not + anyone

- **I'm** lonely. I've got **nobody** to talk to. (= **I haven't** got **anybody**)
- The house is empty. There is **no-one** in it. (= there **isn't** **anyone**)
- She said **nothing**. (= She **didn't** say **anything**.)

You can use **nobody/no-one/nothing** at the beginning of a sentence or alone (without other words):

- The house is empty. **Nobody** lives there, (not 'Anybody lives there.')
- **Nobody** is perfect.
- 'Who did you speak to?' '**No-one**.'
- 'What did you say?' '**Nothing**.' (not 'Anything.')

• Remember: *negative verb* + **anybody/anyone/anything**

positive verb + **nobody/no-one/nothing**

- He **doesn't** understand **anything**, (not 'He doesn't understand nothing.')
- **Don't** tell **anybody**, (not 'Don't tell nobody.')
- There **is** **nothing** to do in this town, (not 'There isn't nothing to do.')

72.1 Write these sentences again with **nobody/no-one/nothing**.

- 1 There isn't anything in the bag. There's nothing in the bag.
- 2 There isn't anybody in the office. There's
- 3 I haven't got anything to do. I
- 4 There isn't anything on TV tonight.....
- 5 Jack hasn't got anyone to help him.....
- 6 We didn't find anything.....

72.2 Write these sentences again with **anybody/anyone/anything**.

- 1 There is nothing in the bag. There isn't anything in the bag.
- 2 I've got nothing to read. I haven't got
- 3 There's nobody in the bathroom.....
- 4 We've got nothing to eat.....
- 5 There was no-one on the bus.....
- 6 She heard nothing.....

72.3 Answer these questions with **nobody/no-one/nothing**.

- 1 What did you say? Nothing..... 5 Who knows the answer?
- 2 Who saw you? Nobody..... 6 What did you buy?
- 3 What do you want?..... 7 What happened?
- 4 Who did you meet?..... 8 Who was late?

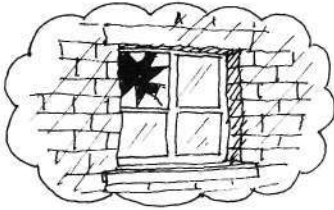
Now answer the same questions with full sentences.

Use **nobody/no-one/nothing** or **anybody/anyone/anything**.

- 1a I didn't say anything...... 5a.....the answer.
- 2a Nobody saw me...... 6a I
- 3a I don't..... 7a.....
- 4a I didn't..... 8a.....

72.4 Complete the sentences with **nobody/no-one/nothing/anybody/anyone/anything**.

- 1 I went out of the house Nobody.....saw me.
- 2 Jack has a bad memory. He can't remember anything.....
- 3 Be quiet! Don't say.....
- 4 I didn't know about the meeting.....told me.
- 5 'What did you have to eat?' '.....I wasn't hungry.'
- 6 'What did you say?' 'I didn't say.....'
- 7 George has gone away.....knows where he is. He didn't tell
.....where he was going.
- 8 'What are you doing this evening?' '.....Why?'
- 9 I don't know.....about car engines.
- 10 'How much does it cost to visit the museum?' '.....It's free.'
- 11 She was sitting alone. She wasn't with.....
- 12 I heard a knock on the door but when I opened it there was.....outside.



Somebody (or **someone**) has broken the window.

somebody/someone
= a person but we don't know who



There is **something** in her mouth.

something = a thing but we don't know what



Tom lives **somewhere** near London.

somewhere = in a place or to a place but we don't know where

people (-body or -one*)

things (-thing)

places (-where)

**some-
any-
no-**

**somebody or someone
anybody or anyone
nobody or no-one**

**something
anything
nothing**

**somewhere
anywhere
nowhere**

* -body and -one are the same: **somebody** = **someone**, **nobody** = **no-one** etc.

**somebody
someone
something
somewhere**

- There is **somebody** (or **someone**) in the garden.
- She said **something** but **I** didn't understand her.
- They live **somewhere** in the south of England.

in questions (• Unit 70)

- Is there **anybody** (or **anyone**) in the garden?
- Are you doing **anything** this evening?
- Did you go **anywhere** interesting for your holidays?

in negatives (**not** + **any-**) (• Units 70 and 72)

- There isn't **anybody** (or **anyone**) in the garden.
- It's dark. **I can't** see **anything**.
- I'm staying here. I'm **not** going **anywhere**.

**anybody
anyone
anything
anywhere**

**nobody
no-one
nothing
nowhere**

- There is **nobody** (or **no-one**) in the garden.
- 'What did you say?' '**Nothing.**'
- I don't like this town. There is **nowhere** to go.

• You can use **something/anybody/nowhere** etc. + **to** ...:

- I'm hungry. I want **something to eat**. (= something that **I** can eat)
- He hasn't got **anybody to talk to**. (= anybody that he can talk to)
- There's **nowhere to go** in this town. (= nowhere where people can go)

73.1 Put in somebody (or someone) / something / somewhere.

- 1 She said something.....
 2 I've lost.....
 3 They went.....
 4 I'm going to telephone.....

What did she say?
 What have you lost?
 Where did they go?
 Who are you going to telephone?

Put in nobody (or no-one) / nothing / nowhere.

- 5 What did you say?
 6 Where are you going?
 7 What do you want?
 8 Who are you looking for?

Nothing.....

Now answer the same questions with full sentences. Use **not + anybody** (or **anyone**) / **anything** / **anywhere**.

- 5a I didn't say anything..... 7a I
 6a I'm not going..... 8a I

73.2 Put in somebody/nothing/anywhere etc.

- 1 It's dark. I can't see anything.....
 2 Tom lives somewhere.....near London.
 3 Do you know.....about computers?
 4 'Listen!' 'What? I can't hear.....'
 5 'What are you doing here?' 'I'm waiting for.....'
 6 'What's wrong?' 'I've got.....in my eye.'
 7 'Did.....see you?' 'No,.....'
 8 They weren't hungry, so they didn't eat.....
 9 'What is going to happen?' 'I don't know.....knows.'
 10 'Do you know.....in London?' 'Yes, I've got a few friends there.'
 11 'What's in that cupboard?' '.....It's empty.'
 12 I'm looking for my lighter. I can't find it.....

73.3 Complete the sentences. Use a word from the first box + **to** + a word from the second box. (You can use a word more than once.)

something **anything** **nothing**
somewhere **anywhere** **nowhere**

to

do **drink** **eat** **go**
play **read** **sit** **stay**

- 1 We don't go out very much because there's nowhere to go.....
 2 There isn't any food in the house. We haven't got.....
 3 I'm bored. I've got.....
 4 'Why are you standing?' 'Because there isn't.....'
 5 'Would you like.....?' 'Yes, please - a glass of orange juice.'
 6 Children need.....
 7 I want.....I'm going to buy a magazine.
 8 All the hotels were full. There was.....

• every



Every house in the street is the same.

(**every house** in the street = **all the houses** in the street)

Use **every** + *singular noun* ('**every house** / **every country** / **every time** etc.):

- Alice has been to **every country** in Europe, (*not* 'every countries')
- **Every summer** we have a holiday by the sea.
- She looks different **every time** I see her.

Use a *singular verb* (is/was/has etc.) after **every ...**:

- **Every house** in the street is the same, (*not* 'Every house . . . are')
- **Every country** **has** a national flag, (*not* 'Every country have')

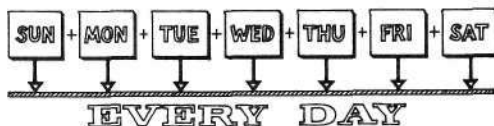
Compare **every** and **all**:

- **Every student** in the class passed the examination.
All the students in the class passed the examination.
- **Every country** **has** a national flag.
All countries **have** a national flag.

■ every }
all } **day/morning/evening/night/summer** etc.

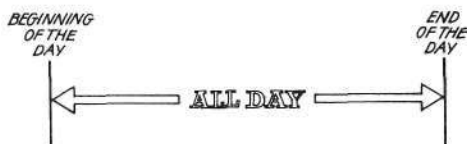
every day = on all days:

- A: How often do you read a newspaper?
B: **Every day**.
- Bill watches TV **every evening**.
(= on all evenings of the week)



all day = the complete day from beginning to end:

- The weather was bad yesterday. It rained **all day**.
- I was tired after work yesterday, so I watched TV **all evening**. (= the complete evening)



• everybody (or everyone)/everything/everywhere

everybody/everyone

(*people*)

everything

(*things*)

everywhere

(*places*)

- **Everybody** (*or Everyone*) needs friends. (= all people need friends)
- Have you got **everything** you need? (= all the things you need)
- I've lost my watch. I've looked **everywhere** for it. (= I've looked in all places)

Use a *singular verb* after **everybody/everyone/everything**:

- **Everybody** **has** problems, (*not* 'Everybody have')

74.1 Complete the sentences. Use **every** + one of these words:

day room student time word

- 1 Every student in the class passed the examination.
- 2 My job is very boring.....is the same.
- 3.....in the hotel has a private bathroom.
- 4 Kay is a good tennis player. When we play, she wins.....
- 5 'Did you understand what she said?' 'Yes,.....'

74.2 Put in **every** or **all**.

- 1 Yesterday it rained all day.
- 2 Bill watches TV every evening.
- 3 Barbara gets up at 6.30.....morning.
- 4 I was ill yesterday, so I stayed in bed.....day.
- 5 I buy a newspaper.....day but I don't always read it.
- 6 'How often do you go skiing?' '.....year, usually in March.'
- 7 'Were you at home at 10 o'clock yesterday?' 'Yes, I was at home.....morning. I went out after lunch.'
- 8 The weather was nice last Sunday, so we sat in the garden.....afternoon.
- 9 We didn't have a very good holiday. We went to the seaside for ten days and it rained.....day.
- 10 My sister likes cars. She buys a new one.....year.
- 11 I saw Jack at the party but he wasn't very friendly. He didn't speak to me.....evening.
- 12 They go away on holiday for two or three weeks.....summer.

74.3 Put in **everybody** (or **everyone**) / **everything** / **everywhere**.

- 1 Everybody needs friends.
- 2 Joy knows.....about computers.
- 3 I like the people here.....is very friendly.
- 4 It's a nice hotel. It's comfortable and.....is clean.
- 5 Ken never uses his car. He goes.....by motor-bike.
- 6 Let's have dinner.....is hungry.
- 7 Their house is full of books. There are books.....
- 8 You're right.....you say is true.

74.4 Complete the answers to these questions. Use **everybody**.



- 1 Do you know George?
- 2 Are you tired today?
- 3 Do you like Mary?
- 4 Are you going to the party?
- 5 Have you seen the film?
- 6 Were you surprised?



- Yes, everybody knows George.
- Yes,.....today.
- Yes,.....
- Yes,.....
- Yes,.....
- Yes,.....

UNIT 75

all most some no/none any



all



most



some



no / none / not + any



any

- all/most/some/no/any + *noun* (all cities / most people etc.)

all		cities
most		people
some	of	music
no		buses
any		

- All big **cities** have the same problems.
- **Most people** like jack.
- I like **some classical music** but not all.
- There are **no buses** on Sundays.
- or There aren't **any buses** on Sundays.

Don't use **of** in these sentences:

- **Most children** like playing, (*not* 'Most of children')
- **Some birds** cannot fly. (*not* 'Some of birds')

- most of the ... / some of my ... / none of these ... etc.

most		the ...
some		this/that...
none	of	these/those ...
any		my/your ... etc.

- **Most of my friends** live in London.
- **Some of this money** is yours.
- Have you read **any of these books**?
- **None of the students** passed the examination.
- I don't know **any of those people**.

- Remember: **most children** *but* **most of the** children
some people *but* **some of these** people
no friends *but* **none of my** friends

Compare:

- **Most children** like playing. (= most children in general)
- but* **Most of the children** at this school are under 11 years old.

We usually say **all of the ... / all of my ...** etc. (*without of*):

- **All the students** failed the exam.
- She has lived in London **all her life**.

- all of it / most of them / some of us etc.

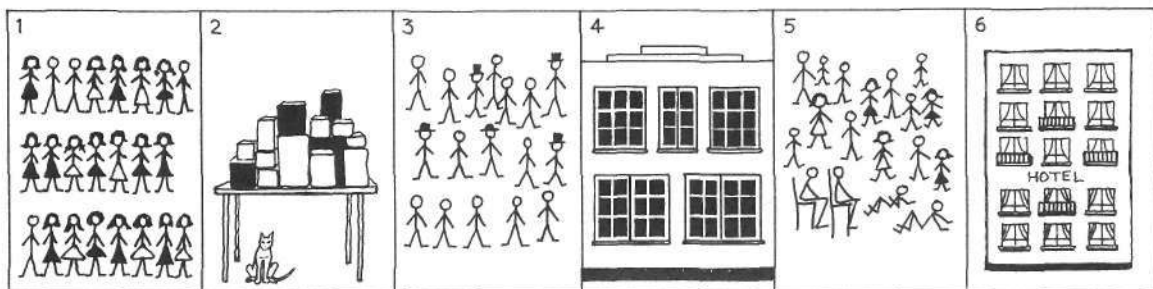
all		it
most		them
some	of	us
none		you
any		

- You can have **some of this cake** but not **all of it**.
- A: Do you know those people?
 B: **Most of them**, but not **all of them**.
- **Some of us** are going out tonight. Would you like to come with us?
- He's got a lot of books but he hasn't read **any of them**.

75.1 Complete the sentences. Use the word in brackets (**some/most** etc.). Sometimes you need **of** (**some of / most of** etc.).

- 1 Most people like Jack, (most)
- 2 Some of this money is yours, (some)
- 3people are stupid, (some)
- 4the shops in the city centre close at 5.30. (most)
- 5 You can change money in.....banks, (most)
- 6 I don't like.....the pictures in the living-room, (any)
- 7 He's lost.....his money, (all)
- 8.....my friends are married, (none)
- 9 Do you know.....the people in this photograph? (any)
- 10.....birds can fly. (most)
- 11 I enjoyed.....the film but I didn't like the ending, (most)
- 12.....sports are very dangerous, (some)
- 13 We can't find anywhere to stay.....the hotels are full, (all)
- 14 You must have.....this cheese. It's delicious, (some)
- 15 The weather was bad when we were on holiday. It rained.....the time, (most)

75.2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use **all/most/some/none** of them.



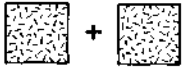
- 1 How many of the people are women? Most of them
- 2 How many of the boxes are on the table?
- 3 How many of the men are wearing hats?
- 4 How many of the windows are open?
- 5 How many of the people are standing?
- 6 How many of the hotel rooms have a balcony?

75.3 Answer these questions. Use the word in brackets (**all/most/some/none**) + **of it / of them**.

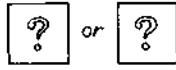
- 1 How much of that book did you read? (some) Some of it
- 2 Are your friends going to the party? (most)
- 3 How many of those books have you read? (all)
- 4 How much of this money do you want? (all)
- 5 Were the questions in the test easy? (most)
- 6 Are the shops open tomorrow? (some)
- 7 How many of those people do you know? (none)
- 8 Did you understand the conversation? (most)
- 9 Have you seen these photographs? (some)

UNIT 76 both either neither

- We use **both/either/neither** to talk about *two* things or people:



both



either



neither (not + either)

- Rosemary has two children. **Both** are married. (= both children)
- A: Do you like classical music or pop music?
13: **Both**. (= classical *and* pop)
- Would you like tea or coffee? You can have **either**. (= tea *or* coffee)
- A: Do you want to go to the cinema or the theatre?
B: **Neither**. I want to stay at home, (**neither** = *not* the cinema *or* the theatre)

- **both/either/neither** + *noun*:

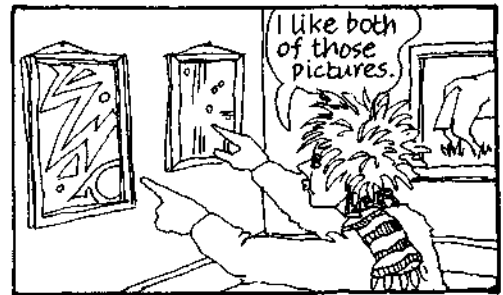
both + <i>plural</i>	both windows/books/children etc.
either neither + <i>singular</i>	either window/book/child etc. neither window/book/child etc.

- Ann has got two sisters and a brother. **Both sisters are** married.
- Last year I went to Paris and Rome. I liked **both cities** very much.
- I read two books but **neither book was** very interesting.
- There are two ways from here to the station. You can go **either way**.

- **both/either/neither of...**

both* either neither	of	the ... those/these ... my/your/Tom's etc...
---	-----------	--

- I like **both (of) those pictures**.
- **Both (of) Ann's sisters are** married.
- I haven't read **either of these books**.
- **Neither of my parents is** English.



- * You can say **both the ... / both those ... / both my ...** etc. (*without of*):
both of those pictures *or* **both** those pictures

- **both of them / neither of us** etc.

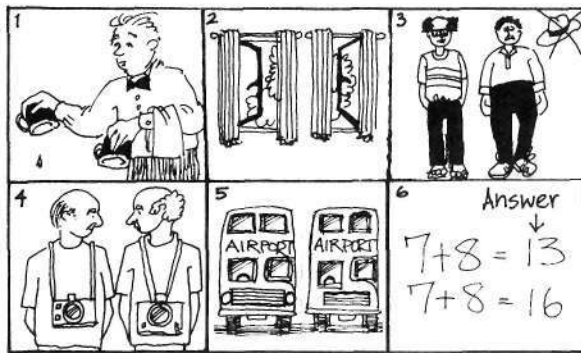
both either neither	of	them us you
--	-----------	--

- Ann has got two sisters. **Both of them are** married.
- Tom and I didn't eat anything. **Neither of us was** hungry.
- Who are those two people? I don't know **either of them**.

76.1 Put in both/either/neither.



- 1 Ann has got two sisters. Both sisters are married.
- 2 There were two pictures on the wall. I didn't like either of them.
- 3 It was a very good football match. teams played well.
- 4 It wasn't a good football match. team played well.
- 5 'Is your friend English or American?' '..... She's Australian.'
- 6 We went away for two days but the weather wasn't very good. It rained on days.
- 7 'I bought two newspapers. Which one do you want?' '..... It doesn't matter which one.'
- 8 I invited Jack and Jill to my party but of them came.
- 9 'Do you go to work by car or by bus?' '..... I always walk.'
- 10 'Which jacket do you prefer, this one or that one?' 'I don't like of them.'
- 11 'Do you work or are you a student?' '..... I've got a job but I study too.'
- 12 Ann and I didn't know the time because of us had a watch.

76.2 Write sentences for the pictures. Use Both ... and Neither ...



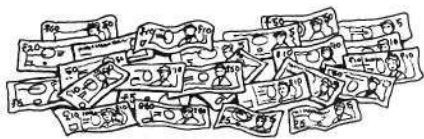
- 1 Both cups are empty.
- 2 are open.
- 3 wearing a hat.
- 4 cameras.
- 5 to the airport.
- 6 is right.

76.3 A man and a woman answered some questions. Their answers to all the questions were the same. Write sentences with Both/Neither of them...

		
1 Are you married?	No	No
2 How old are you?	21	21
3 Are you a student?	Yes	Yes
4 Have you got a car?	No	No
5 Where do you live?	London	London
6 Do you like fish?	Yes	Yes
7 Are you interested in politics?	No	No
8 Can you play the piano?	No	No
9 Do you smoke?	Yes	Yes

- 1 Neither of them is married.
- 2 Both of them are 21.
- 3 students.
- 4 a car.
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9

UNIT 77 a lot much many



a lot of money
much money

much + *uncountable noun* (• Unit 61):
much money much food
much time much coffee



a lot of books
many books

many + *plural noun*:
many books many shops
many people many questions

a lot of + *uncountable or plural noun*:
a lot of food a lot of coffee a lot of people a lot of shops

- much/many are more usual in *questions* and *negative sentences*:

- Do you drink much coffee?
- How much money have you got?
- She hasn't got much money.
- A: Have you got any money?
B: I've got some but not much.
- Diana spoke to me but she didn't say much.

- Do you know many people?
- How many photographs did you take?
- He hasn't got many friends.
- A: Did you take any photographs?
13: I took some but not many.

- a lot (of) is more usual in *positive sentences*:
 - I drink a lot of coffee.
 - They haven't got much money but they've got a lot of friends.
 - There aren't many hotels in the town but there are a lot of restaurants.

You can use a lot without a noun. Compare:


- He ate a lot of food, (a lot of + *noun*)
but He ate a lot. (*not* 'a lot of')

Note that we say:

- There is a lot of food/money/coffee etc. (*singular verb*)
but There are a lot of trees/shops/people etc. (*plural verb*)
- A lot of people speak English, (*not* 'A lot of people speaks')

- Sometimes much or a lot = often:
 - 'Do you watch TV much?' 'No, not much.' (= not often)
 - We like films, so we go to the cinema a lot.

77.1 Answer the questions with **I've got some but not much/many.**


- 
- 1 Have you got any money?
 - 2 Have you got any coffee?
 - 3 Have you got any books?
 - 4 Have you got any cigarettes?
 - 5 Have you got any cheese?
 - 6 Have you got any friends?




I've got some but not much.

I've got some but

77.2 Write questions with **How much ... ?** or **How many ... ?**

- 
- 1 I took some photographs.
 - 2 I bought some stamps.
 - 3 I lost some money.
 - 4 I drank some water.
 - 5 I made some mistakes.
 - 6 I wrote some letters.
 - 7 I bought some food.
 - 8 I invited some people.




How many photographs did you take..... ?

How.....did you buy?

77.3 Put in a lot / a lot of / much / many.

- 1 Do you drink much tea?
- 2 I like reading. I've got a lot of books.
- 3 There isn't.....milk in the fridge.
- 4 It costs.....money to travel round the world.
- 5 Please be quick! I haven't got.....time.
- 6 How.....foreign languages can you speak?
- 7 They didn't ask me.....questions.
- 8 There was.....food at the party but I didn't eat.....
- 9 We saw.....interesting things in the museum.
- 10 George knows.....about economics.
- 11 We went on a cheap holiday. It didn't cost.....
- 12 'Did you enjoy the party?' 'No, not.....'
- 13 Most of the town is modern - there aren't.....old buildings.
- 14 Most people in the town have jobs - there isn't.....unemployment.

77.4 Write the questions and answers. Use much and a lot.

- 
- 1 (go to the cinema)
 - 2 (watch TV)
 - 3 (go swimming)
 - 4 (play tennis)
 - 5 (travel)
 - 6 (use the phone)

Do you go to the cinema much..... ?

Do you watch TV much..... ?

.....go swimming.....?

Do.....?

.....?

.....?



No, not much.

Yes, a lot.....

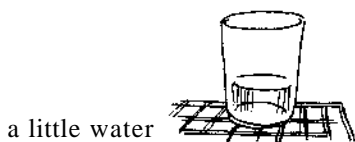
No,

Yes,

Yes,

No,

UNIT 78 (a) little (a) few



a little water

(a) **little** + *uncountable noun*:

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| (a) little water | (a) little money |
| (a) little time | (a) little soup |



a few books

(a) **few** + *plural noun*:

- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| (a) few books | (a) few questions |
| (a) few people | (a) few days |

a little = some but not much:

- She didn't eat anything but she drank **a little water**.
- I speak **a little Spanish**. (= some Spanish but not much)
- A: Can you speak **Spanish**?
B: **A little**.

a few = some but not many:

- Last night I wrote **a few letters**.
- We're going away for **a few days**.
- I speak **a few words** of Spanish.
- A: Have you got any **cigarettes**?
B: **A few**. Do you want one?

~~✗~~**little** (*without a*) = nearly no . . . or nearly nothing:

- There was **little food** in the fridge. It was nearly empty.

You can say **very little**:

- She's very thin because she eats **very little**. (= nearly nothing)

~~✗~~**few** (*without a*) = nearly no . . . :

- There were **few people** in the park. It was nearly empty.

You can say **very few**:

- Her English is very good. She makes **very few mistakes**.

little and a little:

a little is a *positive* idea:

- They have **a little money** so they're not poor. (= some but not much money)

~~✗~~**little** is a *negative* idea:

- They have **little money**. They are very poor. (= nearly no money)



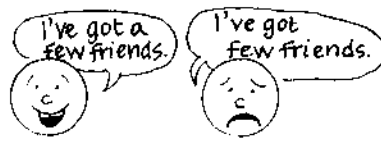
few and a few:

a few is a *positive* idea:

- I've got **a few friends**, so I'm not lonely. (= some but not many friends)

~~✗~~**few** is a *negative* idea:

- I'm sad and lonely. I've got **few friends**. (= nearly no friends)



78.1 Answer the questions with a little or a few.

- | | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 1 Have you got any money? <u>A little</u> | 5 Have we got any petrol?..... |
| 2 Have you got any stamps?..... | 6 Does he speak English?..... |
| 3 Do you want any sugar?..... | 7 Do you know many people?..... |
| 4 Did he ask any questions?..... | 8 Would you like some soup?..... |

78.2 Put in a little or a few + one of these words:

air chairs days friends houses ~~letters~~ milk Russian
times

- Yesterday evening I wrote a few letters . . . to my family and friends.
- Can I have.....in my coffee, please?
- 'When did John go away?' '.....ago.'
- 'Do you speak any foreign languages?' 'Yes, Italian and.....'
- 'Are you going out alone?' 'No, I'm going with.....'
- 'Have you ever been to Rome?' 'Oh, yes.....'
- I live in a very small village. There is a church, a shop and.....
- that's all.
- I'm going out for a walk. I need.....fresh.....
- There wasn't much furniture in the room -just a table and.....

78.3 Complete the sentences. Use very little / very few + one of these words:

coffee hotels ~~mistakes~~ rain tables time

- Her English is very good. She makes very few mistakes
- I drink.....I don't like it.
- In summer the weather is very dry. There is.....
- It's difficult to find a place to stay in this town. There are.....
- We must hurry. We've got.....
- It's a small restaurant. There are.....

78.4 Put in little or a little / few or a few.

- There was little food in the fridge. It was nearly empty.
- 'When did you see Sarah?' '.....days ago.'
- He's very lazy. He does.....work.
- They're not rich but they've got.....money - enough to live.
- Last night I went to a restaurant with.....friends.
- The TV service is not very good. There are.....good programmes.
- I can't decide now - I need.....time to think about it.
- Nearly everybody has a job. There is.....unemployment.
- He's not well-known.....people have heard of him.

UNIT 79 big/tired/beautiful etc. [*adjectives*]

- *adjective + noun* (nice day / blue eyes etc.):

adjective + noun

It's a **nice** **day** today.
Ann has got **blue** **eyes**.
There's a very **old** **church** in this village.
Do you like **Italian** **food**?
I don't speak any **foreign** **languages**.
There are some **beautiful yellow** **flowers** in the garden.

The adjective is *before* the noun:

- They live in a **modern house**, (not 'a house modern')

The endings of adjectives do not change:

- a **different place** **different** places (not 'differents')

- **be** (am/is/are/was/were etc.) + *adjective*:

- The weather **is nice** today.
- Those flowers **are very beautiful**.
- A: Can you close the window, please?
B: Why? **Are you cold**?
- The **film wasn't very good**. **It was boring**.
- Please **be quiet**. I'm reading.



get + *adjective* • Unit 51

- **look/feel/smell/taste/sound** + *adjective*:



- 'You **look tired**.' 'Yes, I **feel tired** too.'
- George told me about his new job. **It sounds interesting**.
- Don't cook that meat. It doesn't **smell good**.

Compare:

He	is	
	feels	
	looks	tired.

They	are	
	look	
	sound	American.

It	is	
	smells	
	tastes	good.

UNIT 79 Exercises

79.1 The words in the box are adjectives (**black/foreign** etc.) or nouns (**air/job** etc.). Use an adjective and a noun to complete each sentence.

air	dangerous	fresh	interesting	languages	person	serious
black	expensive	holiday	job	long	photograph	sharp
clouds	foreign	hotels	knife	old	problem	

- Jack doesn't speak any foreign languages.
- Look at those.....in the sky! It's going to rain.
- She works very hard and she's very tired. She needs a.....
- I enjoy talking to her. She's an.....
- Fire-fighting is a.....
- Can you open the window? We need some.....
- This is an.....of Tom - he looks very different now.
- I've got a.....I hope you can help me.
- I need a.....to cut these onions.
- They've got a lot of money — they always stay at.....

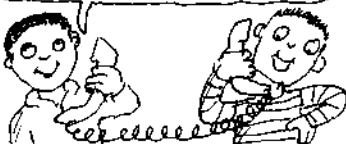
79.2 Write sentences for the pictures. Use:

look(s) sound(s)
feel(s) smell(s) taste(s)

+

ill nice surprised
awful new happy

1 You sound happy.....



2 It.....



3 I.....



4 You.....



5 They.....



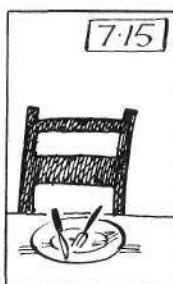
6 It.....



79.3 In these conversations you don't agree with Alex. Use the word in brackets ().

- You sound happy.
- He's American.
- She's very rich.
- You look cold.
- I'm English.
- They are very friendly.
- Your meal looks good.

- Do I? (feel) I don't feel happy.....
- Is he? (sound) He doesn't.....
- Is she? (look) She.....
- Do I? (feel) I.....
- Are you? (sound) You.....
- Are they? (look) They.....
- Does it? (taste) It.....



He ate his dinner very **quickly**.



Suddenly the shelf fell down.

Quickly and **suddenly** are *adverbs*.

adjective + -ly → *adverb*:

<i>adjective</i>	quick	bad	sudden	careful	heavy
<i>adverb</i>	quickly	badly	suddenly	carefully	heavily etc.

Spelling • Appendix 4(4.2): easy → easily heavy → heavily

Adverbs tell you how something happens or how somebody does something:

- The train **stopped suddenly**.
- I **opened** the door **slowly**.
- Please **listen carefully**.
- I **understand** you **perfectly**.



It's **raining heavily**.

Compare: *adjective* (• Unit 79)

- Sue **is** very **quiet**.
- **Be careful!**
- It was **a bad** game.

adverb

- but Sue **speaks** very **quietly**, (not 'speaks very quiet')
- Listen carefully!** (not 'listen careful')
- Our team **played** **badly**.

fast **hard** **late** **early**

These words are *adjectives and adverbs*:

- Ben is **a fast** runner. Ben can **run fast**, (not 'fastly')
- Her job is very **hard**. She **works** very **hard**, (not 'hardly')
- The bus **was late/early**. I **went** to bed **late/early**.

good (*adjective*) → **well** (*adverb*):

- Her English **is** very **good**. She **speaks** English very **well**, (not 'speaks English very good')
- It was **a good** game. Our team **played** **well**.

But **well** is also an *adjective* (= not ill, in good health):

- 'How are you?' 'I'm very **well**, thank you. And you?'

80.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with one of these adverbs:

badly dangerously heavily fast angrily quietly



- 1 It's raining heavily.
- 2 He sings very fast.
- 3 They came in quietly.
- 4 She shouted at me angrily.
- 5 He was driving fast.
- 6 She can run very quickly.

80.2 Choose a verb + adverb from the box to complete these sentences.

come	explain	know	<u>listen</u>	+	<u>carefully</u>	clearly	easily	well
sleep	think	win	work		<u>carefully</u>	quickly	hard	well

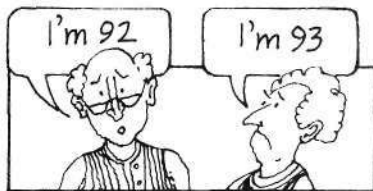
- 1 I'm going to say something very important, so please listen to me carefully.
- 2 John! I need your help quickly!
- 3 I've met him but I don't know him very well.
- 4 They work hard. At the end of the day they're always tired.
- 5 I'm tired this morning. I didn't sleep well last night.
- 6 You're a much better tennis player than me. When we play, you always win easily.
- 7 Listen carefully before you answer the question.
- 8 Our teacher isn't very good. He doesn't explain clearly.

80.3 Choose the right word.

- 1 I opened the doors slow/slowly. (slowly is right)
- 2 Why are you angry/angrily? I haven't done anything.
- 3 Bill is a careful/carefully driver. He drives careful/carefully.
- 4 Can you please repeat that slow/slowly?
- 5 Come on, George! Why are you always so slow/slowly?
- 6 The party was very good/well. I enjoyed it very much.
- 7 Tom didn't do very good/well in his examination.
- 8 Jane is studying hard/hardly for her examinations.
- 9 'Where's Diane?' 'She was here, but she left sudden/suddenly.'
- 10 I met them a long time ago, so I don't remember them very good/well.
- 11 My brother isn't very good/well at the moment.
- 12 Don't eat your dinner so quick/quickly. It's not good for you.
- 13 Those oranges look nice/nicely. Can I have one?
- 14 I don't want to work for that company. They pay their workers very bad/badly.
- 15 Please be quiet/quietly. I'm reading.

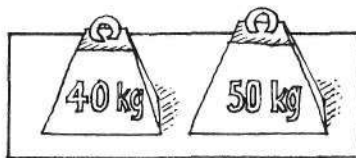
UNIT 81

old/older expensive/more expensive



old

older



heavy

heavier



expensive

more expensive

Older / heavier / more expensive are *comparative* forms.

The comparative form is **-er (older)** or **more ... (more expensive)**.

short adjectives (1 syllable) **old/cheap/nice** etc. → **-er**

old → colder **slow** → slower **cheap** → cheaper
nice → nicer **late** → later **big** → bigger

Spelling • Appendix 4(44): **big** → bigger **hot** → hotter **thin** → thinner

- Rome is **old** but Athens is **older**, (*not* 'more old')
- Is it **cheaper** to go by car or by train? (*not* 'more cheap')
- Sue wants to buy a **bigger** car.
- This coat is okay but I think the other one is **nicer**.

but **good/well** → **better** **bad** → **worse** **far** → **further**

- The weather wasn't very **good** yesterday but it's **better** today.
- Which is **worse** - a headache or toothache?
- 'Do you feel **better** today?' 'No, I feel **worse**.'
- 'How **far** is the station? A mile?' 'No, **further**. About two miles.'

-y adjectives (2 syllables) **easy/heavy** etc. → **-ier**

easy → easier **heavy** → heavier **early** → earlier

- Don't send a letter. It's **easier** to phone me. (*not* 'more easy')
- The bag is heavy but the suitcase is **heavier**.

long adjectives (2/3/4 syllables) **modern** (= MOD-ERN) / **expensive** (= EX-PENS-IVE) etc.

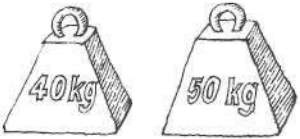
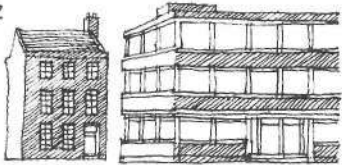

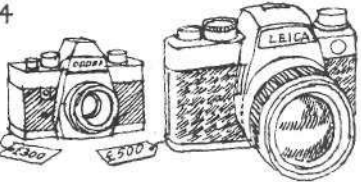

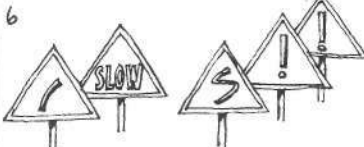
→ **more...**

modern → more modern **polite** → more polite **tired** → more tired
expensive → more expensive **interesting** → more interesting

- I don't like this house. I prefer **more modern** houses, (*not* 'moderner')
- Don't talk about your job. Let's talk about something **more interesting**.
- Is it **more expensive** to go by car or by train?

UNIT 81 Exercises

81.1 Look at the pictures and write the comparative (**older / more modern** etc.).

<p>1</p>  <p>heavy <u>heavier</u></p>	<p>2</p>  <p>big</p>	<p>3</p> <p>tortoise / snail</p>  <p>slow</p>
<p>4</p>  <p>expensive</p>	<p>5</p>  <p>high</p>	<p>6</p>  <p>dangerous</p>

81.2 Write the comparative (**older / more modern** etc.).

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1 old <u>older</u> | 7 difficult |
| 2 strong | 8 large |
| 3 happy | 9 far |
| 4 careful | 10 serious |
| 5 important | 11 crowded |
| 6 bad | 12 pretty |

81.3 Write the opposite.

- | | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1 younger <u>older</u> | 3 cheaper | 5 nearer |
| 2 colder | 4 better | 6 easier |

81.4 Complete the sentences. Use a comparative.

- Sue's car isn't very big. She wants a bigger car.
- This house isn't very modern. I prefer more modern houses.
- You're not very tall. Your brother is
- Bill doesn't work very hard. I work
- My chair isn't very comfortable. Yours is
- Jill's idea wasn't very good. My idea was
- These flowers aren't very nice. The blue ones are
- My case isn't very heavy. Your case is
- I'm not very interested in art. I'm in history.
- It isn't very warm today. It was yesterday.
- These tomatoes don't taste very good. The other ones tasted
- Britain isn't very big. France is
- London isn't very beautiful. Paris is
- This knife isn't very sharp. Have you got a one?
- People today aren't very polite. In the past they were

- Unit 81 old/older expensive / more expensive



She's **taller than** him.

HOTEL PRICES (per person, per night)	
Europa Hotel	£90
Grand Hotel	£80.50
Royal Hotel	£78
... Hotel	£60

The Europa Hotel is **more expensive than** the Grand.

- We use **than** after *comparatives* (**older than ... more expensive than ...** etc.):

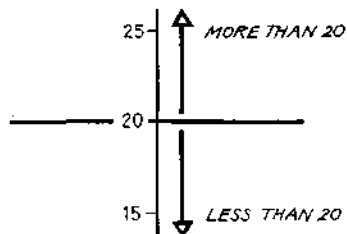
- Athens is **older than** Rome.
- Are oranges **more expensive than** apples?
- It's **easier** to phone **than** to write a letter.
- 'How are you today?' 'Not bad. **Better than** yesterday.'
- Last night the restaurant was **more crowded than** usual.

- We say ... **than me / than him / than her / than us / than them:**

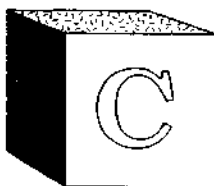
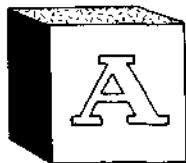
- I can run faster **than him**. or I can run faster **than he can**.
- You are a better singer **than me**. or You are a better singer **than I am**.
- I got up **earlier than her**. or I got up earlier **than she did**.

- more/less than ...**

- A: How much did your shoes cost? £25?
- B: No, **more than** that. (= **more than** £25)
- The film was very short - **less than** an hour.
- They've got **more money than they need**.
- You go out **more than me**. (= more often than me)



- a bit / much + older / more expensive etc.**



Box A is **a bit bigger** than Box B.

Box C is **much bigger** than Box D.

- Canada is **much bigger** than France.
- Jill is **a bit older** than Gary - she's 25 and he's 24
- A car is **much more expensive** than a motor-bike.

a bit much	bigger	than ...
	older	
	better	
	more difficult more expensive	

82.1 Write sentences about Liz and Ben. Use **than**.

1 I'm 26.
2 I'm not a very good swimmer.
3 I'm 1 metre 68 tall.
4 I start work at 8 o'clock.
5 I don't work very hard.
6 I haven't got much money.
7 I'm a very good driver.
8 I'm not very friendly.
9 I'm not a very good dancer.
10 I'm very intelligent.
11 I speak French very well.
12 I don't go to the cinema very much.



LIZ

1 I'm 24.
2 I'm a very good swimmer.
3 I'm 1 metre 66 tall.
4 I start work at 8.30.
5 I work very hard.
6 I've got a lot of money.
7 I'm not a very good driver.
8 I'm very friendly.
9 I'm a good dancer.
10 I'm not very intelligent.
11 I don't speak French very well.
12 I go to the cinema a lot.



BEN

1 ~~Liz is older than Ben.~~
2 ~~Ben is a better swimmer than Liz.~~
3 Liz is taller.....
4 Liz starts..... Ben.
5 Ben..... Liz.
6 Ben has got.....

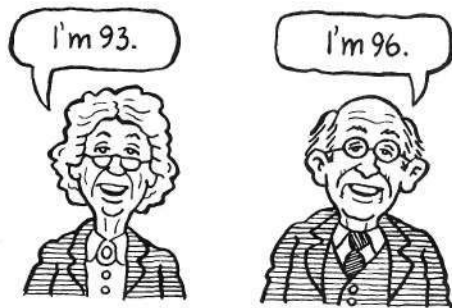
7 Liz is a.....
8 Ben
9 Ben
10 Liz
11 Liz
12 Ben

82.2 Complete the sentences. Use **than**.

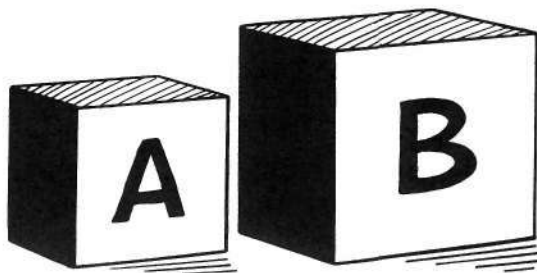
1 He isn't very tall. You're ~~taller than him (or... than he is)~~.....
2 She isn't very old. You're
3 I don't work very hard. You work.....
4 He doesn't smoke very much. You
5 I'm not a very good cook. You.....
6 We don't know many people. You
7 They haven't got much money. You've got.....
8 I can't run very fast. You can
9 She hasn't been here very long. You
10 I didn't get up very early. You
11 He isn't very interesting. You.....

82.3 Complete the sentences with **a bit** or **much** + a comparative (**older/better** etc.).

1 Jill is 25. Gary is 24. ~~Jill is a bit older than Gary.~~.....
2 Jack's mother is 54. His father is 68. Jack's mother
3 My camera cost £100. Yours cost £96. My camera
4 Yesterday I felt terrible. Today I feel okay.
I feel.....
5 Today the temperature is 12 degrees. Yesterday it was ten degrees.
It's.....today.....yesterday.
6 Ann is a fantastic tennis player. I'm not very good.
Ann



She's old but she's **not as old** as he is.



Box A isn't as **big** as Box B.

■ not as ... as ...:

- Rome is **not as old as** Athens. (= Athens is **older**)
- **The Grand Hotel isn't as expensive as** the Europa. (= the Europa is **more expensive**)
- **I don't** play tennis **as often as** you. (= you play **more often**)
- The weather is better than yesterday. It isn't **as cold**. (= as cold **as yesterday**)

■ not as much as ... / not as many as ... (much/many • Unit 77):

- **I haven't got as much money as** you. (= you've got **more money**)
- **I don't know as many people as** you. (= you know **more people**)
- **I don't go out as much as** you. (= you go out **more**)

Compare **not as ... as** and **than**:

- Rome is **not as old as** Athens.
Athens is **older than** Rome, (*not 'older as Rome'*)
- Tennis **isn't as popular as** football.
Football is **more popular than** tennis.
- **I don't go out as much as** you.
You go out **more than** me.

■ We say ... as **me** / as **him** / as **her** etc.:

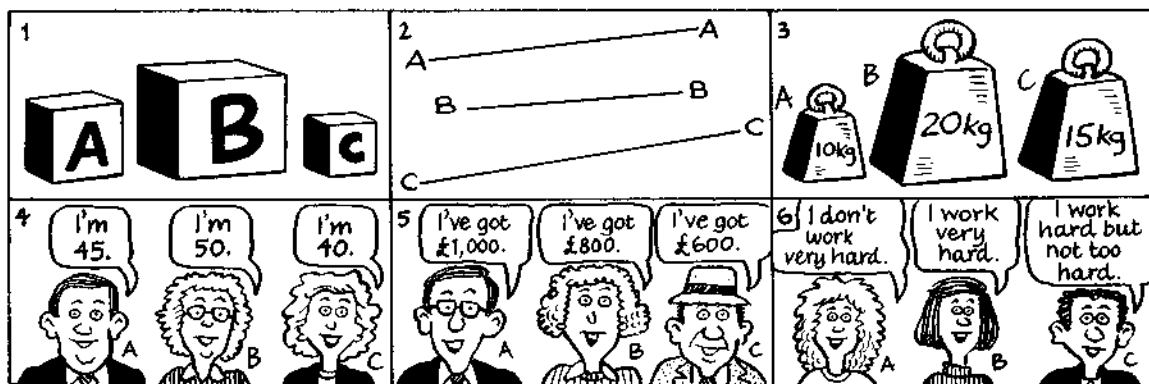
- She's not as old **as him**. *or* She's not as old **as he is**.
- You haven't got as much money **as me**. *or* You haven't got as much money **as I have**.

■ Note that we say **the same as** ...:

- My hair is **the same colour as** yours, (*not 'the same like'*)
- I arrived at **the same time as** Tom.

UNIT 83 Exercises

83.1 Look at the pictures and write sentences about A, B and C.



- 1 A is bigger than C but not as big as B.
- 2 A is B but not C.
- 3 C is A but
- 4 A is but
- 5 B has got
- 6 C works

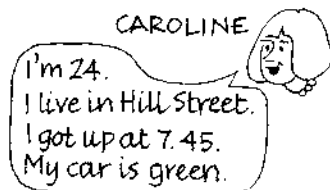
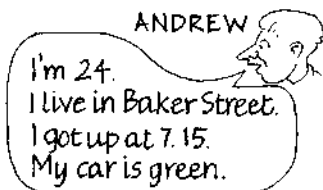
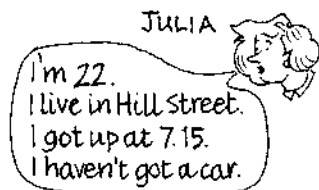
83.2 Write sentences with **as ... as ...**

- 1 Athens is older than Rome. Rome isn't as old as Athens.
- 2 My room is bigger than yours. Your room isn't
- 3 You got up earlier than me. I didn't
- 4 We played better than them. They didn't
- 5 I've been here longer than you. You haven't

83.3 Put in **as** or **than**.

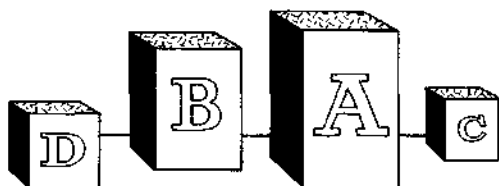
- 1 Athens is older than Rome.
- 2 I don't watch TV as much you.
- 3 You eat more me.
- 4 I feel better I felt yesterday.
- 5 Jim isn't as clever he thinks.
- 6 Belgium is smaller Switzerland.
- 7 Brazil isn't as big Canada.
- 8 I can't wait longer an hour.

83.4 Read about the three people and complete the sentences with **the same ... as ...** Use the word in brackets ().



- 1 (age) Andrew is the same age as Caroline.
- 2 (street) Julia lives Caroline.
- 3 (time) Julia got up
- 4 (colour) Andrew's

UNIT 84 the oldest the most expensive



HOTEL PRICES IN KINTON (per person, per night)			
Europa Hotel	£90	Grosvenor	£55
Grand Hotel	£80.50	Bennett's	£53
Royal	£78	Carlton	£50
Astoria	£60	Star	£45
Palace	£60	Station	£40

Box A is **bigger than** box B.

Box A is **bigger than** all the other boxes.

Box A is **the biggest** box.

The Europa Hotel is **more expensive than** the Grand.

The Europa Hotel is **more expensive than** all the other hotels in the town.

The Europa Hotel is **the most expensive** hotel in the town.

Bigger / older / **more** expensive etc. are *comparative* forms (• Unit 81).

Biggest / oldest / **most** expensive etc. are *superlative* forms.

- The superlative form is **-est (oldest) or most...** (**most expensive**):

short adjectives (old/cheap/nice etc.) → the -est:

old → the oldest cheap → the cheapest nice → the nicest

but **good → the best bad → the worst**

Spelling • Appendix 4(4.4): **big → the biggest hot → the hottest**

-y adjectives (easy/heavy etc.) → the -iest:

easy → the easiest heavy → the heaviest pretty → the prettiest

long adjectives (modern/expensive/interesting etc.) → the most...

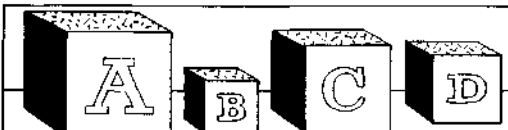
modern → the most modern interesting → the most interesting

- Don't forget **the**. We say: **the** oldest. . . / **the** most expensive . . . etc.:
 - The church is very old. It's **the oldest** building in the town.
(= it is older **than** all the other buildings)
 - What is **the longest** river in the world?
 - Money is important but it isn't **the most important** thing in life.
 - Excuse me, where is **the nearest** bank?
- You can use **the oldest / the best / the most expensive** etc. *without* a noun:
 - Ken is a good tennis player. I think he is **the best** in the club.
(**the best** = the best player)
- You can use the superlative + **I've ever ... / you've ever ...** (• Unit 16):
 - It was a very bad film — **the worst** film **I've ever** seen.
 - What is **the most unusual** thing **you've ever** done?

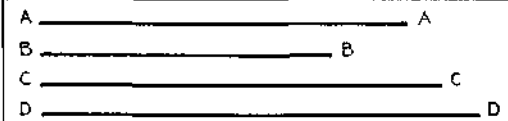
UNIT 84 Exercises

84.1 Write sentences with comparatives (**older** etc.) and superlatives (**the oldest** etc.).


1



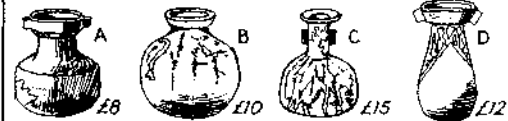
2



3



4



5

RESTAURANT A	excellent
RESTAURANT B	not bad
RESTAURANT C	good but not wonderful
RESTAURANT D	awful

(big/small)

(A/D) A is bigger than D.

(A) A is the biggest.

(B) B is the smallest.

(long/short)

(C/A) C is A.

(D) D is

(B) B

(young/old)

(D/C) D

(B) B

(C)

(expensive/cheap)

(D/A)

(C)

(A)

(good/bad)

(A/C)

(A)

(D)

84.2 Write sentences with a superlative (**the longest** etc.).

Sydney	Brazil	large	country	planet	the USA	the solar system
Everest	Jupiter	long	city	state	Africa	South America
Alaska	the Nile	high	river	mountain	the world	<u>Australia</u>

1 Sydney is the largest city in Australia.

2 Everest

3

4

5

6

84.3 Complete the sentences. Use a superlative (**the oldest** etc.).

1 This building is very old. It's the oldest building in the town.

2 It was a very happy day. It was of my life.

3 It's a very good film. It's I've ever seen.

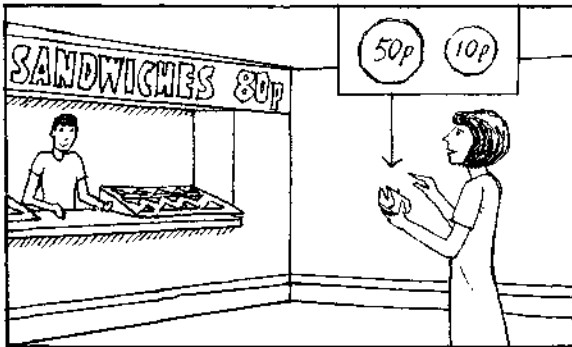
4 She's a very popular singer. She's in our country.

5 It was a very bad mistake. It was I've ever made.

6 It's a very pretty village. It's I've ever seen.

7 It was a very cold day. It was of the year.

8 He's a very interesting person. He's I've ever met.



Alice wants to buy a sandwich.

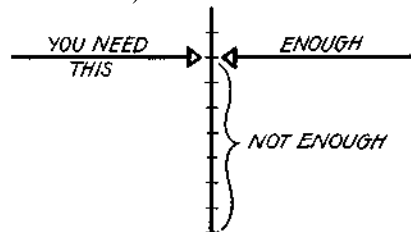
A sandwich is 80 pence.

Alice has got only 60 pence.

So she can't buy a sandwich because she hasn't got **enough** money.

• (not) **enough** + *noun* (**enough money** / **enough houses** etc.):

- A: Is there **enough sugar** in your coffee?
- B: Yes, thank you.
- We wanted to play football but we didn't have **enough players**.
- Why don't you buy a car? You've got **enough money**, (not 'money enough')

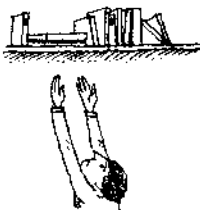


• (not) **enough** without a *noun*:

- I've got some money, but **not enough** to buy a car. (= I need more money to buy a car.)
- 'Would you like some more to eat?' 'No, thanks, I've had **enough**.'
- You are always at home. You don't go out **enough**.

• *adjective* + **enough** (**good enough** / **warm enough** etc.):

He isn't
tall enough
(to reach
the shelf).



- A: Shall we go swimming?
- B: No, it's not **warm enough**, (nor 'enough warm')
- Can you hear the radio? Is it **loud enough** for you?
- Don't buy that coat. It's nice but it isn't **long enough**. (= it's too short)

• Remember

enough + *noun*: **enough money** **enough time** **enough people**
but *adjective* + **enough**: **good enough** **old enough** **loud enough**

• We say

enough	for somebody/something	to do something
---------------	-------------------------------	------------------------

- This pullover isn't big **enough for me**.
- I haven't got **enough money for a car**.

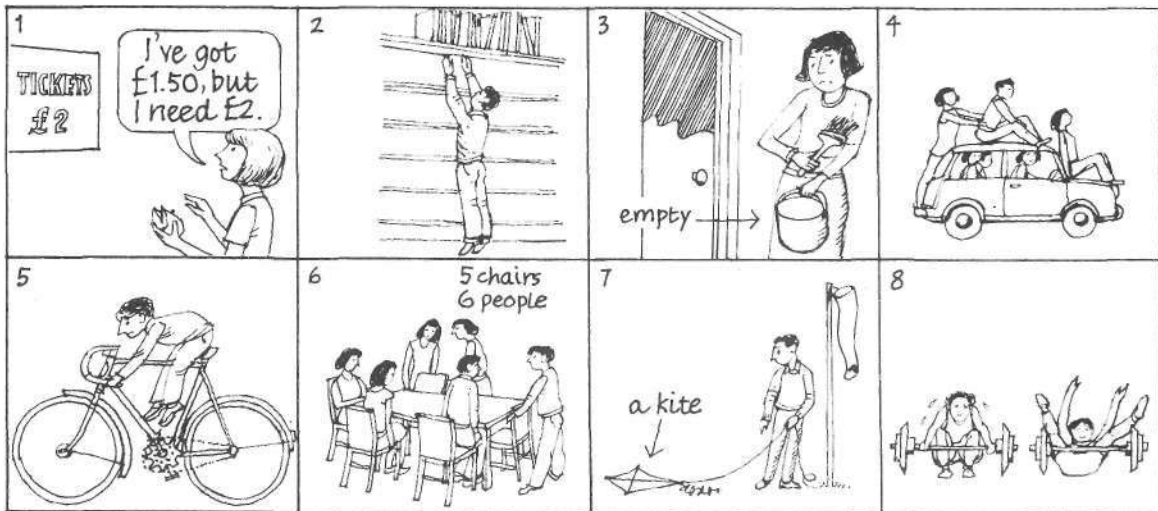
but I haven't got **enough money to buy** a car. (not 'for buy a car')

- Is your English good **enough to have** a conversation?
- There weren't **enough chairs for everybody to sit** down.

UNIT 85 Exercises

85.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use **enough** + one of these words:

big chairs long ~~money~~ paint strong ~~tall~~ wind



- | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1 She hasn't got enough money. | 5 His legs aren't |
| 2 He isn't tall enough. | 6 There aren't |
| 3 She hasn't got | 7 There isn't |
| 4 The car isn't | 8 He isn't |

85.2 Complete the sentences. Use **enough** + one of these words:

big clothes eat fruit ~~loud~~ old practise ~~sugar~~ time tired

- 1 'Is there enough sugar in your coffee?' 'Yes, thank you.'
- 2 Can you hear the radio? Is it loud enough for you?
- 3 He can leave school if he wants to - he's
- 4 Did you have to answer all the questions in the exam?
- 5 This house isn't for a large family.
- 6 She's very thin. She doesn't
- 7 You don't eat You should eat more - it's good for you.
- 8 It's late but I don't want to go to bed now. I'm not
- 9 He's got He doesn't need any new ones.
- 10 She's not a very good tennis player because she doesn't

85.3 Complete the sentences. Use **enough** + one of these words + **to** ...:

bread ~~money~~ money old warm well

- 1 I'm not going to buy a car. I haven't got enough money to buy a car.
- 2 They're not getting married. They're not married.
- 3 Don't sit in the garden. It isn't the garden.
- 4 We can't make sandwiches. We haven't got
- 5 They didn't go on holiday. They didn't have
- 6 Don't go to work today. You aren't



There is **too much** sugar in it.



The shoes are **too big** for him.

- **too much / too many** = more than you want, more than is good:
 - I don't like the weather here. There is **too much rain**. (= more rain than is good)
 - Let's go to another restaurant. There are **too many people** here.
 - She studies all the time. I think she studies **too much**.

much/many • Unit 77

- **too + adjective (too big / too loud etc.)**:
 - Please turn the radio down. It's **too loud**. (= louder than I want)
 - I can't work. I'm **too tired**.



- **too and not enough (enough • Unit 85)**:

- There's **too much sugar** in my coffee. (= more sugar than I want)
- I don't feel very well. **I ate too much**.
- The radio is **too loud**. Can you turn it down, please?
- The hat is **too big** for her.



- There's **not enough sugar** in my coffee. (= I want more sugar)
- You're very thin. You **don't eat enough**.
- The radio isn't **loud enough**. Can you turn it up, please?
- The hat **isn't big enough** for her. (= it's **too small** for her)



- We say: **too ... for somebody/something to do something**:
 - These shoes are **too big for me**.
 - It's a small house - **too small for a large family**.

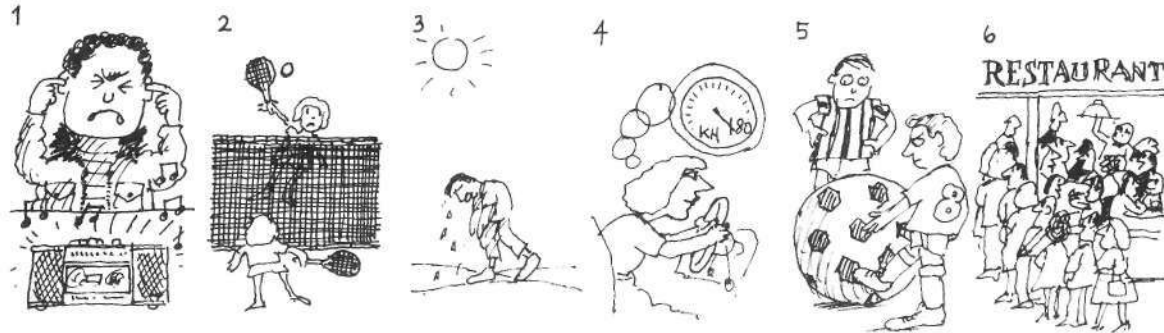
but

- It's **too cold to go** out. (*not 'for go out'*)
- I'm **too tired to work**.
- She speaks **too fast for me to understand** her.

UNIT 86 Exercises

86.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use **too** + one of these words:

big crowded fast high hot loud



- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 The radio is <u>too loud</u> | 4 She's driving |
| 2 The net is | 5 The ball is..... |
| 3 It's | 6 The restaurant is |

86.2 Complete the sentences. Use **too much / too many or enough**.

- You're very thin. You don't eat enough.....
- I don't like the weather here. There's too much..... rain.
- I can't wait for them. I haven't got.....time.
- 'Did you have.....to eat?' 'Yes, thank you.'
- You drink.....coffee. It's not good for you.
- You don't eat.....fruit. You should eat more.
- There was nowhere to sit on the beach. There were.....people.

86.3 Complete the sentences. Use **too or enough** + one of these words:

big busy expensive far ~~loud~~ ~~loud~~ sharp warm

- Please turn the radio down. It's too loud.....
- Can you turn up the radio, please? It isn't loud enough.....
- I don't want to walk home. It's.....
- Don't buy anything in that shop. It
- You can't put all your things in this bag. It.....
- We didn't go to the beach. It.....
- I can't talk to you now. I
- I can't cut anything with this knife. It

86.4 Complete the sentences. Use **too** (+ adjective) **to** (do something).

- I'm not going out. (cold) It's too cold to go out.....
- I'm not going to bed. (early) It's too early
- Don't wear a coat. (warm) It's too.....
- They're not getting married. (young) They're.....
- Nobody goes out at night. (dangerous) It's
- Don't phone Ann now. (late) It's
- They didn't say anything. (surprised) They were

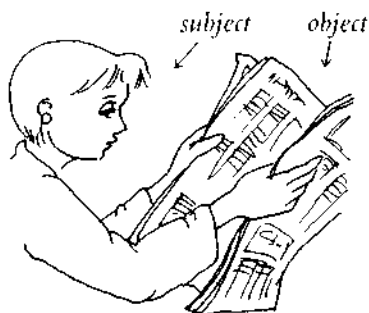
■ verb + object

Jill	reads	a newspaper	every day.
subject	verb	object	

The *verb* (**reads**) and the *object* (**a newspaper**) are usually together:

- Jill **reads a newspaper** every day.

(not 'Jill **reads** every day **a newspaper**.)



subject	verb	+ object	
You	speak	English	very well,
I	watched	television	all evening,
We	invited	a lot of people	to the party,
My brother	phoned	the police	immediately.

- I **like Italian food** very much, (not 'I like very much Italian food.')
- Ann **borrowed some money** from the bank, (not 'Ann borrowed from the bank some money.')
- I **opened the door** very quietly, (not 'I opened very quietly the door.')
- George usually **wears a black hat**. (not 'George wears usually a black hat.')
- Why do you always **make the same mistake**? (not 'Why do you make always the same mistake?')

■ place and time

	place (where?)	time (when? how long? how often?)
George walks	to work	every morning .
We arrived	at the airport	at 7 o'clock .
Are you going	to the party	tonight?
They've lived	in the same house	for 20 years .
I usually go	to bed	early .

place is usually before *time*:

- They go **to school every day**. (not 'They go every day to school.')
- I went **to the bank yesterday afternoon**, (not 'I went yesterday afternoon to the bank.')
- Jack's brother has been **in hospital since June**, (not '... since June in hospital.')

87.1 Put the words in the right order.

- 1 (a newspaper / reads / every day/Jill) *Jill reads a newspaper every day.*
- 2 (football / don't like / very much / I) I.....
- 3 (lost / I / my watch / last week)
- 4 (Tom / the letter / slowly / read)
- 5 (London / do you know / very well?).....?
- 6 (ate / we / very quickly / our dinner)
- 7 (did you buy / in England / that jacket?).....?
- 8 (I / very well / French / don't speak)
- 9 (crossed / the street / they / carefully)
- 10 (from my brother / borrowed / £50 /I)
- 11 (we / enjoyed / very much / the party)
- 12 (passed / Ann / easily / the examination)
- 13 (every day / do / the same thing / we)
- 14 (I / this picture / don't like / very much)
- 15 (in her bag / the money / put / the woman)
- 16 (did you watch / on television / the news?).....?
- 17 (my plan / carefully / I / explained)
- 18 (she / smokes / every day / ten cigarettes)
- 19 (a lot of housework / did / I / yesterday)
- 20 (we / at the concert / some friends / met)
- 21 (you / the same clothes / wear / every day)
- 22 (I / want to speak / fluently / English)

87.2 Put the words in the right order.

- 1 (to work / every morning / walks / George) *George walks to work every morning.*
- 2 (at the party / we / early / arrived) We.....
- 3 (didn't go / yesterday / I / to work) I.....
- 4 (to work / tomorrow / are you going?).....?
- 5 (they / since 1984 / here / have lived)
- 6 (will you be / this evening / at home?).....?
- 7 (next week / they / to London / are going)
- 8 (to the cinema / last night / did you go?).....?
- 9 (on Monday / here / will they be?).....?
- 10 (goes / every year / to Italy /Jill)
- 11 (in London / Alice / in 1951 / was born)
- 12 (I / in bed / this morning / my breakfast / had)
- 13 (in October / Barbara / to university / is going)
- 14 (many times / my parents / have been / to the United States)
- 15 (a beautiful bird / this morning / I / in the garden / saw)
- 16 (my umbrella / last night / I think I left / in the restaurant)

always	usually	often	sometimes	rarely/seldom	never	ever
also	just	still	already	both	all	

These words (**always/usually** etc.) are often with the verb in the middle of a sentence:

- My brother **never** speaks to me.
- She's **always** late.
- Do you **often** eat in restaurants?
- I **sometimes** eat too much, (or **Sometimes I** eat too much.)
- I don't want to go to the cinema. I've **already** seen the film.
- I've got three sisters. They're **all** married.

■ **always/never** etc. go *before* the verb:

always	+	verb
often		go
never		play
etc.		feel
		etc.

- I **always** go to work by car. (*not* 'I go always')
- Ann **often** plays tennis.
- I **sometimes** feel sad.
- They **usually** have dinner at 7 o'clock.
- We **rarely** (or **seldom**) watch television.
- Tom is a good footballer. He **also** plays tennis and volleyball. (*not* 'He plays also tennis . . .')
- I've got three sisters. They **all** live in London.

■ **but always/never** etc. go *after* **am/is/are/was/were**:

am	+	always
is		often
are		never
was		etc.
were		


- I **am never** ill. (*not* 'I never am ill.')
- They **are usually** at home in the evenings.
- In winter it **is often** very cold here.
- When I was a child, I **was always** late for school.
- 'Where's George?' 'He's **still** in bed.'
- I've got two brothers. They're **both** doctors.

■ **always/never** etc. go *between* two verbs (**have ... been / can ... find** etc.):

verb 1		verb 2
will		go
can	always	find
do		remember
etc.	often	etc.
	never	
	etc.	
have		gone
has		been
		etc.

- I **will always** remember you.
- It **doesn't often** rain here.
- Do you **usually go** home by car?
- I **can never** find my keys.
- **Have you ever been** to Rome?
- A: Where's Linda?
B: She's **just gone** out. (she's = she **has**)
- A: Where are your friends?
B: They've **all gone** to the cinema.

88.1 Look at Sam's answers to the questions and write sentences with **often/never** etc.



1 Do you ever play tennis?


2 Do you ever smoke?

3 Are you ever ill?

4 Do you eat fish?

5 Are you ever late for work?

6 Do you ever write letters?



SAM

Yes, often.

Yes, sometimes.

Yes, often.

No, never.

Yes, always.

Very rarely.

Sam often plays tennis.

He.....

He.....

.....

.....

He..... letters.

88.2 Write these sentences again with the words in brackets ().

- 1 My brother speaks to me. (never) *My brother never speaks to me.*

2 Susan is polite. (always) Susan

3 I finish work at half past five. (usually) I

4 Jill has started a new job. (just) Jill

5 I go to bed before midnight. (rarely)

6 The bus isn't late. (usually).....

7 I don't eat meat. (often)

8 I will forget what you said. (never)

9 Have you broken your leg? (ever)

10 Do you work in the same place? (still)

11 They stay in the same hotel. (always)

12 Diane doesn't work on Saturdays. (usually)

13 I can remember his name. (never)

14 What do you have for breakfast? (usually)

15 When I arrived, Jan was there. (already) When I arrived,.....

88.3 Write sentences with **also**. Use the words in brackets ().

- 1 Do you play football? (tennis) *Yes, and I also play tennis.*


2 Do you speak Italian? (French) Yes, and I

3 Are you tired? (hungry) Yes, and

4 Have you been to England? (Ireland) Yes,

5 Did you buy any clothes? (some books).....

88.4 Write sentences with **both** and **all**.




I live in London.

I like football.

I'm a student.

I've got a car.

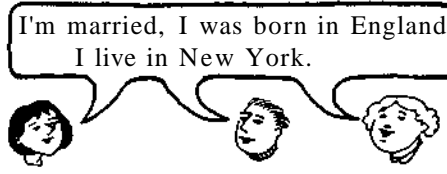


I live in London.

I like football.

I'm a student.

I've got a car.



I'm married, I was born in England,
I live in New York.

1 *They both live in London.*

2 They..... football.

3..... students.

4..... cars.

5 They..... married.

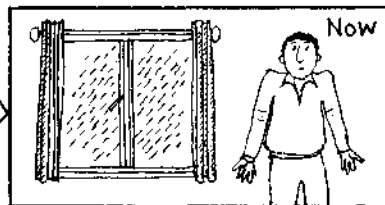
6 They..... England.

7

■ still



The rain hasn't stopped.



An hour ago it was raining.

It is **still** raining now.

still = something is the same as before:

- A: Does your daughter work?
B: No, she's **still** at school. (= she was at school before and she's at school now)
- I had a lot to eat but I'm **still** hungry.
- 'Did you sell your car?' 'No, I've **still** got it.'
- 'Do you **still** live in Paris?' 'No, I live in London now.'

■ yet



Fifteen minutes ago they were waiting for Bill to come.



They are **still** waiting for Bill. He hasn't come **yet**.

Yet = until now.

We use **yet** in *negative sentences* (**He hasn't come yet.**) and in *questions* (**Has he come yet?**)

Yet is usually at the end of a sentence:

- 'Where's Tom?' 'He **isn't** here **yet**.' (= He will be here but until now he hasn't come.)
- 'What are you doing this evening?' 'I **don't** know **yet**.' (= I will know later but I don't know at the moment.)
- 'Are you ready to go **yet**?' 'Not **yet**. Wait a moment.' (= I will be ready but I'm not ready at the moment.)

We often use the *present perfect* (**I have done** • Units 15-16) + **yet**:

- 'What's in the newspaper today?' 'I don't know. I **haven't** read it **yet**.' (= I'm going to read it but I haven't read it until now.)
- 'Has it **stopped** raining yet?' 'No, it's still raining.'

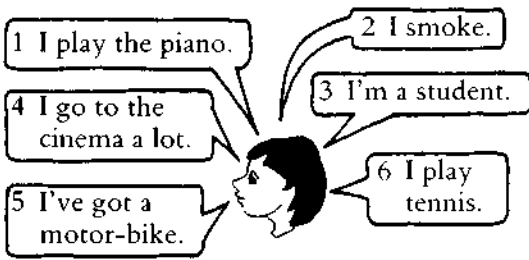
• Compare **yet** and **still**:

- She hasn't gone **yet**. = She's **still** here, {not 'She is yet here.'}
- I haven't finished eating **yet**. = I'm **still** eating.

UNIT 89 Exercises

89.1 You meet Carol. The last time you saw her was two years ago. You ask her some questions with **still**.

Carol — two years ago



- 1 Do you still play the piano..... ?
- 2 Do you.....?
- 3 Are.....?
- 4.....?
- 5.....?
- 6.....?

89.2 Write questions with **yet**.

- 1 It was raining ten minutes ago. Perhaps it has stopped now.
You ask: Has it stopped raining yet.....?
- 2 You are waiting for Ann to arrive. She wasn't here half an hour ago. Perhaps she is here now. You ask:.....Ann.....?
- 3 You are waiting for me to finish reading the newspaper. Perhaps I have finished now.
You ask:.....you.....?
- 4 We are going out together. You are waiting for me to get ready. Perhaps I am ready now. You ask:.....?
- 5 Tom can't decide where to go on holiday. Perhaps he has decided now.
You ask:.....?

89.3 Write three sentences for each situation. Look at the example carefully.

- 1

before		now	
	→		(before) <u>It was raining</u> (still) <u>It is still raining</u> (yet) <u>It hasn't stopped raining yet</u>
- 2

	→		(before) They were..... (still) .....still..... (yet) The bus.....
--	---	--	--
- 3

	→		(before) He was (still) .....a job. (yet) .....yet.
--	---	--	---
- 4

	→		(before) She..... (still) (yet)
--	---	--	---
- 5

	→		(before) They (still) (yet)
--	---	--	---

give lend pass send show

After these verbs (**give**, **lend** etc.) there are two possible structures:

(give) something to somebody

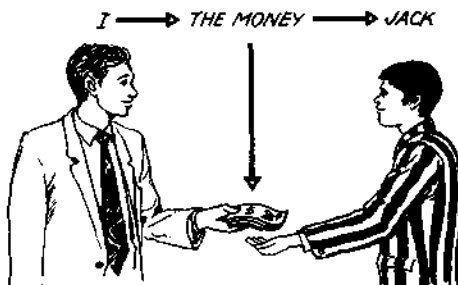
- I gave **the money** to Jack.

or (give) somebody something

- I gave Jack **the money**.

• (give) something to somebody

- That book is mine. **Give it to me!**
- This is your father's key. Can you **give it to him?**
- **I lent my car to a friend of mine.**
- 'Have you seen these photographs?' 'Yes, you **showed them to us.**'



(something) to (somebody)

Can you	give	this key	to your father?
Can you	give	it	to him?
I	lent	my car	to a friend of mine.
You	showed	them	to us.

• (give) somebody something

- Give **me that book!** It's mine. (*not* 'Give to me that book!')
- Tom gave **his mother some flowers.** (*not* 'Tom gave to his mother some flowers.')

(somebody) (something)

Tom	gave	his mother	some flowers.
Don't forget to	send	Jill	a birthday card.
Can you	pass	me	the salt, please?
If you see Jack, can you	give	him	this letter?
How much money did you	lend	them?	

Compare:


- I gave **the book to Pat.**
- but* **I gave Pat the book.** (*not* 'I gave to Pat the book.')

We prefer the first structure (**give something to somebody**) when the *thing* is **it** or **them**:

- **I gave it to her.** (*not usually* 'I gave her it.')
- Give **them to your father.** (*not usually* 'Give your father them.')













UNIT 90 Exercises

90.1 Mark had some things that he didn't want - an armchair, a TV set, some books, some cassettes, a radio and a lamp. He gave these things to different people. Look at the pictures and write a sentence for each thing.

1  → his brother	2  → Jack	3  → his sister	4  → a friend	5  → his cousin	6  → Sarah
--	--	--	--	--	---

- | | |
|--|---------|
| 1 He gave the armchair to his brother..... | 4 |
| 2 He gave | 5 |
| 3 He | 6 |

90.2 You wanted to give presents to your friends. You thought about it and and you decided to give them the things in the pictures. Write a sentence for each person.

1  George 	2  Alice 	3  Mark 	4  Diane 	5  Kevin 	6  Mary 
---	---	--	---	---	---

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------|
| 1 I gave George a tennis-racket..... | 4 |
| 2 I gave Alice | 5 |
| 3 I | 6 |

90.3 Write questions beginning **Can you ... ?** Use the verb in brackets ().

- | | | |
|--------------------------------|--------|---------------------------------|
| 1 (you want the salt) | (pass) | Can you pass me the salt..... ? |
| 2 (you need an umbrella) | (lend) | Can you lend..... ? |
| 3 (you want your coat) | (give) | Can you..... my..... ? |
| 4 (Mary needs a bicycle) | (lend) | Can..... Mary..... ? |
| 5 (Tom wants some information) | (send) | ? |
| 6 (you want to see the letter) | (show) | me..... ? |
| 7 (they need £100) | (lend) | ? |

90.4 Write questions beginning **Can you give ... ?**

1 Do you want the book?	Yes, can you give it to me, please..... ?
2 Do you want this key?	Yes, can you....., please?
3 Do you want these keys?	Yes, can..... ?
4 Do you want this knife?	Yes..... ?
5 Do you want this money?	Yes..... ?
6 Do you want these letters?	Yes..... ?

UNIT 91 at 10.30 on Monday in April

■ **at**



at	8 o'clock 10.30 midnight etc.
-----------	-------------------------------------

- I start work **at 8 o'clock**.
- The shops close **at 5.30 p.m.**

■ **on**



on	Sunday(s)/Monday(s) etc. 25 April / 6 June etc. New Year's Day etc.
-----------	---

- Goodbye! See you **on Friday**.
- I don't work **on Sundays**.
- The concert is **on 22 November**.

■ **in**



in	April/June etc. 1985/1750 etc. (the) summer/spring etc.
-----------	---

- I'm going on holiday **in October**.
- Jill left school **in 1984**.
- The garden is lovely **in spring**.

also

at the weekend
night

- Are you going away **at the weekend**?

Christmas/Easter

- I can't sleep **at night**.
- In Britain children get presents **at Christmas**.
(*but on Christmas Day*)

the end of...

- I'm going on holiday **at the end of October**,

the moment

- Are you busy **at the moment**?

in the morning / in the afternoon / in the evening

- I always feel good **in the morning**.
- Do you often go out **in the evening**?

but

on Monday morning / on Tuesday afternoon / on Friday evening / on Saturday night etc.

- I'm meeting Jill **on Monday morning**.
- Are you doing anything **on Friday evening**?

■ **in five minutes / in a few days / in six weeks / in two years etc.**



now



in five minutes

- Hurry! The train leaves **in five minutes**.
(= it leaves five minutes from now)
- Goodbye. I'll see you **in a few days**.
(= a few days from now)

■ ~~at~~ ~~on~~ ~~in~~ We do *not* use **at/on/in** before:

this ... (this morning / this week etc.)

last... (last August / last week etc.)

every ... (every day / every week etc.)

next... (next Monday / next week etc.)

- They're going on holiday **next Monday**, (*not 'on next Monday'*)
- **Last summer** we went to Scotland, (*not 'In last summer'*)

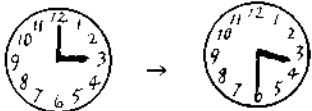
91.1 Write at/on/in.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 <u>on</u> June | 4 12.30 a.m. | 7 24 September | 10 half past two |
| 2 <u>at</u> 8 o'clock | 5 1977 | 8 Friday | 11 Christmas Day |
| 3 Wednesday | 6 September | 9 1984 | 12 winter |
| 13 <u>in</u> the evening | 16 Saturday night | 19 the weekend | |
| 14 the morning | 17 night | 20 Tuesday afternoon | |
| 15 Monday morning | 18 Christmas | 21 the end of my holiday | |

91.2 Write at/on/in.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 Goodbye! See you <u>on</u> Friday. | 12 We often go to the beach summer. |
| 2 Where were you 28 February? | 13 George isn't here the moment. |
| 3 I got up 8 o'clock this morning. | 14 Julia's birthday is January. |
| 4 I like getting up early the morning. | 15 Do you work Saturdays? |
| 5 My sister got married May. | 16 I will send you the money the end of this month. |
| 6 Diane and I first met 1979. | 17 autumn, the leaves fall from the trees. |
| 7 Did you go out Friday? | 18 The company started 1969. |
| 8 Did you go out Friday evening? | 19 I often go away the weekend. |
| 9 Do you often go out the evening? | 20 I like looking at the stars in the sky night. |
| 10 Let's meet 7.30 tomorrow evening. | |
| 11 I'm starting my new job 3 June. | |

91.3 Write sentences with in ...

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 <u>now</u>
17.25 → 17.30 | It's 17.25 now. The train leaves at 17.30.
<u>The train leaves in five minutes.</u> |
| 2 MONDAY → THURSDAY | It's Monday today. I'll phone you on Thursday.
I'll days. |
| 3 14 JUNE → 28 JUNE | It's 14 June today. My exam is on 28 June.
My |
| 4  | It's 3 o'clock now. Tom will be here at 3.30.
Tom |

91.4 Write at/on/in if necessary. (Sometimes there is no preposition.)

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 I'm leaving <u>on</u> Saturday. | 8 Can you play tennis next Sunday? |
| 2 I'm leaving next Saturday. | 9 I'm afraid I can't come to the party Sunday. |
| 3 I always feel tired the evening. | 10 We went to bed late last night. |
| 4 Will you be at home this evening? | 11 I don't like going out alone night. |
| 5 We went to Scotland last summer. | 12 I won't be out very long. I'll be back ten minutes. |
| 6 What do you usually do the weekend? | |
| 7 She phones me every Sunday. | |

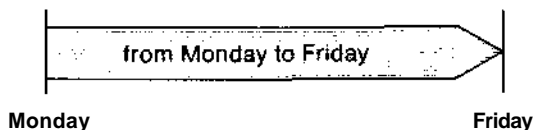
UNIT 92 from... to until since for

• from ... to ...:

- We lived in Canada **from 1977 to 1985**.
- I work **from 9 o'clock to 5.30** every day.

You can also say **from ... until ...**:

- We lived in Canada **from 1977 until 1985**.



• until + the end of a period:

until Friday until 1999 until 10.30 until I come back

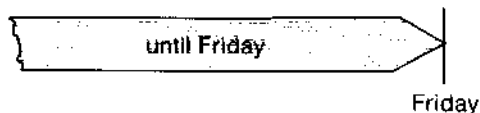
- They're going away tomorrow. They'll be away **until Friday**.
- I went to bed early last night but I wasn't tired. I read a book **until 3 a.m.**
- Wait here **until I come back**.

You can also say **till (= until)**:

- Wait here **till I come back**.

Compare:

- '**How long** will you be away?' '**Until** (or **till**) Monday.'
- '**When** are you coming back?' 'On Monday.'



• since + the beginning of a period (from the past to now):

since Monday since 1958 since 2 o'clock since I arrived

We use **since** after the *present perfect* (**have been / have done** etc.):

- John is in hospital. He **has been** in hospital **since Monday**. (= from Monday to now)
- Mr and Mrs Kelly **have been** married **since 1958**. (= from 1958 to now)
- It **has been** raining **since I got up**.



Compare:

- We lived in Canada **from 1977 to 1985**.
- We lived in Canada **until 1985**.
- Now we live in England. We came to England **in 1985**.
- We have lived in England **since 1985**. (= from 1985 until now)

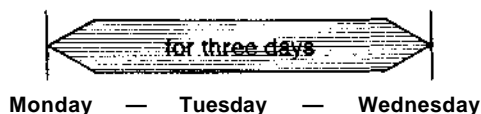
Use **for** (*not since*) + a period of time (**three days / ten years** etc.):

- John has been in hospital **for three days**, (*not 'since three days'*)

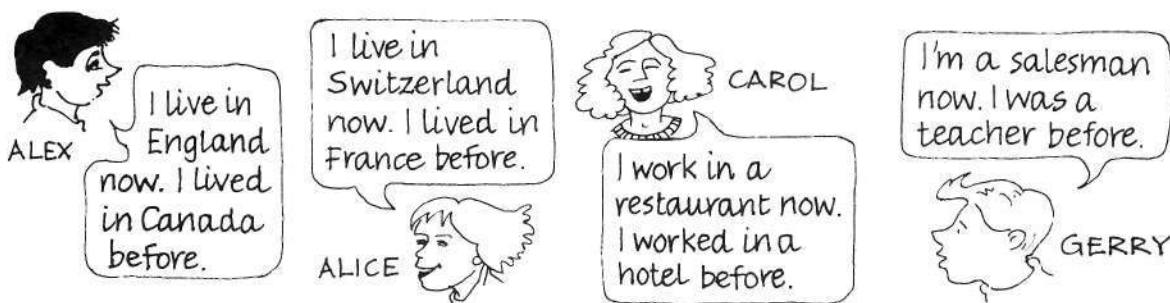
• for + a period of time:

for three days for ten years for ten minutes for a long time

- George stayed with us **for three days**.
- I'm going away **for a few weeks**.
- They've been married **for ten years**.



92.1 Read the information about these people and complete the sentences. Use **from ... to / until / since**.



- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| 1 (Alex / Canada / 1977-85) | Alex lived in Canada from 1977 to 1985. |
| 2 (Alex / Canada / → 1985) | Alex lived in Canada 1985. |
| 3 (Alex / England / 1985 →) | Alex has lived in England 1985. |
| 4 (Alice / France / → 1986) | Alice lived in |
| 5 (Alice / Switzerland / 1986 →) | Alice has lived in |
| 6 (Carol / a hotel / 1985-88) | Carol worked 1985. |
| 7 (Carol / a restaurant / 1988 →) | Carol has worked |
| 8 (Gerry / a teacher / 1978-84) | Gerry was a |
| 9 (Gerry / a salesman / 1984 →) | Gerry has been |

Now write sentences with **for**.

- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 10 (Alex / Canada) | Alex lived in Canada for eight years. |
| 11 (Alex / England) | Alex has lived in England |
| 12 (Alice / Switzerland) | Alice has lived |
| 13 (Carol / a hotel) | Carol worked in |
| 14 (Carol / a restaurant) | Carol has worked |
| 15 (Gerry / a teacher) | Gerry was |
| 16 (Gerry / a salesman) | Gerry has been |

92.2 Put in **until/since/for**.

- Mr and Mrs Kelly have been married since 1958.
- I was tired this morning. I stayed in bed 10 o'clock.
- We waited half an hour, but they didn't come.
- 'How long have you been here?' '..... half past eight.'
- 'How long did you stay at the party last night?' '..... midnight.'
- John and I are good friends. We have known each other ten years.
- I'm tired. I'm going to lie down a few minutes.
- Don't open the door of the train it stops.
- I've lived in this house I was seven years old.
- Jack has gone away. He'll be away next Wednesday.
- Next week I'm going to Paris four days.
- I usually finish work at 5.30, but sometimes I work 6 o'clock.
- 'How long have you known Ann?' '..... we were at school together.'
- Where have you been? I've been waiting for you 20 minutes.

before



before the film

during



during the film

after



after the film

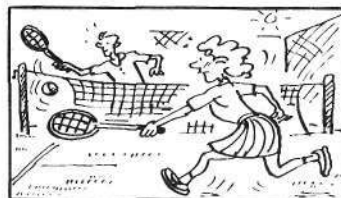
- **Before the examination** everybody was very nervous.
- I went to sleep **during the film**.
- We were tired **after our visit** to the museum.

before



before we played

while



while we were playing

after



after we played

- Don't forget to close the windows **before you go** out.
- I went to sleep **while I was watching** television.
- They went home **after they did** the shopping.

- We use **during + noun** (during the film), **while + verb** (while I was watching):
 - We didn't speak **during the meal**.
 - but* We didn't speak **while we were eating**, (*not* 'during we were eating')

past continuous (I was -ing) • Units 12-13

- You can say **before -ing** and **after -ing**:

before -ing

- I always have breakfast **before going** to work.
(= before I go to work)
- **Before** eating the apple, she washed it very carefully.
(= before she ate the apple)

after -ing

- I started work **after** reading the newspaper.
(= after I read the newspaper)
- **After** doing the shopping, they went home.
(= after they did the shopping)

93.1 Complete the sentences. Use **before/during/after** + the best ending from the box.

before	+	the concert	the-examination-	they went to Australia
during		the course	lunch	you cross the road
after		the end	the night	

- Everybody was nervous. *before the examination.*
- I usually have lunch at 1.30, and I go back to work.
- The film was very boring. We left
- Ann went to evening classes to learn Spanish. She learnt a lot
- My aunt and uncle lived in London.....
- Somebody broke a window.....Did you hear anything?
- A: Are you going home.....?
B: No, we're going to a restaurant.
- Always look both ways.....

93.2 Put in **during** or **while**.

- We didn't s p e *while* we were eating.
- We didn't speak *during* the meal.
- George telephoned.....you were out.
- She wrote a lot of letters.....she was on holiday.
- The students looked very bored.....the lesson.
- I read the newspaper.....I was waiting for Jack.
- I don't eat much.....the day, but I always have a big meal in the evening.
- I fell out of bed.....I was asleep.

93.3 Complete these sentences with **before -ing** ...

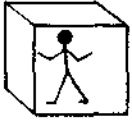
- She washed the apple. Then she ate it.
She washed the apple before eating it or Before eating the apple, she washed it.
- Think carefully. Then answer the question.
Think carefully before
- Mary put on her glasses. Then she read the letter.
Mary put on her glasses
- The man took off his coat. Then he got into the car.
Before.....his coat.

Write sentences with **after -ing** ...

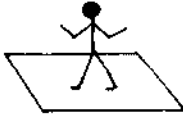
- We walked for three hours. We were very tired.
We were very tired after
- I ate too much chocolate. I felt sick.
I felt
- I read the book a second time. I understood it better.
.....
- John left school. Then he worked in a department store for two years.
.....

UNIT 94 in at {places}

■ in



in a room
in a shop
in a box



in a garden
in a park
in a town



in France
in Rome
in the city centre



in the water
in the sea
in my coffee

- 'Where's Tom?' **'In the kitchen. / In the garden. / In London.'**
- Milan is **in the north of Italy.**
- I like swimming **in the sea.**
- I live **in a town** but I want to live **in the country.**

also

in bed **in hospital / in prison**
in a street **in the sky** **in the world**
in a newspaper / in a magazine / in a book
in a photograph / in a picture
in a car (*but on a bus / on a train / on a plane*)
in the middle (of...)

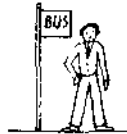
■ at



at the door



at the traffic lights



at the bus-stop

at the top (of the page)



at the bottom

- Why is that man standing **at the door**?
- Turn left **at the traffic lights.**
- There is nobody **at the bus-stop.**
- Please write your name **at the top of the page.**

also

at home / at work / at school **at university**
at the station / at the airport **at the end** (of the street)
at the hairdresser(s) / at the doctor(s) / at the dentist(s) etc.
at Jane's (house) / at my sister's (house)
at a concert / at a conference / at a party / at a football match etc.

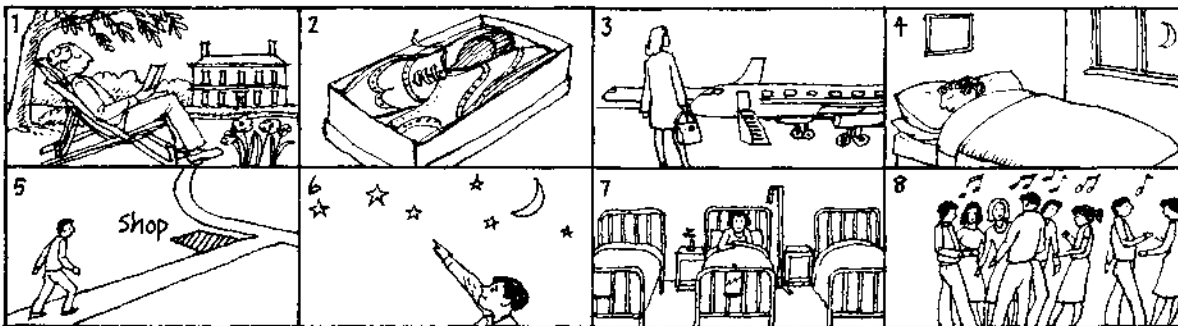
- 'Where's Tom?' **'At work. / At home. / At the doctor's.'**
- Do you want me to meet you **at the airport**?
- There weren't many people **at the party.**
- My house is **at the end of the street.**

- Often **in** or **at** is possible for a building (hotels, restaurants etc.):
- We stayed **at a nice hotel,** or We stayed **in a nice hotel.**

UNIT 94 Exercises

94.1 Complete the sentences for the pictures. Use in or at + one of these:

the airport bed a box the end of the street the-garden- hospital
a party the sky



- | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 He's <u>in the garden</u> . | 5 The shop is |
| 2 The shoes are | 6 The stars are |
| 3 She's | 7 She's |
| 4 He's | 8 They're |

94.2 Complete the sentences. Use in + one of these:

this book that field the kitchen this photograph the river my tea

- Pat is in the kitchen. She's cooking the dinner.
- Look at those beautiful horses
- Don't swim.....The water is very dirty.
- There's too much sugar.....I can't drink it.
- How many pages are there.....?
- Who is the man.....? Do you know him?

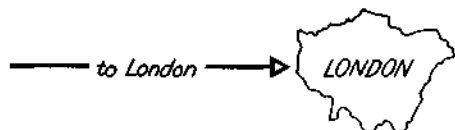
94.3 Write in or at.

- 'Where's Tina?' 'She's at work.'
- Why didn't the bus-driver stop.....the bus-stop?
- Go straight on.....the roundabout and turn right.....the church.
- There was a big table.....the middle of the room.
- What is the longest river.....the world?
- Were there many people.....the concert on Friday?
- My brother is studying mathematics.....London University.
- 'Where does your sister live?' '.....Brussels.'
- Did you read about the accident.....the newspaper?
- Will you be.....home tomorrow afternoon?
- Munich is a large city.....the south of Germany.
- 'Do you work?' 'No, I'm still.....school.'
- George is coming by train. I'm going to meet him.....the station.
- Charlie is.....hospital. He's going to have an operation tomorrow.
- There was a list of names on the notice-board. My name was.....the bottom of the list.
- I usually do my shopping.....the city centre.

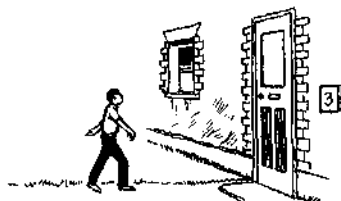
UNIT 95 to in at (places)

• to

go/come/return/walk etc. to ...



- We're **going to London** next week.
- I want to **go to Italy**.
- **We walked** from my house **to the city centre**.
- What time do you **go to bed**?



- He is **walking to the door**.
- I **went to the airport** by car.
- **Tom didn't go to work** yesterday.
- I'm **going to a party** tonight.
- Do you want to **go to university**?
- You must **come to our house**.

go/come/walk etc. ~~to~~ home

- I'm tired. I'm **going home**.
(not 'to home')
- Did you **walk home**?

• in/at (• Unit 94)

be / stay / do something etc. in ...



- Piccadilly Circus **is in London**.
- My brother **lives in Italy**.
- The best shops **are in the city centre**.
- I like **reading in bed**.

be / stay / do something etc. at ...



- He is **standing at the door**.
- I **met Ann at the airport**.
- Ann **wasn't at work** yesterday.
- I **met** a lot of people **at the party**.
- My sister **is at university**.
- Ann **is at her sister's house**.

be/stay/do something etc. at home

- I'm not going out this evening.
I'm staying at home.
- 'Where's Ann?' **'At home.'**

• arrive in ... and arrive at ...

arrive in a country or town (arrive in Italy / arrive in Paris etc.):

- They **arrived in England** last week. (not 'arrived to England')

arrive at other places (arrive at the station / arrive at work etc.):

- What time did they **arrive at the hotel**? (not 'arrive to the hotel')

arrive home (no preposition):

- I was tired when I **arrived home**.

getto (= arrive) • Unit 51

95.1 Complete these sentences. Use to + one of these:

the bank bed the cinema a concert France hospital ~~work~~

- 1 Joy was ill yesterday, so she didn't go to work.
- 2 It's late and I'm tired. I think I'll go
- 3 We must go.....today. We haven't got any money.
- 4 'Are you going out this evening?' 'Yes, I'm going.....'
- 5 I'd like to go.....I've never been there before.
- 6 We don't go.....very often but we watch a lot of films on TV.
- 7 After the accident three people were taken.....

95.2 Write to or in.

- 1 'Where's Jack?' '.....In bed.'
- 2 I'm going.....the shop to buy some milk.
- 3 Tom went.....the kitchen to make some coffee.
- 4 'Where's Tom?' 'He's.....the kitchen making some coffee.'
- 5 Would you like to go.....the theatre this evening?
- 6 I got a postcard from Sue this morning. She's on holiday.....Switzerland.
- 7 John lives.....a small village.....the south-west of England.
- 8 What time do you usually go.....bed?
- 9 Kevin's sister is very ill. She's.....hospital.
- 10 Excuse me, I must go.....the toilet.
- 11 The train left Brussels at 7 o'clock and arrived.....Paris at 9.30.
- 12 I was tired this morning. I stayed.....bed until 10 o'clock.
- 13 Next year we hope to go.....Canada to visit some friends.
- 14 Would you like to live.....another country?

95.3 Write to or at if necessary. (Sometimes there is no preposition.)

- 1 Joy didn't go to work yesterday.
- 2 Ann is ill. She has gone.....the doctor.
- 3 Are you going.....the party on Saturday evening?
- 4 I talked to some nice people.....the party.
- 5 'Where were you this morning?' 'I was.....work.'
- 6 'Do you usually walk.....work?' 'No, I go by bicycle.'
- 7 We had a good meal.....a restaurant and then we went back.....the hotel.
- 8 What time are you going.....home?
- 9 Will you be.....home this afternoon?
- 10 I went.....Mary's house but she wasn't.....home.
- 11 There were no taxis, so we walked.....home.
- 12 How often do you go.....the dentist?
- 13 What time do you usually arrive.....work in the morning?
- 14 It was very late when we arrived.....home.
- 15 The boy jumped into the river and swam.....the other side.
- 16 Would you like to study.....university?
- 17 There were 20,000 people.....the football match.
- 18 'Are your children here?' 'No, they're.....school.'

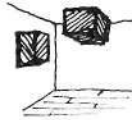
UNIT 96

on under behind etc. {prepositions}

■ on



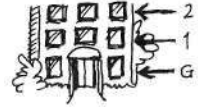
on a table
on a plate
on the floor etc.



on a wall
on a door
on the ceiling etc.



on a bus
on a train
on a plane

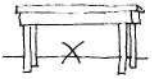


on the ground floor
on the first floor etc.

- There are some books **on the shelf** and some pictures **on the wall**.
- I met Alice **on the bus**.
- The office is **on the first floor**, (not 'in the first floor')
- There are a lot of apples **on the tree**.

also **on** a horse / **on** a bicycle / **on** a motor-bike

• under



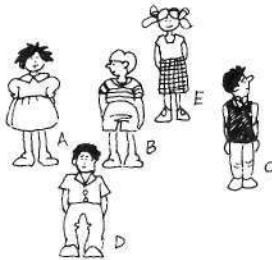
under the table



under a tree

- The cat is **under** the table.
- The girl is standing **under** a tree.
- I'm wearing a jacket **under** my coat.

• next to (or beside) / between / in front of/ behind



A is **next to B**. or A is **beside B**.
B is **between A and C**.
D is **in front of B**.
E is **behind B**.

also

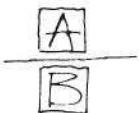
A is **on the left**.
C is **on the right**.
B is **in the middle** (of the group).

• opposite



The supermarket is **opposite** the cinema.

• above and below



A is **above** the line.
B is **below** the line.



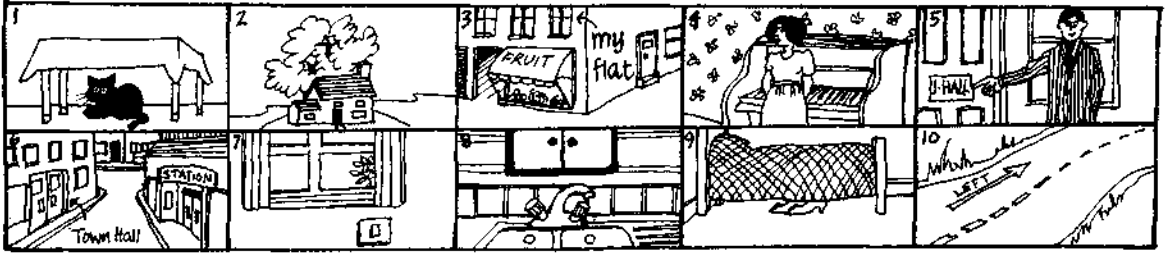
The pictures are **above** the shelves.
The shelves are **below** the pictures.

96.1 Complete the sentences. Use **on** + one of these:

the beach a bicycle his finger this plant the door the wall

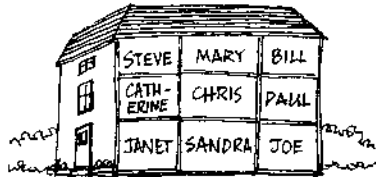
- The pictures on the wall look very nice.
- When the weather is nice in summer, I like lying.....
- The leaves.....are a beautiful colour.
- Our house is number 45 - the number is.....
- He was wearing a silver ring.....
- It's difficult to carry a lot of things.....

96.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with a preposition (**on/under** etc.).



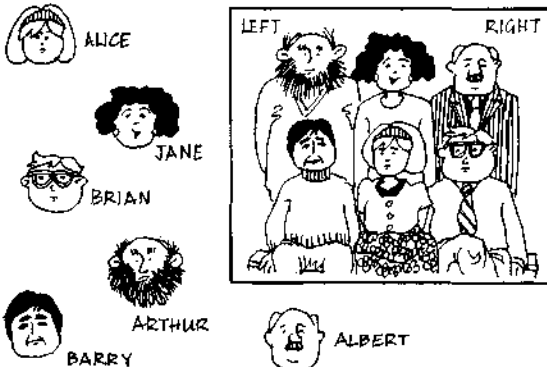
- The cat is under the table.
- There is a tree.....the house.
- My flat is.....a shop.
- She is standing.....the piano.
- His name is.....the door.
- The town hall is.....the station.
- The switch is.....the window.
- The cupboard is.....the sink.
- There are some shoes.....the bed.
- In Britain, we drive.....the left.

96.3 Nine people live in a block of flats. Use the picture and complete the sentences with **on** / **next to** / **between** / **above** / **below**.



- Chris lives between Catherine and Paul.
- Joe lives.....the ground floor.
- Mary lives.....Steve and Bill.
- Paul lives.....the first floor.....Chris.
- Catherine lives.....Janet.
- Chris lives.....Sandra and.....Mary.

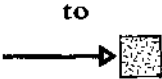
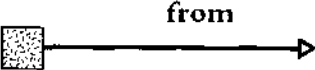
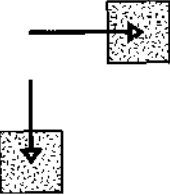
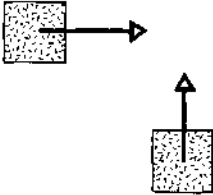
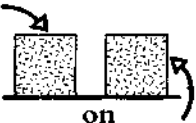
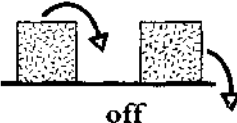
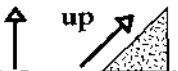

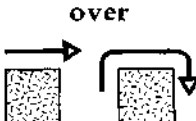



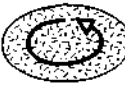

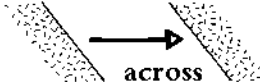

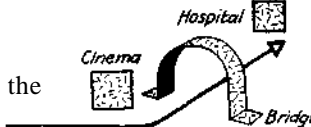
96.4 Where are the people in the big picture?



- Arthur is standing on the left.
- Brian is sitting
- Alice is sitting
- Arthur is standing.....Barry.
- Brian is sitting.....Albert.
- Albert is standing.....Jane.

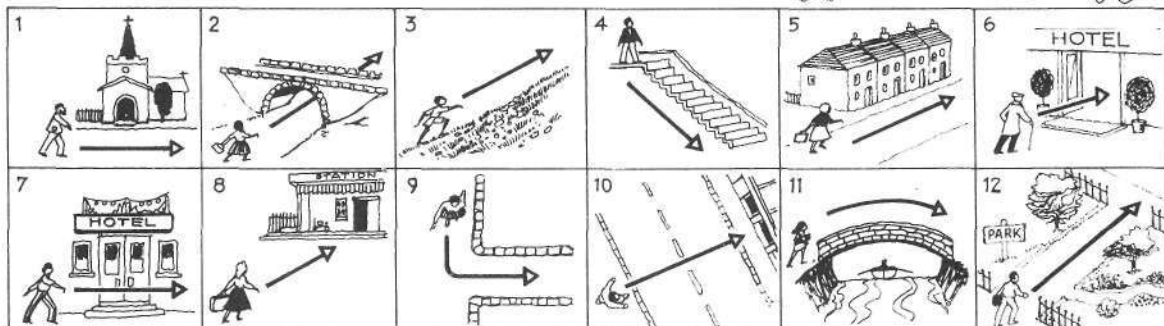
UNIT 97

up over through etc. (prepositions)

 <p>to</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Jill is going to France for a holiday. - We walked from the hotel to the station. - A lot of English words come from Latin. 	 <p>from</p>
 <p>into (in)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - I opened the door and walked into the room. - We jumped off the bridge into the water. - A man came out of the house and got into a car. - Why are you looking out of the window? <p>We usually say "put something in ... (not into):"</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - I put the money in my pocket. <p>Compare put ... in and take ... out of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - I put the new batteries in the radio. - I took the old batteries out of the radio. 	 <p>out of</p>
 <p>on</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Don't put your feet on the table. - Please take your feet off the table. - I'm going to hang some pictures on the wall. - Be careful! Don't fall off your bicycle. 	 <p>off</p>
 <p>up</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - We walked up the hill to the house. - Be careful! Don't fall down the stairs. 	 <p>down</p>
 <p>over</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The plane flew over the mountains. - I jumped over the wall into the garden. - Some people say it is unlucky to walk under a ladder. 	 <p>under</p>
 <p>through</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - A bird flew into the room through a window. - The old road goes through the village. - The new road goes round the village. - The bus-stop is just round the corner. - We walked round the town and took some photographs. <p>You can also use around (= round):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - We walked around the town. 	 <p>round</p>  <p>round the town</p>
 <p>along</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - I was walking along the road with my dog. - Let's go for a walk along the river. - The dog swam across the river. 	 <p>across</p>
 <p>past</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - They walked past me. They didn't speak. - A: Excuse me, where is the hospital? - B: Go along this road, past the cinema, under the bridge and the hospital is on the left. 	

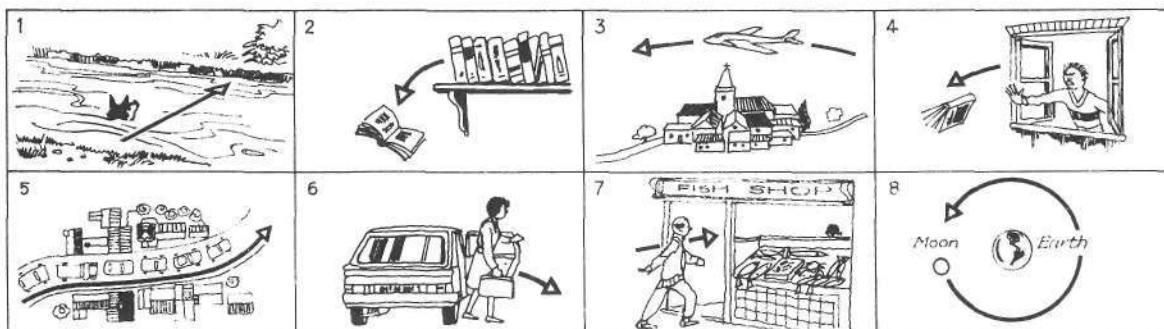
UNIT 97 Exercises

97.1 Somebody asks you the way to a place and you tell him/her which way to go. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences (Go...).



- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------|----------|
| 1 Go <u>past the church</u> | 5 Go.....the street. | 9 |
| 2 Go.....the bridge. | 6 Go | 10..... |
| 3 Go.....the hill. | 7..... | 11 |
| 4 Go.....the stairs. | 8..... | 12 |

97.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with a preposition (**up/over** etc.).



- | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1 The dog swam <u>across</u> the river. | 5 They drove.....the village. |
| 2 The book fell.....a shelf. | 6 A woman got.....a car. |
| 3 The plane flew.....the village. | 7 A man walked.....the shop. |
| 4 He threw the book.....the window. | 8 The Moon travels.....the Earth. |

97.3 Put in a preposition (**up/off/through** etc.).

- We jumped off..... the bridge into..... the water.
- Do you know how to put a..... film.....this camera?
- You can put your coat.....the back of the chair.
- She took a key.....her bag and opened the door.
- We didn't have a key, so we climbed.....a window.....the house.
- I looked.....the window and watched the people in the street.
- We walked.....the museum and saw a lot of interesting things.
- In tennis, you have to hit the ball.....the net.
- Don't forget to put a stamp.....the postcard before you post it.

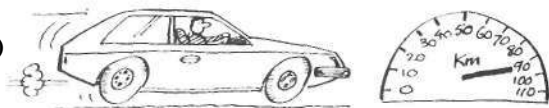
UNIT 98

at by with/without about [prepositions]

• at

at (the age of) 20 / at 90 kilometres an hour / at 100 degrees

- Sarah left school **at 16.** (or ... **at the age of 16.**)
- He was driving **at 90 kilometres an hour.**
(or He was **doing 90 kilometres an hour.**)
- Water boils **at 100 degrees Celsius.**



• by

by = next to / beside (• Unit 96):

- Our house is by **the sea.** (= next to the sea)
- John is standing **by the window.**



by car / by bus / by plane (or by air) / by bike etc.

- Do you like travelling **by train?**
- Jane usually goes to work **by bike.**

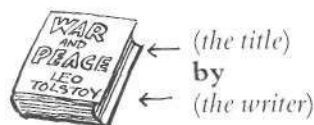


but on foot:

- She goes to work **on foot.** (= She **walks** to work.)

a book by ... / a painting by ... / a piece of music by ... etc.:

- Have you read any books **by George Orwell?**
- **Who** is that painting by? Picasso?



by after the passive (• Unit 20):

- I was bitten **by a dog.**

• with/without

- Did you stay at a hotel or **with friends?**
- Wait for me. Please don't go **without me.**
- Do you like your coffee **with or without milk?**



do something with something (= use something to do something):

- I cut the paper **with a pair of scissors.**
- She can't read **without glasses.** (= She needs glasses to read.)

a man with a beard / a woman with glasses / a house with a garden etc.

- Who is **that man with the beard?**
- I'd like to have **a house with a garden.**



• about

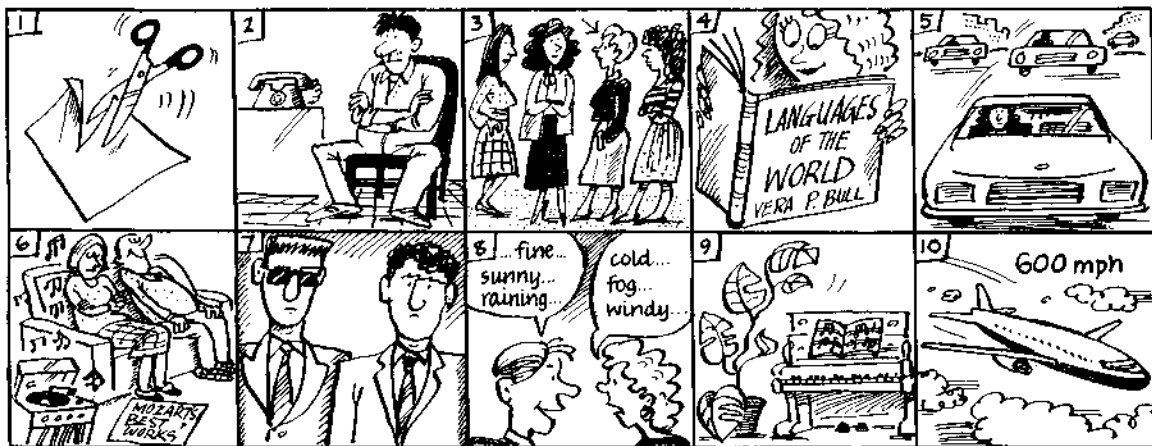
talk/speak/think/hear/know about... etc.

- Some people **talk about their work** all the time.
- I don't **know much about cars.**

a book / a question / a programme about... etc.

- Did you see **the programme about computers** on TV last night?

98.1 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with a preposition (**at/by** etc.).



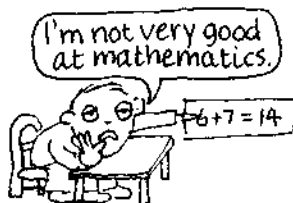
- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 I cut the paper <u>with</u> a pair of scissors. | 6 They are listening to some music Mozart. |
| 2 He's sitting the telephone. | 7 Who is the man the sunglasses? |
| 3 Who is the woman short hair? | 8 They're talking the weather. |
| 4 She's reading a book
languages Vera P. Bull. | 9 The plant is the piano. |
| 5 Sara usually goes to work car. | 10 The plane is flying 600 miles an hour. |

98.2 Complete the sentences with a preposition (**at/by/with** etc.).

- Some people talk about their work all the time.
- 'How did you get here?' bus?' 'No, foot.'
- In Britain, children normally start school the age of five.
- It's not easy to live money.
- In tennis, you hit the ball a racket.
- Hamlet*, *Othello* and *Macbeth* are plays William Shakespeare.
- 'Do you know much economics?' 'Yes, I studied it at university.'
- How long does it take from New York to Los Angeles plane?
- 'Which is your house?' 'The one the red door.'
- These trains are very fast - they can travel very high speeds.
- Did Val tell you her new job in a bookshop?
- A: Have you heard the new record Calvin Swoon?
B: Yes, it's great. I like his songs very much.
- My grandmother died the age of 98.
- Yesterday evening I went to a restaurant some friends of mine.
- The door is locked. You can't get into the room a key.
- Two men were arrested the police and taken to the police station.
- Can you give me some information hotels in this town?
- I like stories happy endings.
- She doesn't use her car very often - she goes everywhere bicycle.
- Would you like something to drink your meal?
- Water freezes 0 degrees Celsius.
- In Britain it's expensive to travel train.

UNIT 99

afraid of on holiday etc. (word + preposition)



- These words and prepositions (**at/in/of** etc.) usually go together:

afraid of...

Are you **afraid of** dogs?

good at... / bad at...

Are you **good at** mathematics?
She's very **bad at** writing letters.

interested in ...

George isn't **interested in** sport.

different from ...

Ann is very **different from** her sister.

sorry about (something)

Sorry about the noise last night. We had a party.

sorry for (doing something)

I'm **sorry for** shouting at you. (*or I'm sorry I shouted . . .*)

married to ...

She's **married to** an Italian. (= Her husband is Italian.)

fed up with ...

I'm fed up with my job. I want to do something different.
(= I've had enough of my job - I want to change.)

nice/kind of somebody to do something

It was very **kind of** you to help us. Thank you very much.

(be) **nice / kind to** somebody

They were very **nice to** us. They helped us a lot.

- on ...** Learn these expressions:

on holiday

Jane isn't at work. She's **on holiday**,

on television

We watched the news **on television**,

on the radio

We listened to the news **on the radio**,

on the (tele)phone

I spoke to Jack **on the phone** last night.

on fire

The house is **on fire**! Call the fire brigade,

on time (= not late)

'Was the train late?' 'No, it was **on time**.'

- After a preposition, a verb ends in **-ing** (**at** doing / **of** buying / **for** being etc.):

Are you good **at** repairing things?

I'm fed up **with** **doing** the same thing every day.

She went away **without** saying goodbye. (= she didn't say goodbye)

I'm thinking **of** buying a new car.

I'm sorry **for** being late.

99.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with a preposition (**at/of** etc.).



- 1 He's afraid**of**..... dogs.
- 2 She's interested.....science.
- 3 She's married.....a footballer.
- 4 'Can I help you?' 'Oh, thank you. That's very nice.....you.'
- 5 The car is.....fire.
- 6 I'm fed up.....the weather.

99.2 Put in the right preposition (**of/on/with** etc.).

- 1 Sarah isn't interested**in**..... sport.
- 2 'Why don't you like him?' 'Because I'm afraid him.'
- 3 I like her very much. She's always very kind.....me.
- 4 We didn't go to the football match, but we watched it.....television.
- 5 He's very good.....languages. He speaks English, French, Italian and Arabic.
- 6 'Did you sec Tom yesterday?' 'No, but I spoke to him.....the phone.'
- 7 I'm sorry.....your broken window. It was an accident.
- 8 She's usually late, but I think she'll be.....time this evening.
- 9 A lot of people are afraid.....spiders.
- 10 Did you have a nice time when you were.....holiday?
- 11 It was very kind.....Judy to lend me the money.
- 12 'Do you want to watch this programme?' 'No, I'm not interested.....it.'
- 13 Life today is very different.....life 50 years ago.
- 14 I'm sorry.....not phoning you last night. I completely forgot.

99.3 Complete the sentences. Use a preposition + the verb in brackets ().

- 1 Are you good**at repairing**.....things? (repair)
- 2 He's not very good.....names, (remember)
- 3 We wanted to go to the cinema but John wasn't interested.....(go)
- 4 I want some new clothes. I'm fed up.....the same clothes every day. (wear)
- 5 I'm sorry.....angry with you yesterday, (get)

In these sentences, use **without -ing**.

- 6 She went away**without saying**.....goodbye, (say)
- 7 We ran ten kilometres.....(stop)
- 8 They walked past me in the street.....(speak)
- 9 Why did you take my camera.....me first? (ask)

UNIT 100

look at... listen to... etc. (verb + preposition)

These verbs and prepositions (**to/of/at** etc.) usually go together:

- listen to ...** - **Listen to** this music. It's beautiful.
- talk/speak to** somebody (**about** something)
- Did you **talk to** Jack **about** your problem?
 - (*on the phone*) Can I **speak to** Kay, please?
- write** (a letter) **to** somebody
- I never get letters. Nobody **writes to** me.
- but (tele)phone** somebody (*not* phone to . . .):
- Can you **phone me** tomorrow? (*not* 'phone to me')
- belong to ...** - Does this book **belong to** you? (= Is this your book?)
- happen to ...** - I put my pen on the table five minutes ago and now it isn't there. What's **happened to** it?
- wait for ...** - Don't go yet. **Wait for** me.
- thank** somebody **for ...** - **Thank you** very much **for** your help.
- ask** (somebody) **for ...** (= ask somebody to give you . . .)
- A man stopped me and **asked me for** money.
- think about/of...**
- He never **thinks about** (*or of*) other people.
 - I'm **thinking of** (*or about*) buying a new car.
- depend on ...**
- A: Do you like eating in restaurants?
 - B: Sometimes, yes. It **depends on** the restaurant.
- You can say **it depends what/where/how** (etc.) *with or without on*:
- A: Do you want to come out with us?
 - B: **It depends (on) where** you're going.

look at__



- She's **looking at** her watch.
- **Look at** those flowers. They're beautiful.
- Why are you **looking at** me like that?

look for . . . (= try to find)

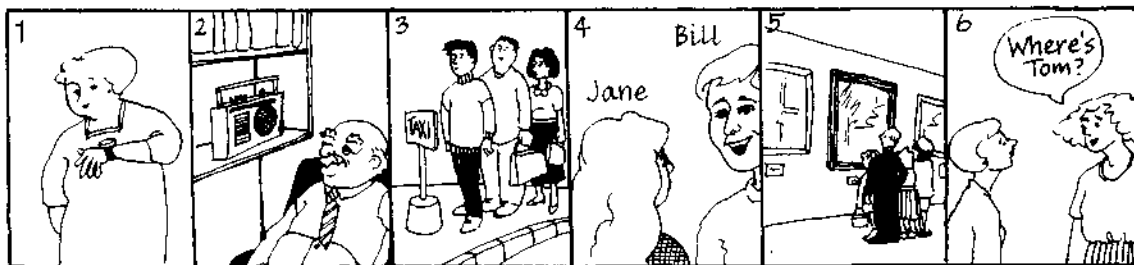


- He's lost his key. He's **looking for** it.
- I'm **looking for** Ann. Have you seen her?

look after ... (= take care of, keep safe)

- Mary goes to work every day but she has a young child. When she is at work, a friend of hers **looks after** her child.
- Don't lose this book. **Look after** it. (= Keep it safe.)

100.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with a preposition (**to/for** etc.).



- 1 She's looking at her watch.
- 2 He's listening to the radio.
- 3 They're waiting for a taxi.
- 4 Bill is talking to Jane.
- 5 They're looking at the picture.
- 6 She's looking for Tom.

100.2 Complete the sentences with a preposition (**to/for/about** etc.) if necessary.

- 1 Thank you very much for your help.
- 2 This is not my bicycle. It belongs to a friend of mine.
- 3 (*on the telephone*) Hello, can I speak to Mr Davis, please?
- 4 (*OH the telephone*) Thank you for phoning. Goodbye!
- 5 What happened to Mary last night? Why didn't she come to the party?
- 6 Jack's brother is thinking of going to Australia next year.
- 7 We asked the waiter for coffee but he brought us tea.
- 8 'Do you like going to museums?' 'It depends on the museum.'
- 9 Please listen to me. I have something very important to tell you.
- 10 We waited for John until 2 o'clock but he didn't come.
- 11 'Are you writing a letter?' 'Yes, I'm writing to Julia.'
- 12 Don't forget to telephone to your mother this evening.
- 13 He's alone all day. He never talks to anybody.
- 14 'Are you playing tennis this afternoon?' 'It depends on the weather.'
- 15 Katherine is thinking of changing her job.
- 16 I looked at the newspaper but I didn't read it carefully.
- 17 When you are ill, you need somebody to look after you.
- 18 Excuse me, I'm looking for Hill Street. Can you tell me where it is?
- 19 Goodbye! Have a nice holiday and look after yourself.
- 20 When I take the photograph, look at the camera and smile.
- 21 Barry is looking for a job. He wants to work in a hotel.

100.3 Complete the sentences. Use **It depends** ... + one of these:

what time I leave -where-you're-going- how much it is how I feel



- 1 Do you want to come out with us?
- 2 Are you going out this evening?
- 3 What time will you arrive?
- 4 Are you going to buy the book?



It depends where you're going.
 It depends
 It

UNIT 101

go in fall off run away etc.

{phrasal verbs 1}

A *phrasal verb* is a verb (go/look/be etc.) + in/out/on etc.

• Appendix 5 for other *phrasal verbs*

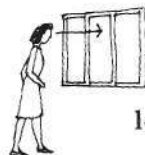
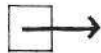
... in



go in

- I waited outside the house. I didn't **go in**. (= **into the house**)
- He opened the door and **walked in**.

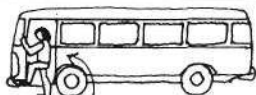
... out



look out

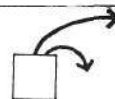
- The car stopped and a woman **got out**. (= **got out of the car**)
- I went to the window and **looked out**.

... on



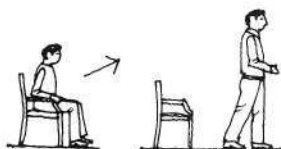
- The bus arrived and I **got on**.

... off



- Be careful! Don't **fall off**.

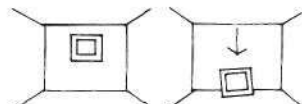
... up



stand up

- He **stood up** and left the room.
- Prices usually **go up**.
- I **looked up** at the stars.

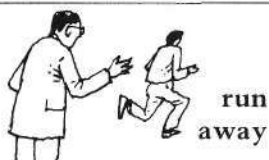
... down



fall down

- Would you like to **sit down**?
- The picture **fell down**.
- **Lie down** on the floor.

... away or ... off

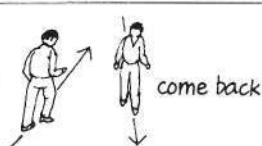


- The thief ran out of the shop and **ran away**, (or ... **ran off**.)
- The woman got into the car and **drove away**, (or... **drove off**)

go away = go to another place:

- Ann has **gone away**. She's **coming back** next week.

... back



- After dinner at a restaurant, we **went back** to our hotel.
- **Go away** and don't **come back**!

... over



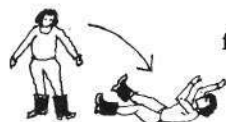
- The wall wasn't high, so we **climbed over**.
- When you come to the end of a page, **turn over**.
- I **fell over** because my shoes were too big for me.

... round



look round

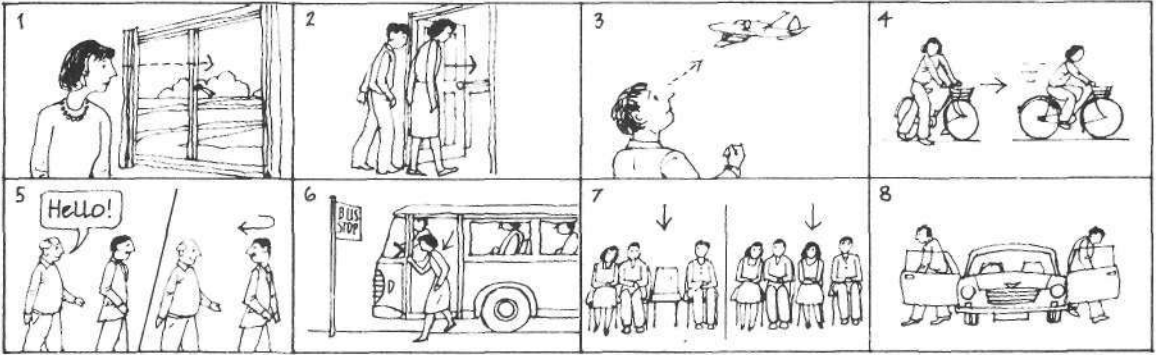
- Somebody shouted, so I **looked round**.
- We went for a long walk. After four miles we **turned round** and **went back**.



fall over

UNIT 101 Exercises

101.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with **in/out/up** etc.



- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 I went to the window and looked <u>out</u> . | 5 I said hello and he turned |
| 2 The door was open, so we went..... | 6 The bus stopped and she got |
| 3 He heard a plane, so he looked | 7 There was a free seat, so I sat |
| 4 She got on her bike and rode | 8 A car stopped and two men got |

101.2 Complete the sentences. Use **out/away/back** etc.

- 'Why is that picture on the floor?' 'It fell down.'
- Please don't go.....! Stay here with me.
- She heard a noise behind her, so she looked.....
- I'm going.....now to do some shopping. I'll be.....at 5 o'clock.
- I'm tired. I'm going to lie.....on the sofa.
- Ann is going on holiday next month. She's going.....on 5th and coming.....on 24th.
- When babies try to walk, they often fall.....
- Jim is from Canada. He lived in Europe for ten years, but last year he went.....to Canada.

101.3 Complete the sentences. Use one of the verbs in the box + **on/up/off** etc. (These verbs are all in Appendix 5.)

breaks	carried	gave	got	hold	+	up	down
<u>hurry</u>	slowed	speak	takes	wash			
						on	off

- Hurry up.....! We haven't got much time.
- I was very tired this morning. I.....very late.
- This car isn't very good. It.....a lot.
- It's difficult to hear you. Can you....., please?
- 'It's time to go.' '.....a minute. I'm not ready yet.'
- That was a lovely meal. Now we must.....
- The train.....and finally stopped.
- I like flying but I'm always nervous when the plane.....
- I told him to stop but he.....Perhaps he didn't hear me.
- I tried to find a job but I.....It was impossible.

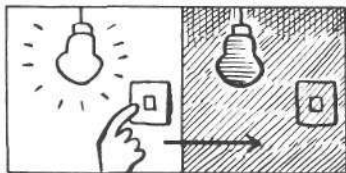
UNIT 102

put on your shoes put your shoes on [phrasal verbs 2]

Sometimes a phrasal verb (**turn off/ put on** etc.) has an *object*. For example:

verb object

turn off the light



You can say:

turn off the light
or **turn** the light **off**

verb object

put on your shoes



put on your shoes
or **put** your shoes **on**

verb object

ring UP my friend
(**ring up** = telephone)



ring up my friend
or **ring** my friend **up**

but **it/them/me/us/you/him/her** {pronouns} always go *before* **off/on/up** etc.:

turn it off

(not 'turn off it')

put them on

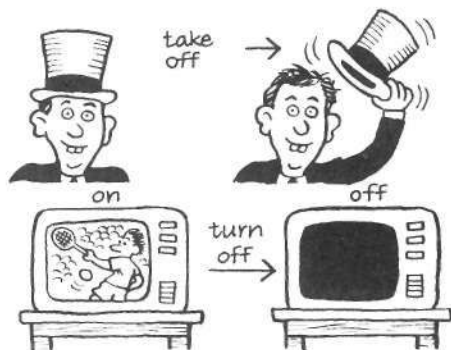
(not 'put on them')

ring her up

(not 'ring up her')

put on / take off

- It was cold, so **I put my coat on**.
(or ... **I put on my coat**.)
- Here's your coat. **Put it on**.
- **Take off that hat!** It looks stupid.
(or **Take that hat off!**)

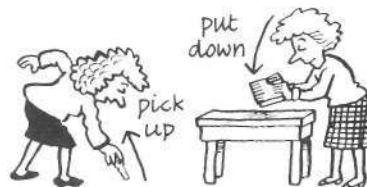


turn on / turn off

- It was dark, so **I turned on the light**.
(or ... **I turned the light on**.)
- I don't want to watch this programme.
You can **turn it off**.

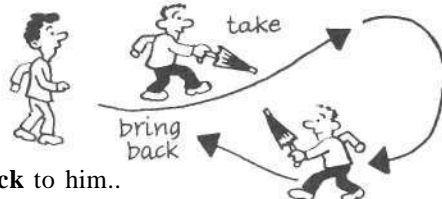
pick up / put down

- That's my key on the floor. Can you **pick it up** for me, please?
- She stopped reading and **put her book down**, (or ... **put down her book**.)



bring back / take back / give back / put back

- You can take my umbrella but please **bring it back**.
- **I took my new pullover back** to the shop. It was too small for me.
- John gave me his keys but **I gave them back** to him..
- I read the letter and then **put it back** in the envelope.



UNIT 102 Exercises

102.1 You can write the same sentence in three different ways. Complete the table.

1	I turned off the light.	I <u>turned the light off</u> .	I <u>turned it off</u> .
2	He put on his shirt.	He	He
3	She put on her glasses.	She .....	..... them
4	Can you.....?	Can you tur the TV on?'	Can.....?
5	She rang up her brother.	She.....	.....
6	.....	We took r(Ur shoes off.	.....
7	They gave back the money.	.....	.....
8	She put down her bass.	.....	.....
9	.....	I switched the engine on.	.....
10	.....	She filled (he form in.	.....
11	We put out the fire.	.....	.....

102.2 Complete the sentences. Use one of the objects in the box + **on/off/up** etc.

object

my book	my gloves	my jacket	it	them
the light	the radio	the photograph	it	them

+ **on** **off** **back**
 up **down**

- Don't forget to turn the light off before you go to bed.
- That hat looks stupid! Take it off.
- I wanted to hear the news, so I turned
- Thanks for lending me your cassettes. I'll give.....to you tomorrow.
- I was reading when the phone rang. So I put.....^{an}d went to answer it.
- There was some money on the floor, so I picked
- My hands were cold, so I put.....
- It was warm, so I took
- She borrowed my keys and she hasn't brought.....yet.
- I picked....., looked at it, and put.....on the table.

The verbs in 11-20 are in Appendix 6.

object

your cigarette	a glass	it	it
some shoes	me	us	them it it

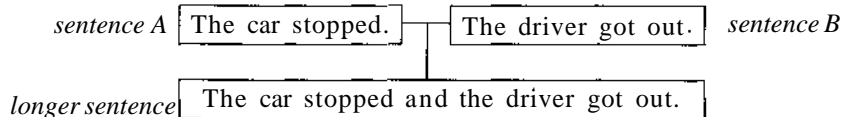
+ **on** **out** **back** **away**
 up **down** **over** **round**

- I knocked and broke it.
- If you don't understand the word, look.....in a dictionary.
- I want those magazines. Don't throw
- He hit me so hard, he knocked
- Please put.....You're not allowed to smoke here.
- That music is very loud. Can you turn.....a little.'
- I tried.....in the shop but they were too big.
- We visited the school. One of the teachers showed
- I wrote the wrong name on the form, so I crossed
- 'Do you smoke?' 'No, I gave.....two years ago.'

UNIT 103 and but or so because

and but or so because

We use these words (*conjunctions*) to put two sentences together. They make one longer sentence from two shorter sentences:



• and/but/or ...

sentence A **and/but/or** sentence B

We stayed at home	and	(we)* watched television.
My sister is married	and	(she)* lives in London.
He doesn't like her	and	she doesn't like him.
I bought a newspaper	but	I didn't read it.
It's a nice house	but	it hasn't got a garden.
Do you want to play tennis	or	are you too tired?

* The subjects in sentences A and B are the same. It is not necessary to say 'we' and 'she' after 'and' in sentence B.

• so ... (*the result of something*):

sentence A **so** sentence B

It was too hot,	so	I opened the window.
The water wasn't clean,	so	we didn't go swimming.
They like films,	so	they often go to the cinema.

• because ... (*the reason for something*):

sentence A **because** sentence B

I opened the window	because	it was too hot.
We didn't go swimming	because	the water wasn't clean.
She's hungry	because	she didn't have breakfast.

Because + sentence B is also possible at the beginning:

- **Because the water wasn't clean,** we didn't go swimming.

• You can use *more than one* conjunction to make a longer sentence:

- It was late **and** I was tired, **so** I went to bed.
- I always enjoy visiting London, **but** I wouldn't like to live there **because** it's too big.

103.1 Make longer sentences. Use **and/but/or** + the sentences in the box.

He didn't see me.	Did you stay at home?	They don't use it very often.
Don't come back!	-We watched television-	I can't remember his name.
She looked out.	-I didn't read it-	She swam to the other side.
Do you want to get a taxi?		They took some photographs.

- 1 We stayed at home... *and watched television.*
- 2 I bought a newspaper... *but I didn't read it.*
- 3 She went to the window.....
- 4 I saw Jack
- 5 The girl jumped into the river
- 6 Did you go out last night.....?
- 7 They walked round the town.....
- 8 They've got a car
- 9 I can remember his face.....
- 10 Go away
- 11 Shall we walk to the hotel.....?

103.2 Make longer sentences. Use **so/because** + the sentences in the box.

She was ill.	We didn't play tennis.	It was very hot in the room.
Don't phone me.	We didn't go swimming.	She's friendly and interesting.
I walked in.	They haven't got a key.	I couldn't sleep.
We walked home.	She does the same thing all the time.	

- 1 I opened the window... *because it was very hot in the room.*
- 2 The water wasn't very clean, *so we didn't go swimming.*
- 3 The door was open
- 4 Ann didn't go to work
- 5 I like Carol
- 6 It was raining
- 7 There were no buses
- 8 I got up in the middle of the night.....
- 9 I won't be at home this evening.....
- 10 They can't get into the house.....
- 11 She doesn't like her job.....

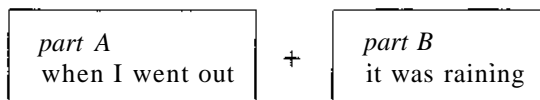
103.3 Write sentences about what *you* did yesterday.

- 1 (and) *In the evening, I stayed at home and studied.*
- 2 (because) *I went to bed very early because I was tired.*
- 3 (and)
- 4 (but)
- 5 (so)
- 6 (because)

UNIT 104 When...

- **When I went out, it was raining.**

This sentence has two parts:



You can begin with part A *or* part B:

- { **When I went out**, it was raining.
- { **It was raining** when I went out.

We write a comma (,) if part A (**When ...**) is before part B:

- { **When you're tired**, don't drive.
- { Don't drive **when you're tired**.
- { Ann was very happy **when she passed the examination**.
- { **When Ann passed the examination**, she was very happy.

We do the same in sentences with **before/while/after** (• Unit 93):

- { Always look both ways **before you cross the road**.
- { **Before you cross the road**, always look both ways.
- { **While I was waiting for the bus**, it began to rain.
- { It began to rain **while I was waiting for the bus**.
- { He never played tennis again **after he broke his leg**.
- { **After he broke his leg**, he never played tennis again.

- **When I am ... / When I go ...** etc. for *the future*:

I will be in London next week .
When I'm in London, I'm going to visit the British Museum.

The time *is future (next week)* but we say:

When I'm in London, ... (not 'When I **will be** in London ...')

We use the *present* (I **am** / I **go** etc.) with a *future meaning* after **when**:

- **When I get** home this evening, I'm going to have a shower. (not 'When I **will get** home')
- I can't talk to you now. I'll talk to you later **when I have** more time.

We do the same after **before/while/after/until**:

- Please close the window **before** you go out. (not 'before you **will go**')
- Julia is going to live in our house **while** we **are** away on holiday, (not 'while we **will be**')
- I'll wait here **until** you **come** back. (until • Unit 92)



104.1 Write sentences. Use **when** + a sentence from box A + a sentence from box B.

when +

A
I went out
I'm tired
I phoned them
she first met him
she goes to London
the programme ended
they arrived at the hotel

+

B
I switched off the TV
she always stays at the same hotel
she didn't like him very much
there were no rooms free
it-was-raining-
there was no answer
I like watching TV

- 1 When I went out, it was raining.
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7

104.2 Complete the sentences. Choose an ending from the box.

while I was reading	when you heard the news	before I go to sleep
when I explained it to her	before you cross the road	while I was out
before he answered the question	after they got married	

- 1 Always look both ways. before you cross the road.
- 2 Were you surprised.....?
- 3 He thought carefully
- 4 She understood the problem.....
- 5 They went to live in New Zealand
- 6 Did anybody telephone.....?
- 7 I fell asleep.....
- 8 I usually read in bed.....

104.3 Which is right? Choose the correct form.

- 1 ~~I wait~~ / I'll wait here until you come ~~you'll come~~ k . (I'll wait and you come are right)
- 2 I'm going to bed when I finish / I'll finish my work.
- 3 We come / We'll come and see you when we're / we'll be in England again.
- 4 When I see / I'll see you tomorrow, I show / I'll show you the photographs.
- 5 Would you like something to drink before you go / you'll go to bed?
- 6 Don't go out yet. Wait until the rain stops / will stop.
- 7 She's going away soon. I'm / I'll be very sad when she leaves / she'll leave.
- 8 I'm going to New York next month. While I'm / I'll be there, I hope to see lots of old friends.
- 9 A: Don't forget to give me your address.
B: Okay, I give / I'll give it to you before I go / I'll go.

UNIT 105 if...

You want to travel from Paris to Geneva. You are not sure which train you will travel on — the 7.35 or the 10.34.

If you leave at 7.35, you will arrive at 11.08.

If you leave at 10.34, you will arrive at 14.03.

- If can be *at the beginning* of the sentence or *in the middle*:
If..., ... (*if at the beginning*)

If you speak slowly, I can understand you.

If we don't hurry, we'll be late.

If you're hungry, have something to eat.

If the phone rings, can you answer it, please?

PARIS TO GENEVA			
DEPART		ARRIVE	
07.35	.....	11.08	
10.34	.....	14.03	
12.00	.....	15.35	
15.30	.....	19.00	

... if... (*if in the middle*)

I can understand you if you speak slowly.

We'll be late if we don't hurry.

I'm going to the concert if I can get a ticket.

Do you mind if I smoke? (= Is it okay if I smoke?)

In conversation, we often use the if-part of the sentence alone:

- 'Are you going to the concert?' 'Yes, **if I can get a ticket.**'

- if you **see** ... / **if I am** ... etc. for *the future*. For example:

- If you **see** Ann this evening, can you ask her to phone me?

We say: if you **see** (*not* 'if you will see'), if I **am** (*not* 'if I will be'). Use the present (*not* 'will') after if:

- If I'm late this evening, don't wait for me. (*not* 'If I will be late')
- What shall we do if it **rains**? (*not* 'if it will rain')
- **If I don't feel** well tomorrow, **I'll** stay at home.

- **if** and **when**

if I go out = it is possible that I will go out, but I'm not sure:

- A: Are you going out later?
- B: Perhaps. If I **go out**, **I'll** close the window.

when I go out = I'm going out (for sure):

- A: Are you going out later?
- B: Yes, I am. **When I go out**, I'll close the window.

- **When I** get home this evening, I'm going to have a shower.
- If I'm late this evening, don't wait for me. (*not* 'When I'm late')
- We're going to play tennis if it doesn't rain, (*not* 'when it doesn't')



105.1 Make sentences beginning with If... Choose from the boxes.

if +

we don't hurry
I can get a flight
you come home late tonight
I don't feel well tomorrow
you have any problems

+

please come in quietly
I'm not going to work
~~we'll be late~~
I'll try to help you
I'll fly home on Sunday

- 1 If we don't hurry, we'll be late.
- 2 If I can
- 3 If
- 4
- 5

105.2 Make sentences with if in the middle (... if...).

I can understand you
It will be nice
You'll be cold
What are you going to do
I'm sure they'll understand

+ if +

you don't wear a coat
you don't pass your examinations
you explain the problem to them
~~you speak slowly~~
you can come to the party

- 1 I can understand you if you speak slowly.
- 2 It
- 3
- 4
- 5

105.3 Choose the correct form of the verb.

- 1 If I don't feel ~~won't feel~~ I tomorrow, ~~I stay~~ / I'll stay at home, (don't feel and I'll stay are right)
- 2 If the weather is / will be nice tomorrow, we can go to the beach.
- 3 It will be difficult to find a hotel if we arrive / we'll arrive late.
- 4 The alarm will ring if there is / will be a fire.
- 5 I'm / I'll be surprised if they get / they'll get married.
- 6 Do you go / Will you go to the party if they invite / they'll invite you?

105.4 Put in if or when.

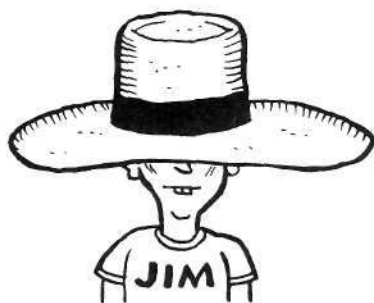
- 1 If I'm late this evening, don't wait for me.
- 2 I don't see you tomorrow, I'll phone you.
- 3 Do you mind I close the window?
- 4 I get up in the morning, I usually drink a cup of coffee.
- 5 Have something to eat you don't eat now, you'll be hungry later.
- 6 John is still at school he leaves school, he wants to go to university.
- 7 Be careful! you aren't careful, you'll fall.



I met a woman. **She** can speak six languages.
2 sentences

she → who

1 sentence
I met **a woman who** can speak six languages.



Jim was wearing a hat. **It** was too big for him.
2 sentences

it → that or which

1 sentence
Jim was wearing **a hat that** was too big for him.
or
Jim was wearing **a hat which** was too big for him.

- **who** ... is for *people* (not *things*):

A thief is **a person who** steals things, (not 'a person which ...')
Do you know **anybody who** can play the piano?
I know **somebody who** knows you.
The people who work in the office are very friendly.

- **that**... is for *things* (and *sometimes people*):

An aeroplane is **a machine that** flies.
Jack lives in **a house that** is 500 years old.

That is also possible for people ('Do you know **anybody that** can play the piano?'), but it is usually better to say **who**.

- **which** ... is only for *things*:

An aeroplane is **a machine which** flies, (not 'a machine who ...')
Jack lives in **a house which** is 500 years old.

Do *not* use **which** for people:

- Do you know **the man who** was playing the piano at the party?
(not 'the man which ...')

106.1 Write sentences about the people in box A: **A ... is a person who ...** Choose an ending from box B to complete your sentence. Use a dictionary if necessary.

a thief	A
a butcher	a dentist
a musician	a fool
a patient	a genius
a photographer	a liar

takes photographs	B
sells meat	is very intelligent
is ill in hospital	plays a musical instrument
steals things	doesn't tell the truth
is very stupid	looks after your teeth

- 1 A thief is a person who steals things.
- 2 A butcher is a person who
- 3 A musician is a person.....
- 4 A patient is
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9

106.2 Make one sentence from two sentences. Use **who**.

- 1 A man phoned. He didn't say his name.
The man who phoned didn't say his name.
- 2 A woman opened the door. She was wearing a yellow dress.
The woman.....a yellow dress.
- 3 Some people live next door to us. They are very nice.
The people
- 4 A policeman stopped our car. He wasn't very friendly.
The policeman
- 5 A boy broke the window. He ran away.
The boy

106.3 Put in **who/that/which**.

- 1 I met a woman who can speak six languages.
- 2 What's the name of the man.....lives next door?
- 3 What's the name of the river.....goes through the town?
- 4 Everybody.....went to the party enjoyed it very much.
- 5 Do you know anybody.....wants to buy a car?
- 6 Where is the picture.....was on the wall?
- 7 She always asks me questions.....are difficult to answer.
- 8 I have a friend.....is very good at repairing cars.
- 9 A coffee-maker is a machine.....makes coffee.
- 10 I don't like people.....never stop talking.
- 11 Have you seen the money.....was on the table?
- 12 Why does he always wear clothes.....are too small for him?

UNIT 107 the people we met the hotel you stayed at

[relative clauses 2]

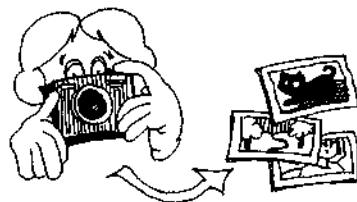
The man is carrying a box. } 2 sentences
It's very heavy.

The box (that) he is carrying is very heavy.
1 sentence



Ann took some photographs. } 2 sentences
Have you seen them?

Have you seen the photographs (that) Ann took?
1 sentence



- In these sentences, you do not need **'that'**. You do not need **that/who/which** when it is the *object*:

<i>subject</i>	<i>verb</i>	<i>object</i>	
The man	was carrying	a box.	→ the box (that) the man was carrying
Ann	took	some photographs.	→ the photographs (that) Ann took
You	wanted	the book.	→ the book (that) you wanted
We	met	some people.	→ the people (who) we met

- Did you find **the book (that) you wanted**?
- **The people (who) we met** were very nice.
- **Everything (that) I told you** was true.

■ Sometimes there is a *preposition* (**to/in/at** etc.) after the verb:

Jill is **talking to** a man. → Do you know **the man Jill is talking to**?

I slept in a bed. → **The bed I slept in** was very hard.

You **stayed at** a hotel. → What's the name of **the hotel you stayed at**?

You can also say {*a place*} **where** ...:

- What's the name of **the hotel where we stayed**? (= the hotel we stayed at)

Note that we say:

- Do you know the man Jill is **talking to** ~~him~~? (*not* .. **talking to him**?)
- The film **we saw** ~~it~~ was very good, (*not* 'The film **we saw it** . . .')

- Remember that you need **who/that/which** when it is the *subject* (• Unit 106):

	<i>subject</i>	<i>verb</i>	
I met a woman	who	can speak	six languages.
Jim was wearing a hat	that	was	too big for him.

107.1 Make one sentence from two.

- 1 (Ann took some photographs. Have you seen them')
Have you seen the photographs Ann took.....?
- 2 (You lost a key. Did you find it?) Did you find the.....?
- 3 (Jill is wearing a jacket. I like it.) I like the
- 4 (I gave you some money. Where is it?) Where is the.....?
- 5 (She told us a story. I didn't believe it.)
I.....the.....?
- 6 (You bought some oranges. How much were they?)
How.....?

107.2 Complete the sentences. Use the information in brackets ().

- 1 (we met some people) The people we met.....were very nice.
- 2 (I'm wearing shoes) The shoes.....are not very comfortable.
- 3 (you're reading a book) What's the name of the.....?
- 4 (I wrote a letter to her) She didn't get the.....I
- 5 (you gave me an umbrella) I've lost
- 6 (they invited some people to dinner)
The people.....didn't come.

107.3 Complete the sentences. Use this information:

you went to a party
we looked at a map
they live in a house

Linda is dancing with a man
you were looking for a book
you spoke to a woman

you stayed at a hotel-
I was sitting on a chair

- 1 What's the name of the hotel you stayed at.....?
- 2 What's the name of the woman you.....?
- 3 The house.....is too small for them.
- 4 Did you enjoy the party.....?
- 5 The chair.....wasn't very comfortable.
- 6 The map.....wasn't very clear.
- 7 Did you find the book.....?
- 8 Who is the man.....?

107.4 Complete the sentences with **where** ... Use this information:

we had dinner in a restaurant
you stayed at a hotel-

John works in a factory
they live in a village

- 1 What's the name of the hotel where we stayed.....?
- 2 What's the name of the restaurant.....?
- 3 Have you ever been to the village.....?
- 4 The factory.....is the biggest in the town.

APPENDIX 1 List of irregular verbs ▶ Unit 36

<i>infinitive</i>	<i>past simple</i>	<i>past participle</i>
be(am/is/are)	was/were	been
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
bite	bit	bitten
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feel	felt	felt
tight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly flew flown		
forget	forgot	forgotten
get	got	got
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grow	grew	grown
hang	hung	hung
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hide	hid	hidden
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent

<i>infinitive</i>	<i>past simple</i>	<i>past participle</i>
let	let	let
lie	lay	lain
light	lit	lit
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read /ri:d/	read /red/	read /red/
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
rise	rose	risen
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
shine	shone	shone
shoot	shot	shot
show	showed	shown
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spend	spent	spent
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tear	tore	torn
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

These verbs can be regular (-ed) or irregular (-t):

<i>infinitive</i>	<i>past simple/past participle</i>	<i>infinitive</i>	<i>past simple/past participle</i>
burn	burned or burnt	dream	dreamed or dreamt
learn	learned or learnt	smell	smelled or smelt

APPENDIX 2 Irregular verbs in groups

past simple I past participle the same

1	cost → cost	let → let
	cut → cut	put → put
	hit → hit	shut → shut
	hurt → hurt	

2	lend → lent	lose → lost
	send → sent	shoot → shot
	spend → spent	get → got
	build → built	light → lit
		sit → sat

burn → burnt	keep → kept
learn → learnt	sleep → slept
smell → smelt	

feel → felt
leave → left
meet → met
dream → dreamt /dremt/
mean → meant /merit/

3	bring → brought /brɔ:t/
	buy → bought /bɔ:t/
	fight → fought /fɔ:t/
	think → thought /θɔ:t/
	catch → caught /kɔ:t/
	teach → taught /tɔ:t/

4	sell → sold
	tell → told

find → found
have → had
hear → heard
hold → held
read → read /red/
say → said /sed/

pay → paid
make → made

stand → stood
understand → understood

past simple I past participle different

1	break → broke	broken
	choose → chose	chosen
	speak → spoke	spoken
	steal → stole	stolen
	wake → woke	woken

2	drive → drove	driven
	ride → rode	ridden
	rise → rose	risen
	write → wrote	written

beat → beat	beaten
bite → bit	bitten
hide → hid	hidden

3	eat → ate	eaten
	fall → fell	fallen
	forget → forgot	forgotten
	give → gave	given
	see → saw	seen
	take → took	taken

4	blow → blew	blown
	grow → grew	grown
	know → knew	known
	throw → threw	thrown
	fly → flew	flown
	draw → drew	drawn
	show → showed	shown

wear → wore	worn
tear → tore	torn

5	begin → began	begun
	drink → drank	drunk
	swim → swam	swum
	ring → rang	rung
	sing → sang	sung
	run → ran	run

6	come → came	come
	become → became	become

APPENDIX 3

Short forms (he's/I'd/don't etc.)

3.1 In spoken English, we usually pronounce 'I am' as one word. The short form (I'm) is a way of writing this:

- I'm feeling tired this morning.

- 'Do you like this jacket?' 'Yes, it's very nice.'

- 'Where are your friends?' 'They've gone home.'

etc.

When we write short forms, we use ' (*an apostrophe*):

I ~~am~~ → I'm he ~~is~~ → he's you ~~have~~ → you've she ~~will~~ → she'll

3.2 We use these short forms with **I/he/she** etc.:

am → 'm	I'm						
is → 's		he's	she's	it's			
are → 're					we're	you're	they're
have → 've	I've				we've	you've	they've
has → 's		he's	she's	it's			
had → 'd	I'd	he'd	she'd		we'd	you'd	they'd
will → 'll	I'll	he'll	she'll	it'll	we'll	you'll	they'll
would → 'd	I'd	he'd	she'd		we'd	you'd	they'd

- **I've** got blue eyes.
- **We'll** probably go out this evening.
- It's 10 o'clock. You're late again.

's = **is** *or* **has**:

- She's going out this evening, (she's going = she **is** going)
- She's gone out. (she's gone = she **has** gone)

'd = would *or* had:

- A: What would you like to eat?
13: I'd like a salad, please. (I'd like = **I would** like)
- I told the police that I'd lost my passport. (I'd lost = **I had** lost)

1) *do not* use short forms if the verb is at the end of the sentence (• Unit 37):

- 'Are you tired?' 'Yes, I am.' (*not* 'Yes, I'm'.)

3.3 We use short forms with **I/you/he/she/it** etc. But we use short forms (especially 's) with other words too:

- **Who's** your favourite singer? (= who is)
- **What's** the time? (= what is)
- **There's** a big tree in the garden. (= there is)
- **My sister's** working in London. (= my sister is working)
- **Jack's** gone out. (= Jack has gone out.)
- **What colour's** your car? (= What colour is your car?)

3.4 Negative short forms (• Unit 40)

not → n't:

isn't (= is not)	don't (= do not)	can't (= cannot)
aren't (= are not)	doesn't (= does not)	couldn't (= could not)
wasn't (= was not)	didn't (= did not)	won't (= will not)
weren't (= were not)		wouldn't (= would not)
hasn't (= has not)		shouldn't (= should not)
haven't (= have not)		mustn't (= must not)
hadn't (= had not)		needn't (= need not)

- We went to her house but she **wasn't** at home.
- 'Where's John?' **I don't** know. I **haven't** seen him.'
- You work all the time. You **shouldn't** work so hard.
- **I won't** be here tomorrow. (= I will not)

3.5 's {apostrophe + s}

's can mean different things:

a) 's = is *or* **has** (see section 2 of this appendix)

b) **let's** = **let us** (• Unit 48)

- The weather is nice. **Let's** go out. (= **Let us** go out.)

c) Mary's camera (= her camera) / my brother's car (= his car) / the manager's office (= his/her office)
etc. (• Unit 58)

Compare:

- **Mary's** camera was very expensive. (Mary's camera = **her** camera)
- **Mary's** a very good photographer. (Mary's = Mary is)
- **Mary's** got a new camera. (Mary's got = Mary **has** got)

APPENDIX 4 Spelling

4.1 -s and -es (birds/watches etc.)

noun + s (*plural*) (• Unit 60):

bird → birds place → places question → * questions

verb + s (he/she/it -s) (• Unit 5):

thinks thinks live → lives remember → * remembers

but

+ es after -s, -sh, -ch or -x:

bus → buses	pass → passes	address → addresses
dish → dishes	wash → washes	finish → finishes
watch → watches	teach → teaches	sandwich → sandwiches
box → boxes		

also

potato → potatoes	do → does
tomato → tomatoes	go → goes

-f/-fe → -ves:

shelf → shelves knife → knives *but* roof → roofs

4.2 -y → -i- (baby → babies / study → studied etc.)

-y → -ies:

study → studies (not 'studys')	family → families (nor 'familys')	
story → stories	city → cities	baby → babies
try → tries	marry → marries	fly → flies

-y → -ied (• Unit 9):

study → studied (not 'studied')

try → tried	marry → married	copy → copied
-------------	-----------------	---------------

-y → -ier/iest (• Units 81 and 84):

easy → easier / easiest	(not 'easier/casyest')
happy → happier/happiest	lucky → luckier/luckiest
heavy → heavier/heaviest	funny → funnier/funniest

-y. → -ily (• Unit 80):

easy → easily (not 'easily')	
happy → happily	lucky → luckily heavy → heavily

y does not change to i if the ending is -ay/-ey/-oy/-uy:

holiday → holidays (not 'holidiaies')

enjoy → enjoys/enjoyed	stay → stays/stayed	buy → buys	key → keys
------------------------	---------------------	------------	------------

but

say → said	pay → paid	(irregular verbs)
------------	------------	-------------------

4.3 -ing

Verbs that end in -e (make/write/drive etc.):

-e → ing:

make → making write → writing come → coming dance → dancing

Verbs that end in -ie (die/lie/tie):

-ie → -ying:

lie flying die → dying

4.4 stop → stopped (p → pp) / big → bigger (g → gg) etc.

vowel letters (V): a e i o u

consonant letters (C): b c d f g k l m n p r s t

Sometimes a word ends in *ii vowel + a consonant* (V' + C) - for example, stop. big.

Before -ing/-ed/-er/-est, the consonant at the end (-p/-g/-t etc.) is 'doubled' (→ -pp/-gg/-tt etc.).

For example:

	V+C			
stop	S T O P	p → pp	stopping	stopped
run	R U N	n → nn	running	
get	G E T	t → tt	getting	
swim	S W I M	m → mm	swimming	
big	B I G	g → gg	bigger	biggest
hot	H O T	t → tt	hotter	hottest
thin	T H I N	n → nn	thinner	thinnest

This does *not* happen

a) if the word ends in *two consonant letters* (C + C):

	C+C			
help	H E L P	helping	helped	
work	W O R K	working	worked	
fast	F A S T	faster	fastest	

b) if the word ends in *two vowel letters + a consonant letter* (V + V + C):

	V+V+C			
need	N E E D	needing	needed	
wait	W A I T	waiting	waited	
cheap	C H E A P	cheaper	cheapest	

c) in longer words (two syllables or more) if the last part of the word is not stressed:

	stress			
happen	=	HAP-pen	→	happening/happened (<i>not</i> 'happenned')
visit	=	VIS-it	→	visiting/visited
remember	=	re-MEM-ber	→	remembering/remembered
but prefer	=	pre-FER (<i>stress at the end</i>)	→	preferring/preferred
begin	=	be-GIN (<i>stress at the end</i>)	→	beginning

d) if the word ends in -y or -w. (At the end of words, y and w are not consonants.)

enjoy → enjoying/enjoyed snow/snowing/snowed few/fewer/fewest

This is a list of sonic important phrasal verbs (• Unit 101):

out **look out / watch out** = be careful:

- **Look out!** There's a car coming.



on **come on** = be quick / hurry:

- **Come on!** Everybody is waiting for you.

hold on = wait

- Can you **hold on** a moment, please?
(= can you wait?)



carry on = continue

- Don't stop working. **Carry on.** (= Continue working.)
- A: Excuse me, where is the station please?
B: **Carry on** along this road and turn right at the traffic lights.
(= Continue along this road)

also **go on / walk on / drive on** = continue going etc.:

- Don't stop here. **Drive on.** (= Continue driving.)

off **take off** = leave the ground (for planes).

- The plane **took off** 20 minutes late.



up **wake up** = stop sleeping:

- I often **wake up** in the middle of the night.

get up = get out of bed:

- What time do you usually **get up** in the morning?

grow up = become an adult:

- What does your son want to do when he **grows up**?

speak up = speak more loudly:

- I can't hear you. Can you **speak up** a bit?

wash up = wash the dishes, plates etc. after a meal:

- After we finished eating, we **washed up**.

hurry up = go more quickly:

- **Hurry up!** We haven't got much time.

give up = stop trying:

- I know it's difficult but don't **give up**. Keep trying.



wake up



get up



grow up



wash up

down **slow down** = go more slowly:

- You're driving too fast. **Slow down.**

break down = stop working (for cars/machines etc.):

- I'm sorry Em late. The car **broke down**.



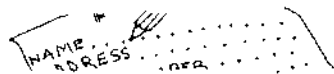
break down

APPENDIX 6

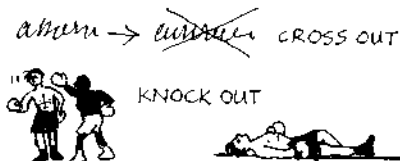
Phrasal verbs + object (ring up my friend / put out a fire etc.)

This is a list of some important phrasal verbs + object (• Unit 102):

in **fill in** (a form) (= complete a form):
- Can you **fill in this form**, please?



out **put out** (a fire / a cigarette):
- The fireman arrived and quickly **put the fire out**.
cross out (a mistake / a word etc.):
- If you make a mistake, **cross it out**.
knock out = make unconscious
- A stone fell on my head and **knocked me out**.

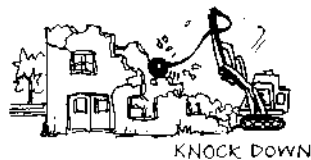


on/off **switch on/off** (a light, TV etc.) = turn on/off:
- Don't forget to **switch off the light** when you leave.

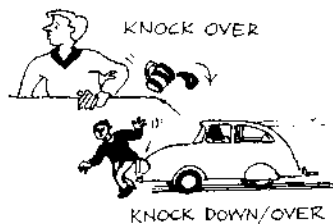
on **try on** (clothes) = put on clothes to see if they fit you:
- (in a shop) I like that jacket. I'm going to **try it on**.

up **ring up** = telephone (also **ring** - without 'up'):
- Can you **ring me up** tomorrow? (or . . . **ring me** tomorrow?)
give up = stop something that you do:
- Tom **gave up smoking** three years ago. (= he stopped smoking)
- I started learning Italian but I **gave it up**.
look up (a word) (in a dictionary):
- I didn't know the meaning of the word, so I **looked it up** in a dictionary.
turn up = make louder (TV, radio, music etc.):
- Can you **turn the radio up**? I can't hear it.

down **knock down** (a building) = demolish
- They are going to build a new school and **knock down the old one**.
turn down = make more quiet (TV, radio, music etc.):
- The radio is too loud. Can you **turn it down**, please?



over **knock over** (a cup / a glass / a person etc.):
- Be careful with your cup. Don't **knock it over**.
also (be) **knocked down / knocked over** (by a car etc.):
- There was an accident at the end of the road. A man was **knocked over** (or **knocked down**) by a car.
(be) **run over** (by a car etc.):
- A lot of animals are **run over** on busy roads.
(These sentences are passive • Unit 20.)



round **show** (somebody) **round** = take somebody on a tour of a place:
- We visited a factory last week. The manager **showed us round**.

away **throw away** (rubbish etc., things you don't want):
- These apples are bad. **Throw them away**.
- Don't **throw away that picture**. I want it.



Key

In many of these answers you can use the full form of the verb ('I am, it is, she will, he has' etc. or the short form of the verb ('I'm, it's, she'll, he's' etc.). See Appendix 3 for short forms.

Unit 1

1.1

- 2 they're
- 3 she's not / she isn't
- 4 it's
- 5 I'm not
- 6 you're not / you aren't
- 8 I am
- 9 you are
- 10 they are not
- 11 it is not
- 12 she is

1.2

- 2 am/'m
- 3 is
- 4 are
- 5 is
- 6 is/s
- 7 am/'m
- 8 is
- 9 are
- 10 is ... are
- 11 am/'m ... is

1.3

- 2 My bed **is** very comfortable.
- 3 Your cigarettes **are** in your bag.
- 4 I am **not** / I'm **not** very happy today.
- 5 This restaurant **is** very expensive.
- 6 The shops **are not** / **aren't** open today.
- 7 Mr Kelly's daughter **is** six years old.
- 8 The houses in this street **are** very old.
- 9 The examination **is not** / **isn't** difficult.
- 10 Those flowers **are** very beautiful.

1.4

- 3 I'm / I am hungry, *or* I'm **not** / I am **not** hungry.
- 4 **It's** / **It is** warm today, *or* **It isn't** / **It's not** warm today.
- 5 Rome **isn't** / **is not** in Spain.
- 6 I'm / I am afraid of dogs, *or* **I'm not** / **I am not** afraid of dogs.
- 7 My hands **are** cold, *or* My hands **aren't** / **are not** cold.
- 8 Canada **is** a very big country.
- 9 The Amazon **isn't** / **is not** in Africa.
- 10 Diamonds **aren't** / **are not** cheap.
- 11 Motor-racing **is** a dangerous sport.
- 12 Cats **aren't** / **are not** big animals.

Unit 2

2.1

- 2 Are your parents at home?
- 3 Is this hotel expensive?
- 4 Are you interested in art?
- 5 Are the shops open today?
- 6 Is the park open today?

2.2

- 2 Where is / Where's my key?
- 3 Where are my socks?
- 4 How old is your father?
- 5 What colour are his eyes?
- 6 Why is John angry with me?
- 7 How much are these shoes?
- 8 Who is / Who's your favourite actor?
- 9 Why are you always late?

2.3

- 3 Are you British?
- 4 Where are you from?
- 5 How old are you?
- 6 Are you a student?
- 7 Is your wife a teacher?
- 8 Where is / Where's she from?
- 9 What is / What's her name?
- 10 How old is she?

2.4

- 3 Yes, it is. *or* No, it isn't / No, it's not.
- 4 Yes, I am. *or* No, I'm not.
- 5 Yes, I am. *or* No, I'm not.
- 6 Yes, it is. *or* No, it isn't. / No, it's not.
- 7 Yes, they are. *or* No, they aren't. / No, they're not.
- 8 Yes, I am. *or* No, I'm not.
- 9 Yes, he is. *or* No, he isn't. / No, he's not.
- 10 Yes, it is. *or* No, it isn't. / No, it's not.

Unit 3

3.1

- 2 are building
- 3 is swimming
- 4 are standing
- 5 is coming
- 6 am cooking
- 7 is having

3.2

- 3 I'm / I am sitting on a chair, *or* I'm **not** / I am **not** sitting on a chair.
- 4 I'm / I am eating, *or* I'm **not** / I am **not** eating.
- 5 **It's** / **It is** raining, *or* **It's not** / **It is not** raining.
- 6 I'm / I am learning English.
- 7 I'm / I am listening to the radio, *or* I'm **not** / I am **not** listening to the radio.

- 8 The sun **is** shining, *or* The sun **isn't** / **is not** shining.
 9 I'm / I am wearing shoes, *or* I'm **not** / I am **not** wearing shoes.
 10 I'm / I am smoking a cigarette, *or* I'm **not** / I am **not** smoking a cigarette.
 11 I'm **not** / I am **not** reading a newspaper.

3.3

- 2 In A the man is lying on the floor. In B he is standing on the chair.
 3 In A it's raining. In B the sun is shining.
 4 In A the woman is writing (a letter). In B she is reading a book.
 5 In A the man is running. In B he is riding a bicycle. / In B he is cycling.
 6 In A the woman is driving (the car). In B the man is driving (the car).

Unit 4

- 4.1
 2 Where is / Where's he going?
 3 Why are they laughing?
 4 What is / What's he eating?
 5 What are they looking at?
 6 Why is she crying?

4.2

- 2 What are they doing?
 3 What am I doing?
 4 What is your wife doing?
 6 Where are those children going?
 7 Where is the girl with long hair going?
 8 Where is the man on the bicycle going?

4.3

- 2 Are the children playing?
 3 What are you doing?
 4 What is / What's Tom doing?

- 5 Is it raining?
 6 Is that clock working?
 7 Are you writing a letter?
 8 Why are you running?

4.4

- 2 Yes, I am. *or* No, I'm not.
 3 Yes, I am. *or* No, I'm not.
 4 Yes, it is. *or* No, it isn't. / No, it's not.
 3 Yes, I am. *or* No, I'm not.
 6 Yes, I am. *or* No, I'm not.
 7 Yes, it is. *or* No, it isn't. / No, it's not.
 8 Yes, she is. *or* No, she isn't. / No, she's not.

Unit 5

5.1

- | | |
|-----------|-----------|
| 2 repairs | 8 does |
| 3 watches | 9 thinks |
| 4 listens | 10 kisses |
| 3 loves | 11 buys |
| 6 has | 12 goes |
| 7 pushes | |

5.2

- | | |
|---------------|------------|
| 2 smokes | 8 costs |
| 3 have | 9 cost |
| 4 like ... go | 10 teaches |
| 5 boils | 11 meet |
| 6 open | 12 washes |
| 7 closes | |

5.3

- 1 George usually drinks coffee in the morning.
(example answer) I sometimes drink coffee in the morning.
 2 Bob and Ann often read newspapers.
 George never reads newspapers.
(example answer) I often read newspapers.
 3 Bob and Ann sometimes get up before 7 o'clock.
 George always gets up before 7 o'clock.
(example answer) I never get up before 7 o'clock.

Unit 6

6.1

- 2 Jack doesn't play the piano very well.
 3 You don't know the answer.
 4 She doesn't work very hard.
 5 They don't do the same thing every day.

6.2

- 3 They don't know.
 4 She doesn't love him.
 5 They don't speak English.
 6 I want it.
 7 She wants them.
 8 He doesn't live in Rome.

6.3

- 1 Carol doesn't like classical music.
 I like / I don't like classical music.
 2 Bill and Rose don't like boxing.
 Carol likes boxing.
 I like / I don't like boxing.
 3 Bill and Rose don't like horror films.
 Carol likes horror films.
 I like / I don't like horror films.
 4 Bill and Rose like dogs.
 Carol doesn't like dogs.
 I like / I don't like dogs.

6.4

- 2 don't sell
 3 doesn't drive
 4 don't go
 5 doesn't wash
 6 doesn't cost
 7 doesn't play
 8 don't know
 9 doesn't wear
 10 don't see

Unit 7

7.1

- 2 Do you play tennis?
- 3 Does Ann play tennis?
- 4 Do you know the answer?
- 5 Do you like hot weather?
- 6 Does your father smoke?
- 7 Do you do exercises every morning?
- 8 Do your friends speak English?
- 9 Do you want to be famous?
- 11 Where do you live?
- 12 How often do you watch TV
- 13 Where do you have lunch?
- 14 What time do you get up?
- 15 How often do you go to the cinema?
- 16 How do you go to work?

7.2

- 2 do you speak
- 3 do you do
- 4 does your sister do
- 5 Does she smoke
- 6 does it rain
- 7 Do you like
- 8 do they (usually) go
- 9 do you (usually) have
- 10 does it cost

7.3

- 2 Yes, I do. or No, I don't.
- 3 Yes, I do. or No, I don't.
- 4 Yes, she does, or No, she doesn't.
- 5 Yes, I do. or No, I don't.
- 6 Yes, it does, or No, it doesn't.

Unit 8

8.1

- 2 Yes, she does. No, she isn't.
She's / She is playing the piano.
- 3 Yes, he does. Yes, he is.
He's / He is cleaning a window.

- 4 Yes, they do. No, they aren't. / No, they're not.
They're / They are watching television.

8.2

- | | |
|---------------------|-----------|
| 2 don't | 6 do |
| 3 arc | 7 does |
| 4 does | 8 am/'m |
| 5 don't . . . is/'s | 9 doesn't |

8.3

- 4 is singing
- 3 wants
- 6 do you read
- 7 're sitting / are sitting
- 8 don't understand / do not understand
- 9 'm reading / am reading
- 10 does she finish
- 11 'in not listening / am not listening
- 12 doesn't usually drive / does not usually drive . . . walks

Unit 9

9.1

- 2 cleaned
- 3 smoked
- 4 started . . . finished
- 5 happened
- 6 wanted
- 7 lived
- 8 enjoyed . . . stayed
- 9 rained
- 10 opened
- 11 played
- 12 died

9.2

- | | |
|----------|------------|
| 2 ate | 11 bought |
| 3 paid | 12 knew |
| 4 made | 13 stood |
| 5 gave | 14 took |
| 6 left | 13 did |
| 7 saw | 16 put |
| 8 went | 17 told |
| 9 heard | 18 lost |
| 10 found | 19 thought |
| | 20 spoke, |

9.3

- 2 got up early.
- 3 lost his keys
- 4 I wrote a letter to Jane.
- 5 met her friends
- 6 I read two newspapers
- 7 they came to my house.
- 8 We went to the cinema
- 9 Tom had a shower
- 10 they bought a new car.
- 11 I ate an orange.
- 12 We did our shopping
- 13 Ann took (some) photographs.
- 14 We left home at 8.30

9.4

If possible, check your sentences with someone who speaks English.

Unit 10

10.1

- | | |
|---------------|---------------|
| 2 didn't work | 4 didn't have |
| 3 didn't go | 5 didn't do |

10.2

- 2 Did you enjoy the party?
- 3 Did you have a good holiday?
- 4 Did you get up early this morning?
- 5 Did you sleep well last night?

10.3

- 2 I got up before 7.30. or I didn't get up before 7.30.
- 3 I had a shower, or I didn't have a shower.
- 4 I bought a magazine, or I didn't buy a magazine.
- 5 I spoke English, or I didn't speak English.
- 6 I did an examination, or I didn't do an examination.
- 7 I ate meat, or I didn't eat meat.
- 8 I went to bed before 10.30. or I didn't go to bed before 10.30.

10.4

- 2 What time did Harry arrive?
- 3 Who did you see?
- 4 What did they want?
- 5 What time did the meeting / it finish?
- 6 Why did Pat/she go home early?
- 7 What did you have for dinner?
- 8 How much did it cost?

10.5

- 2 waited ... didn't come.
- 3 did you buy
- 4 saw ... didn't speak
- 5 Did it rain
- 6 did you do

Unit 11

11.1

- 2 Carol and Jack were at the cinema / in the cinema.
- 3 Sue was at the station.
- 4 Mr and Mrs Baker were in a restaurant / at a restaurant.
- 5 Ben was on the beach / on a beach / at the seaside / by the sea.
- 6 (example answer) I was at home.

11.2

- | | |
|--------------|------------|
| 2 is ... was | 8 is/s |
| 3 am/'m | 9 was |
| 4 was | 10 were |
| 5 were | 11 was |
| 6 a re/'re | 12 are ... |
| 7 were | were |

11.3

- 2 was
- 3 weren't ... were
- 4 wasn't ... was
- 5 weren't ... was
- 6 Were ... wasn't ... was

11.4

- 2 Were they friendly?
- 3 Was it difficult?

4 Were they expensive?

5 Was it interesting?

Unit 12

12.1

- 2 Carol and Jack were at the cinema. They were watching a film.
- 3 Tom was in his car. He was driving.
- 4 Catherine was at the station. She was waiting for a train.
- 5 Mr and Mrs Mason were in the park. They were walking.
- 6 (example answer) 1 was in the park. 1 was playing tennis.

12.2

- 2 she was swimming.
- 3 she was reading a newspaper.
- 4 she was cooking.
- 3 she was having breakfast.
- () she was listening to music.

12.3

- 2 What were you doing at 11 o'clock?¹
- 3 What was she wearing yesterday?
- 4 Was it raining when you went out?
- 3 Where were you living in 1981?

12.4

- 2 He was smoking a pipe.
- 3 1 le was carrying a bag.
- 4 He wasn't carrying an umbrella.
- 3 He wasn't going to the dentist.
- (•> \le was wearing a hat.

Unit 13

13.1

- 1 Tom was walking down the street.

He saw Jack.

He said hello.

- 2 They were sitting in the garden.

It started to rain.

They went into the house.

- 3 Carol was painting the room. She fell off the ladder. She broke her arm.

13.2

- 4 was working
- 3 got ... washed ... dressed ... had
- 6 came ... was having
- 7 met ... was wearing
- 8 broke ... were playing
- 9 were waiting ... arrived
- 10 got ... was shining ... went
- 1 1 wasn't driving / was not driving ... happened
- 12 didn't go
- 13 did you do
- 14 were you doing ... was watching

Unit 14

14.1

- 2 he's got
- 3 they've got
- 4 she hasn't got
- 3 it's got
- 6 I haven't got

14.2*

- 2 Have you got a passport?
- 3 Has your father got a car?
- 4 Has Carol got main- friends?
- 5 Have Mr and Mrs Lewis got any children?
- 6 How much money have you got?
- 7 What kind of car has John got?

14.3*

- 3 Ann hasn't got a camera.
- 4 I've got a camera, or I haven't got a camera.

- 5 I've got a bicycle or I haven't got a bicycle.
- 6 Jim hasn't got a bicycle.
- 7 Ann hasn't got black hair.
- 8 Ann has got two brothers.
- 9 Jim hasn't got black hair.
- 10 Ann has got a bicycle.
- 11 **Jim** has got a sister.
- 12 *(example answers)* I've got two sisters. / I haven't got any brothers or sisters.
- * In these exercises you can also use 'do/does . . . have' ('Do you **have** a passport?' 'Ann **doesn't have** a camera.'etc') • Units 6-7

14.4

- 3 has got / 's got
- 4 have got
- 5 has got
- 6 haven't got
- 7 haven't got
- 8 have got / 'vc got
- 9 hasn't got
- 10 has got / 's got
- 11 has got / 's got
- 12 haven't got
- 13 hasn't got
- 14 have got / 'vc got

Unit 15

15.1

- 2 She has closed the door.
- 3 They have gone to bed.
- 4 It has stopped raining.
- 5 He has had a bath.
- 6 The picture has fallen down.

15.2

- 2 have bought
- 3 has gone
- 4 Have you done
- 5 have lost
- 6 has broken
- 7 Have you painted
- 8 has taken
- 9 has she gone
- 10 have read

Unit 16

16.1

- 3 Have you ever been to Australia?
- 4 Have you ever lost your passport?
- 3 Have you ever slept in a park?
- 6 Have you ever eaten Chinese food?
- 7 Have you ever been to New York?
- 8 Have you ever won a lot of money?
- 9 Have you ever broken your leg?

16.2

- 3 She has never been to Australia, *(example answer)* I have never been to Australia.
- 4 She has lost her passport once, *(example answer)* I have lost my passport twice.
- 5 She has never slept in a park, *(example answer)* I have never slept in a park.
- 6 She has eaten Chinese food a few times, *(example answer)* I have eaten Chinese food many times.
- 7 She has been to New York twice, *(example answer)* I have been to New York three times.
- 8 She has never won a lot of money, *(example answer)* I have never won a lot of money.
- 9 She has broken her leg once, *(example answer)* I have broken my leg twice.

16.3

- 2 She has travelled to many places.
- 3 She has done a lot of interesting things.
- 4 She has written ten books.
- 5 She has met a lot of interesting people.
- 6 She has been married five times.

16.4

- | | |
|-------------------|--------|
| 2 gone | 6 been |
| 3 been . . . been | 7 been |
| 4 been | 8 gone |
| 5 gone | |

Unit 17

17.1

- 3 have been
- 4 has been
- 5 have lived / have been living
- 6 have known
- 7 have been
- 8 has worked / has been working
- 9 have been
- 10 has had

17.2

- 3 How long have they been in Brazil?
- 4 How long has she been learning Italian?
- 5 How long has he lived in Germany? or How long has he been living . . . ?
- 6 How long has it been raining?
- 7 How long has he been a teacher?
- 8 How long have you known her?
- 9 How long have you had a motor-bike?
- 10 How long have they been married?
- 11 How long has he worked in London? or How long has he been working . . . ?

17.3

- 2 He has been in hospital since Sunday.
- 3 They have been watching television for two hours.
- 4 It has been raining all day.
- 5 She has lived in Wales all her life.
- 6 He has had a beard for five years.

Unit 18

18.1

- | | |
|-------------------|---------|
| 3 for . . . since | 6 since |
| 4 for | 7 since |
| 5 for | 8 for |

18.2

If possible, check your answers with someone who speaks English.

18.3

- 3 for 20 years
- 4 20 years ago
- 5 ten minutes ago
- 6 two months ago
- 7 for two months
- 8 for a long time
- 9 an hour ago

18.4

- 2 He has been here since Thursday.
- 3 It's been raining for an hour.
- 4 I've known her for two years.
- 5 I've had my camera since 1985.
- 6 They've been married for six months.
- 7 She has been studying medicine for three years.

18.5

If possible, check your sentences with someone who speaks English.

Unit 19

19.1

- 2 Yes, I saw him ten minutes ago.
- 3 Yes, we painted it last week.
- 4 Yes, she went (to France) on Friday.
- 5 Yes, they had dinner at 7 o'clock.
- 6 Yes, he started (it) yesterday.

19.2

- 2 What time did he go out?
- 3 When did you see her?
- 4 When did she leave her job?

19.3

- 3 *right*
- 4 *wrong* - I **finished** my work **at 2 o'clock.**
- 5 *wrong* - **When did you finish** your work?
- 6 *wrong* - George **left** school **three years ago.**
- 7 *right*
- 8 *wrong* - Napoleon Bonaparte **died in 1821.**
- 9 *right*
- 10 *wrong* - **I didn't see you at the party on Saturday.**
- 11 *wrong* - The weather **was** very bad **last week.**

19.4

- 4 played
- 5 did you go
- 6 Have you ever been
- 7 have washed
- 8 washed
- 9 didn't like
- 10 has visited
- 11 has worked
- 12 went . . . stayed

Unit 20

20.1

- 3 Glass is made from sand.
- 4 Stamps are sold in a post office.
- 5 Football is played in most countries.
- 6 This machine is not used very often. / This machine isn't used very often.
- 7 What language is spoken in Ethiopia?
- 8 What is this machine used for?

20.2

- 3 This room was painted last month.

- 4 These houses were built about 50 years ago.
- 5 Ann's bicycle was stolen last week.
- 6 Three people were injured in the accident.
- 7 When was this church built?
- 8 When was television invented?
- 9 How was the window broken?
- 10 Was anybody injured in the accident?
- 11 Why was the letter sent to the wrong address?

20.3

- 3 is made
- 4 were damaged
- 5 are spoken
- 6 were built
- 7 are shown
- 8 was made
- 9 was stolen . . . was found
- 10 was invented
- 11 is paid

20.4

- 2 Sally was born in Birmingham.
- 3 Her parents were born in Ireland.
- 4 I was born in . . .
- 5 My mother was born in . . .

Unit 21

21.1

- 2 Dick is going to the cinema.
- 3 Tom and Sue are going to a party.
- 4 Barbara is meeting Dave.
- 5 George is going on holiday.

21.2

If possible, check your sentences with someone who speaks English. Here are some example answers:

- 3-6 I'm having a party on Friday.

I'm going away at the weekend.
I'm staying at home this evening.
I'm playing tennis tomorrow.

21.3

- 2 Are you working next week?
- 3 What are you doing tomorrow evening?
- 4 What time are Bob and Sue coming?
- 5 When is Liz going on holiday?

21.4

- 3 I'm meeting my friends this evening.
- 4 Tom isn't coming to the party on Thursday.
- 5 The English course finishes on 10 May.
- 6 My sister is getting married next December.
- 7 My train leaves at 8.45.
- 8 I'm not going to London tomorrow.
- 9 What time does the train leave?
- 10 What time are you leaving tomorrow?
- 11 When are they getting married?
- 12 When does the next English course begin?

Unit 22

22.1

- 2 He's going to have/take a bath.
- 3 They're going to buy a (new) car.
- 4 He's going to have/drink a cup of coffee.
- 5 They're going to paint/decorate the room.
- 6 She's going to play the piano.

22.2

- 2 I'm (**not**) going to get up before 6.30.
- 3 I'm (not) going to have breakfast.
- 4 I'm (not) going to watch TV in the morning.
- 5 I'm (not) going to cook a meal.
- 6 I'm (not) going to ride a bicycle.

22.3

- 2 When are you going to visit me again?
- 3 What time is Tom going to phone you tonight?
- 4 How long are your friends going to stay here?
- 3 What time are you going to get up tomorrow?

22.4

- 2 I'm going to walk.
- 3 He's going to study
- 4 It's going to rain.
- 5 I'm going to eat
- 6 We're going to give
- 7 I'm going to lie

Unit 23

23.1

- 2 she'll be in Munich.
- 3 she'll be in Athens.
- 4 she'll be in Vienna.
- 5 she'll be in Rome.

23.2

If possible, check your answers with someone who speaks English. Here are some example answers:

- 2 I'll be at home.
- 3 I'll be in bed.
- 4 I'll probably be in the town centre.
- 5 I don't know where I'll be.

23.3

- 2 I won't forget.
- 3 It won't happen.

- 4 You won't find it.

23.4

- 2 I think Jack will win the game.
- 3 I think Sue will like her present.
- 4 I think the weather will be nice tomorrow.
- 5 I don't think they'll get married.
- 6 I don't think I'll be at home this evening.

23.5

- 2 are you doing
- 3 I'm going
- 4 he'll lend'
- 5 I'm going out
- 6 will phone
- 7 She's working

Unit 24

24.1

- | | |
|-------------|-------------|
| 2 I'll send | 5 I'll do |
| 3 I'll eat | 6 I'll sit |
| 4 I'll stay | 7 I'll show |

24.2

- 2 I think I'll have or I think I'll buy
- 3 I don't think I'll play
- 4 I don't think I'll buy

24.3

- 3 *wrong* - **I'll** do it later.
- 4 *wrong* - Okay, **I'll drive**.
- 5 *right*
- 6 *wrong* — **I'll lend** you some.

24.4

- 2 Shall I turn off the TV
- 3 Shall I make some sandwiches?
- 4 Shall I turn on the light?

24.5

- 2 where shall we go
- 3 what shall we buy
- 4 who shall we invite

Unit 25

25.1

- 2 Can you ski?
- 3 Can you play chess?
- 4 Can you drive?
- 5 Can you run ten kilometres?
- 6 Can you ride a horse?
- 8 I can ski. *or* I can't ski.
- 9 I can play chess, *or* I can't play chess.
- 10 I can drive, *or* I can't drive.
- 11 I can run ten kilometres, *or* I can't run ten kilometres.
- 12 I can ride a horse, *or* I can't ride a horse.

25.2

- 2 can speak
- 3 can't hear
- 4 can't find
- 5 can see

25.3

- 2 couldn't understand
- 3 can't see
- 4 couldn't eat
- 5 can't go
- 6 couldn't go

25.4

- 2 Can you pass (me) the salt, please? *or* Could you pass ...?
- 3 Can you turn off the radio, please? *or* Could you turn ...?
- 4 Can I borrow your pen? *or* Could I borrow ...? *or* Can you lend me your pen? *or* Could you lend me ...?
- 5 Can I use your phone, please? *or* Could I use ...?
- 6 Can you give me your address (please)? *or* Could you give me ...? *or* Can I have your address (please)? *or* Could I have ...?

Unit 26

26.1

- 2 I may/might see Tom tomorrow.
- 3 Kay may/might be late.
- 4 It may/might snow today.
- 5 I may/might wear my new jeans.
- 6 They may/might not come.
- 7 I may/might not go out tonight.

26.2

- 2 I may/might go to a restaurant.
- 3 I may/might see her tomorrow / this evening.
- 4 I may/might buy some shoes.
- 5 I may/might go away.
- 6 I may/might phone him this evening / tomorrow.
- 7 I may/might have fish.

26.3

If possible, check your answers with someone who speaks English. Here are some example answers:

- 3 I might get up early.
- 4 I may go to the cinema.
- 5 I'm not going to have a shower.
- 6 I'm going to buy a newspaper.
- 7 I'm not going to play tennis.
- 8 I might make a telephone call.

Unit 27

27.1

- 2 must hurry
- 3 must meet
- 4 must phone
- 5 must learn
- 6 must read
- 7 must buy

- 8 must wash
- 9 must go
- 10 must help
- 11 must win
- 12 must be

27.2

- 2 must
- 3 had to
- 4 must
- 5 must
- 6 had to
- 7 must
- 8 had to
- 9 had to
- 10 had to

27.3

- 3 mustn't lose
- 4 needn't hurry
- 5 needn't take
- 6 mustn't tell
- 7 needn't buy
- 8 needn't wait
- 9 mustn't stick

Unit 28

28.1

- 2 should go
- 3 should clean
- 4 should visit
- 5 should wear
- 6 should read

28.2

- 2 You shouldn't work so hard.
- 3 He shouldn't eat so much.
- 4 She shouldn't watch TV so often.
- 5 You shouldn't talk so much.

28.3

- 2 Do you think I should buy a new camera?
- 3 Do you think I should get a new job?
- 4 Do you think I should do an English course?
- 5 Do you think I should learn to drive?

28.4

- 2 I think you should sell it.
- 3 I think they should have a holiday.
- 4 I think he should go to the doctor.
- 5 I think she should go to university.
- 7 I don't think they should get married.
- 8 I don't think we should stay there.
- 9 I don't think you should go to work today.

28.5

If possible, check your sentences with someone who speaks English. Here are some example answers:

- 1 I think everybody should learn a foreign language.
- 2 I think I should learn to drive.
- 3 I don't think the police should carry guns.

Unit 29

29.1

- 2 have to do
- 3 has to read
- 4 have to speak
- 5 has to travel

29.2

- 2 have to get
- 3 have to go
- 4 had to buy
- 5 have to change
- 6 had to answer

29.3

- 2 Why did they have to leave early?
- 3 How much (money) did you have to pay?
- 4 Why do you have to go (home) now?
- 5 How long did he have to wait?

- 6 Why does she have to work this evening?

29.4

- 2 (doesn't) have to wait.
- 3 didn't have to get up so early.
- 4 don't have to decide now.
- 5 doesn't have to work so hard.

29.5

- 3 has to
- 4 had to
- 5 have to
- 6 must *or* have to
- 7 have to

Unit 30

30.1

- 2 Would you like an apple?
- 3 Would you like a biscuit?
- 4 Would you like some cheese?
- 5 Would you like a sandwich?
- 6 Would you like some cake?

30.2

- 2 Would you like to go to a concert on Sunday?
- 3 Would you like to play tennis tomorrow?
- 4 Would you like to dance?

30.3

- 2 Would you like
- 3 Do you like
- 4 would you like
- 5 Would you like
- 6 I like
- 7 I'd like
- 8 Would you like

Unit 31

31.1

- 2 Are there any books in the box?
- 3 Is there a man in the box?
- 4 Is there any money in the box?

- 5 Are there any clothes in the box?
- 6 Is there a key in the box?

31.2

- 2 There isn't a swimming-pool in Dunford. / There is no swimming-pool . . .
- 3 There is a hospital in Dunford.
- 4 There are two cinemas in Dunford.
- 5 There isn't a university in Dunford. / There is no university . . .
- 6 There aren't any big hotels in Dunford. / There are no big hotels . . .
- 7 There is a cathedral in Dunford. / There's a cathedral . . .

31.3

- 2 There is / There's
- 3 is there
- 4 There are
- 5 There isn't
- 6 are there
- 7 There aren't
- 8 Is there

31.4

- 2 There are 50 states in the USA.
- 3 There are 15 players in a rugby team.
- 4 There are nine planets in the solar system.
- 5 There are 26 letters in the English alphabet.
- 6 There are 30 days in September.

31.5

- 2 It
- 3 There
- 4 There ... it
- 5 there ... there
- 6 There ... it

Unit 32

32.1

- 2 There was a carpet
- 3 There were some pictures
- 4 There was a small table
- 5 There were some flowers
- 6 There were some books
- 7 There was an armchair
- 8 There was a sofa

32.2

- 3 There was
- 4 Was there
- 5 There weren't
- 6 there wasn't
- 7 Were there
- 8 There wasn't
- 9 There was
- 10 there weren't

32.3

- 3 There are
- 4 There was
- 5 There is
- 6 There has been
- 7 there was
- 8 There will be
- 9 there were . . . there are

Unit 33

33.1

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 3 It's / It is | 8 Is it |
| 4 Is it | 9 is it |
| 5 Is it | 10 It's / It is |
| 6 is it ... Is it | 11 It's / It is |
| 7 It's / It is | 12 It's / It is |

33.2

- 2 How far is it from New York to Washington?
- 3 How far is it from your house to the station?
- 4 How far is it from the hotel to the beach?

33.3

- | | |
|-------------|----------------|
| 3 It | 7 There ... It |
| 4 There | 8 There |
| 5 it ... it | 9 It |
| 6 It | |

33.4

- 2 It's nice to see you again
- 3 It's impossible/difficult to sleep
- 4 It's dangerous/stupid to go out alone
- 5 It's difficult/impossible to save
- 6 It's stupid to wear
- 7 It's easy to meet people.

Unit 34

34.1

- 3 phone Jack
- 4 phone Jack
- 5 to phone Jack
- 6 to phone Jack
- 7 phone Jack
- 8 to phone Jack
- 9 phone Jack
- 10 phone Jack

34.2

- 3 get
- 4 going
- 5 watch
- 6 raining
- 7 driving
- 8 listening
- 9 eat
- 10 doing . . . staying
- 11 wear
- 12 waiting

34.3

- | | |
|----------------|-------------|
| 4 to go | 11 studying |
| 5 going ... go | 12 hear |
| 6 help | 13 lie |
| 7 see | 14 to lie |
| 8 to leave | 15 to go |
| 9 rain | 10 go |
| 10 to have | |

Unit 35

35.1

- | | |
|--------|---------|
| 3 are | 7 do |
| 4 Does | 8 Are |
| 5 Do | 9 Does |
| 6 Is | 10 does |

- | | |
|--------|--------|
| 11 are | 13 Is |
| 12 do | 14 Are |

35.2

- 3 don't
- 4 am not / 'm not
- 5 isn't
- 6 don't
- 7 aren't
- 8 doesn't
- 9 don't
- 10 am not / 'in not

35.3

- | | |
|--------|---------|
| 3 were | 9 was |
| 4 did | 10 was |
| 5 was | 11 did |
| 6 were | 12 have |
| 7 Has | 13 Did |
| 8 did | 14 Have |

35.4

- | | |
|--------|---------|
| 3 is | 8 has |
| 4 have | 9 were |
| 5 was | 10 have |
| 6 are | 11 was |
| 7 Have | 12 is |

Unit 36

36.1

- | | |
|-----------|---------------|
| 3 got | 10 bought |
| 4 thought | 11 heard |
| 5 paid | 12 cost |
| 6 sat | 13 caught |
| 7 left | 14 lost" |
| 8 built | 13 understood |
| 9 put | |

36.2

- 2 began begun
- 3 ate eaten
- 4 drank drunk
- 5 gave given
- 6 ran run
- 7 spoke spoken
- 8 wrote written
- 9 came come
- 10 drove driven
- 11 took taken
- 12 went gone
- 13 knew known

- 14 threw thrown
15 forgot forgotten

36.3

- 3 slept
4 saw
5 rained
6 lost . . . seen
7 stolen
8 went
9 finished
10 built
11 learnt/learned
12 ridden
13 fell . . . hurt
14 known

36.4

- | | |
|----------|----------|
| 2 met | 7 driven |
| 3 woken | 8 sold |
| 4 swam | 9 told |
| 5 spoken | 10 flew |
| 6 cost | |

Unit 37

37.1

- | | |
|--------|--------|
| 2 do | 5 do |
| 3 did | 6 does |
| 4 does | |

37.2

- | | |
|-----------|-----------|
| 2 doesn't | 5 doesn't |
| 3 didn't | 6 didn't |
| 4 don't | |

37.3

- | | |
|--------|--------|
| 2 have | 7 were |
| 3 can | 8 will |
| 4 are | 9 does |
| 5 is | 10 has |
| 6 was | |

37.4

- 2 isn't
3 won't
4 hasn't
5 wasn't
6 didn't
7 am not / 'm not
8 don't

37.5

- 2 Yes, I have, or No, I haven't.
3 Yes, it is. or No, it isn't.
4 Yes, I do. or No, I don't.
5 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.
6 Yes, I do. or No, I don't.
7 Yes, I will, or No, I won't.
8 Yes, I have, or No, I haven't
9 Yes, I did. or No, I didn't.
10 Yes, I was. or No, I wasn't.

Unit 38

38.1

- | | |
|---------------|--------------|
| 2 Do you | 5 Didn't you |
| 3 Did he | 6 Do I |
| 4 Doesn't she | |

38.2

- 3 Have you
4 Was she
5 Can't you
6 Didn't you
7 Is it
8 Aren't you
9 Did you
10 Does she
11 Won't you
12 Isn't it '

38.3

- | | |
|---------------|--------------|
| 2 aren't they | 5 don't you |
| 3 wasn't she | 6 doesn't he |
| 4 haven't you | 7 won't you |

38.4

- | | |
|-------------|--------------|
| 2 are you | 5 do you |
| 3 isn't she | 6 didn't she |
| 4 can't you | 7 was it |

Unit 39

39.1

- | | |
|----------|----------|
| 2 either | 5 either |
| 3 too | 6 either |
| 4 too | 7 too |

39.2

- 2 So am I.
3 So have I.
4 So do I.
5 So will I.
6 So was I.
7 Neither can I.
8 Neither did I.
9 Neither have I.
10 Neither am I.
11 Neither do I.

39.3

- 1 So am I.
2 So can I. or I can't (ride a bicycle).
3 Neither am I. or I am (tired).
4 So do I. or I don't (like dancing).
5 Neither do I. or I do. or I like cold weather.
6 So did I. or I didn't (sleep well last night).
7 Neither have I. or I have (been to India).
8 Neither do I. or I do. or I often go to the cinema.
9 So am I. or I'm not (going out tomorrow evening).
10 Neither have I. or I have (a headache), or I've got a headache.
11 Neither did I. or I did. or I watched TV last night.
12 So do I. or I don't (need a holiday).

Unit 40

40.1

- 3 They aren't married. / They're not married.
4 I haven't had dinner.
5 It isn't cold today. / It's not cold today.
6 I can't see you.
7 We weren't late.
8 I'm not going out.
9 She hasn't gone out.
10 I won't be late tonight.
11 It wasn't expensive.
12 You shouldn't go.

40.2

- 3 I don't like fish.
- 4 She doesn't smoke.
- 5 Don't look at me!
- 6 I didn't get up early.
- 7 They didn't understand.
- 8 Don't phone me tonight.
- 9 I didn't do the shopping.
- 10 He doesn't live near here.
- 11 It didn't rain yesterday.
- 12 They didn't do the work.

40.3

- 3 She can't swim.
- 4 They aren't on holiday. / They're not on holiday.
- 5 He doesn't speak German.
- 6 I didn't enjoy the film.
- 7 It isn't important. / It's not important.
- 8 We didn't watch TV.
- 9 They weren't angry.
- 10 He won't be pleased.
- 11 I didn't go to the bank.
- 12 She hasn't got a camera.
- 13 Don't open the door.
- 14 I couldn't hear them.

40.4

- 3 am not / 'm not
- 4 can't
- 5 doesn't
- 6 isn't / 's not
- 7 don't . . . haven't
- 8 didn't/couldn't . . . wasn't
- 9 Don't
- 10 didn't
- 11 haven't
- 12 didn't
- 13 won't/can't
- 14 didn't
- 15 couldn't
- 16 weren't

Unit 41

41.1

- 3 Were you late this morning?
- 4 Has Ann got a key?
- 5 Will you be here tomorrow?
- 6 Is Tom going out this evening?

- 7 Have you finished your work?
- 8 Do you like your job?
- 9 Does Pam live near the city centre?
- 10 Did you enjoy your holiday?
- 11 Did you have a shower this morning?

41.2

- 2 Can/Do you play the piano?
- 3 Are you married?
- 4 Do you live in a city?
- 5 Have you (ever) been to India?
- 6 Did you go out last night?
- 7 Do you like chocolate?
- 8 Did you watch TV yesterday?
- 9 Did you sleep well last night?

41.3

- 3 Why is it important?
- 4 What are you reading?
- 5 What time did she go home?
- 6 When are they going away?
- 7 What kind of music do you like?
- 8 Where did you meet him?
- 9 How long is he going to stay here?
- 10 Where have they gone?
- 11 Why can't you come (to the party)?
- 12 How did you break the window?
- 13 How much money do you need?
- 14 When did she do her driving test?
- 15 Why don't you like her?
- 16 How often does it rain?

Unit 42

42.1

- 3 Who is / Who's coming?
- 4 Who took your umbrella?
- 5 What made you angry?
- 6 Who wants to see me?

- 7 Who told you about the accident?
- 8 What went wrong?

42.2

- 3 What are you reading?
- 4 Who did you see?
- 5 What do you want?
- 6 Who did you phone?
- 7 What are you going to cook?
- 8 What did you buy?

42.3

- 3 What have they lost?
- 4 Who cleaned the kitchen?
- 5 Who did you ask for money?
- 6 Who asked you for money?
- 7 What happened last night?
- 8 What did Jack buy?
- 9 Who telephoned you yesterday?
- 10 Who did you telephone yesterday?
- 11 Who knows the answer?
- 12 What woke you up this morning?
- 13 Who has / Who's got your pen?
- 14 What did they see?
- 15 Who saw the accident?
- 16 Who did the washing-up?
- 17 What did she do?
- 18 What does it mean? / What does this word mean?

Unit 43

43.1

- 3 Who are you waiting for?
- 4 Who did she dance with?
- 5 What is he interested in?
- 6 Who did you have dinner with?
- 7 What are they looking for?
- 8 Who was George with?
- 9 Who did you give the money to?
- 10 What are you looking at?
- 11 What were they talking about?
- 12 Who did you dream about?
- 13 What was he afraid of?

- 14 Which restaurant are they going to?
 15 Who did she speak to?
 16 Which hotel did you stay at?

43.2

- 2 What is the food like?
 3 What is the weather like?
 4 What are the people like?
 5 What is your city like?
 6 What are the shops like?
 7 What are the schools like?
 8 What are the TV programmes like?

43.3

- 2 What was the film like?
 3 What was the flight like?
 4 What was the concert like?
 5 What were the lessons like?
 6 What was the hotel like?

Unit 44

44.1

- 2 Which restaurant are you going to?
 3 Which newspaper does she read?
 4 Which language are you going to learn?
 5 Which places did they visit?
 6 Which bus are you waiting for?

44.2

- | | |
|---------|----------|
| 3 Which | 8 Who |
| 4 What | 9 What |
| 5 What | 10 What |
| 6 Which | 11 Which |
| 7 Which | 12 What |

44.3

- 2 What time did you get up?
 3 How old are you?
 4 What colour is the door?
 5 How often do you watch TV?
 6 What size are these shoes?
 7 How far is it from Paris to Moscow? / How many miles is it from Paris to Moscow?

- 8 How big is your room?
 9 What kind of music do you like? / What sort of music do you like?
 10 How far can you run? / How many kilometres can you run?
 11 What size is your pullover?
 12 How tall are you?
 13 What day is it (today)?
 14 How heavy is this box?
 15 How fast can this plane fly?
 16 What kind of films do you like? / What sort of films do you like?

Unit 45

45.1

- 2 How long does it take by car from Rome to Milan?
 3 How long does it take by bus from the city centre to the airport?
 4 How long does it take by plane from Cairo to London?
 5 How long does it take by taxi from the station to the hotel?
 6 How long does it take by train from Paris to Geneva?
 7 How long does it take by boat from Dover to Ostend?
 8 How long does it take by bicycle from your house to your work?

45.2

- 2 it takes 50 minutes.
 3 It takes an hour/one hour.
 4 It takes an hour and a quarter / an hour and 15 minutes / one and a quarter hours.
 5 It takes an hour and 25 minutes.
 6 It takes an hour and ten minutes.

45.3

- 2 How long did it take you to walk to the station?
 3 How long did it take them to clean the house?

- 4 How long did it take you to learn to swim?
 5 How long did it take him to find an apartment?

45.4

- 2 It took us an hour to walk home.
 3 It took me a long time to learn to drive.
 4 It took them all day to repair the car.
 5 If possible, check this sentence with someone who speaks English.

45.5

If possible, check your sentences with someone who speaks English. Here are some example answers:

- 2 It takes me about five minutes to have a shower.
 3 It takes two hours to fly to London from Italy.
 4 It takes six years to study to be a doctor in Britain.
 5 It takes (me) about ten minutes to walk from my house to the nearest shop.

Unit 46

46.1

- 2 Excuse me, can you tell me where the museum is?
 3 Excuse me, can you tell me where the information centre is?
 4 Excuse me, can you tell me where the nearest bank is?

46.2

- 1 I don't know where he is.
 2 I don't know when they're / they are leaving.
 3 I don't know why he was angry.
 4 I don't know where they're / they are from.
 5 I don't know how old the house is.

- 6 I don't know when he'll /
he will be here.

46.3

- 2 I don't know where she
works.
3 Do you know where they
live?
4 Do you remember what he
said?
5 Do you know what time the
concert begins?
6 I don't know why they left
early.
7 I don't remember how the
accident happened.

46.4

- 2 Do you know if/whether
they are married?
3 Do you know if/whether
she likes her job?
4 Do you know if/whether
George will be here
tomorrow?
5 Do you know if/whether
he passed his examination?

46.5

- 2 Do you know where Ann is?
3 Do you know if/whether
Pat is working today?
4 Do you know what time
they start work?
5 Do you know if/whether
they work on Sundays?
6 Do you know why they were
so nervous?
7 Do you know where Stella
went?
8 Do you know if/whether
the shops are open
tomorrow?

Unit 47

47.1

- 3 to do
4 to swim
5 to work . . . talking

- 6 cleaning
7 to go
8 going
9 to send
10 to be
11 I reading
12 travelling . . . flying / to fly
13 to come
14 to see
15 working
16 to speak
17 to talk
18 crying / to cry
19 visiting

47.2

- 2 Do you like writing letters?
3 Do you like travelling by
train?
4 Do you like visiting
museums?
5 Do you like eating in
restaurants?

'Do you like **to write** / **to travel**' etc. is possible in these sentences, especially in American English.

7-10. If possible, check your sentences with someone who speaks English. Here are some example answers:

- 7 I don't like writing letters.
8 I like travelling by tram.
9 I don't mind visiting
museums.
10 I like eating in restaurants.

47.3

- 3 living
4 to do
5 to help
6 travelling ('**to travel**' is possible, especially in American English)
7 teaching ('**to teach**' is possible, especially in American English)
8 to lose
9 to leave ('**leaving**' is *not* possible after '**would prefer**')
10 losing ('**to lose**' is possible, especially in American English)

Unit 48

48.1

- 3 I want you to listen carefully.
4 I don't want you to be angry.
5 Do you want me to wait for you?
6 I don't want you to phone me tonight.
7 I want you to meet Sarah.
8 Do you want me to make some coffee?

48.2

- 2 The doctor advised me to stay in bed.
3 I asked her to phone me.
4 Tom persuaded me to go to the party.
5 They let me use their phone. (*not* 'to use')
6 Ann's mother taught her to play the piano.

48.3

- 3 The man told me to get into the car.
4 I told the children to be quiet.
5 She told me not to lose the key.
6 Tom told me to phone him later.
7 I told Tom not to say anything.

48.4

- 2 to get
3 to explain
4 sleep
5 to hear
6 walk
7 to arrive
8 cry
9 to know
10 clean / to clean
11 wait
12 to do

Unit 49

49.1

- 2 Yes, he told me that he was married.
- 3 Yes, she said that she could play tennis.
- 4 Yes, they told me that they were from Italy.
- 5 Yes, she told me that she had (got) a job.
- 6 Yes, they said that they would help us.
- 7 Yes, he said that he was going to India.
- 8 Yes, she told me that she worked in a bank.
- 9 Yes, they told me that they lived in London.
- 10 Yes, she said that she was studying art.

49.2

- 2 She said that she would phone later.
- 3 He said that he didn't want to study.
- 4 He said that he hadn't been to London.
- 5 She said that she had lost her key.
- 6 She said that she was learning German.
- 7 He said that he couldn't drive a car.
- 8 She said that she knew the answer.
- 9 She said that she wasn't going out.
- 10 He said that he had (got) a lot of problems.

You can say all these sentences without **'that'**. For example (sentence 3):

He said (that) he didn't want to study, (with *or* without **'that'**)

49.3

- | | |
|--------|---------|
| 3 told | 7 tell |
| 4 told | 8 told |
| 5 said | 9 said |
| 6 say | 10 tell |

Unit 50

50.1

- 2 I went to the bank to get some money.
- 3 I went to the supermarket to buy some food.
- 4 I went to the post office to get some stamps.
- 5 I went to the chemist to get some medicine.
- 6 I went to the café to meet a friend.

50.2

- 2 to read the newspaper.
- 3 to open this door?
- 4 to clean it.
- 3 to let some fresh air into the room.
- 6 to wake them up.
- 7 to get some petrol.
- 8 to see the Pyramids.
- 9 to tell him about the party.
- 10 to see who it was.

50.3

- | | |
|-------|--------|
| 2 for | 7 to |
| 3 for | 8 to |
| 4 to | 9 to |
| 5 to | 10 for |
| 6 for | |

50.4

- 2 for the rain to stop
- 3 for them to come
- 4 for the film to begin

Unit 51

51.1

- 2 get some petrol.
- 3 get a doctor.
- 4 get your shoes?
- 5 get a ticket.
- 6 get the job.
- 7 get some milk?
- 8 gets a very good salary.

51.2

- 2 getting late.
- 3 getting married

- 4 getting ready
- 3 getting dark.

51.3

- 2 get tired.
- 3 get wet.
- 4 got married
- 5 got lost.
- 6 get old.
- 7 got better.

51.4

- 2 1 left London at 10.13 and got to Bristol at 11.43.
- 3 I left home at 8.30 and got to the airport at 9.30.
- 4 I left the party at 11.13 and got home at midnight.

51.5

- 2 got off
- 3 got out of
- 4 got on

Unit 52

52.1

- 3 to
- 4 to
- 5 (*no preposition*)
- 6 for
- 7 to ... to
- 8 on (holiday) to (Italy)
- 9 for
- 10 to
- 11 (*no preposition*)
- 12 to
- 13 on
- 14 to

52.2

- 2 Diane went fishing.
- 3 Peter went shopping.
- 4 Harry went swimming.
- 3 Linda went skiing.
- 6 Sheila went climbing.

52.3

- 2 fishing
- 3 to sleep
- 4 to the bank
- 5 riding

- 6 for a walk
- 7 shopping
- 8 home
- 9 on holiday ... to Portugal

Unit 53

53.1

- | | |
|--------|--------|
| 2 him | 6 her |
| 3 them | 7 him |
| 4 her | 8 them |
| 5 them | |

53.2

- 2 he ... me
- 3 I ... them
- 4 they ... us
- 5 he ... her
- 6 she ... them
- 7 they ... me
- 8 we ... him
- 9 she ... you

53.3

- | | |
|--------|---------|
| 2 him | 7 us |
| 3 me | 8 them |
| 4 them | 9 her |
| 5 it | 10 them |
| 6 them | |

53.4

- 2 it (to) him
- 3 them (to) her
- 4 it (to) me
- 5 it (to) them
- 6 them (to) us

Unit 54

54.1

- 2 They live with their parents.
- 3 We live with our parents.
- 4 Ann lives with her parents.
- 5 I live with my parents.
- 6 John lives with his parents.
- 7 Do you live with your parents?
- 8 Most children live with their parents.

54.2

- 2 She's going to wash her hands.
- 3 We're going to wash our hands.
- 4 He's going to wash his hands.
- 3 They're going to wash their hands.
- 6 Are you going to wash your hands?

54.3

- | | |
|---------|---------|
| 2 their | 6 their |
| 3 his | 7 her |
| 4 his | 8 their |
| 5 her | |

54.4

- | | |
|----------|----------|
| 2 your | 11 your |
| 3 his | 12 our |
| 4 Her | 13 his |
| 5 his | 14 their |
| 6 your | 15 her |
| 7 My | 16 his |
| 8 her | 17 their |
| 9 Our/My | 18 its |
| 10 their | |

Unit 55

55.1

- | | |
|----------|---------|
| 2 mine | 6 yours |
| 3 ours | 7 mine |
| 4 hers | 8 his |
| 5 theirs | |

55.2

- 3 your
- 4 yours
- 5 my ... Mine
- 6 our ... theirs
- 7 their
- 8 My ... hers ... hers

55.3

- 3 (a) friend of hers
- 4 (some) friends of ours
- 5 (a) friend of mine
- 6 (a) friend of his
- 7 (a) friend of yours

55.4

- 2 Whose books are these?
- 3 Whose umbrella is this?
- 4 Whose jacket is this?
- 5 Whose glasses are these?
- 6 Whose cigarettes are these?
- 7 Whose hat is this?
- 8 Whose keys are these?
- 9 Whose camera is this?
- 10 Whose gloves are these?
- 11 Whose car is this?
- 12 Whose watch is this?

Unit 56

56.1

- 2 Yes, I know her but I can't remember her name.
- 3 Yes, I know them but I can't remember their names.
- 4 Yes, I know you but I can't remember your name.

56.2

- 2 He invited us to stay with him at his house.
- 3 They invited me to stay with them at their house.
- 4 I invited her to stay with me at my house.
- 5 We invited them to stay with us at our house.
- 6 You invited him to stay with you at your house.
- 7 She invited me to stay with her at her house.

56.3

- 3 Give it to him.
- 4 Give them to her.
- 5 Give it to us.
- 6 Give it to them.
- 7 Give them to him.
- 8 Give it to me.

56.4

- 2 I gave her my address and she gave me hers.
- 3 He gave me his address and I gave him mine.
- 4 We gave her our address and she gave us hers.

- 5 I gave them my address and they gave me theirs.
- 6 She gave us her address and we gave her ours.
- 7 You gave him your address and he gave you his.
- 8 We gave them our address and they gave us theirs.
- 9 They gave you their address and you gave them yours.
- 10 She gave him her address and he gave her his.

Unit 57

57.1

- | | |
|-------------|--------------|
| 2 myself | |
| 3 herself | 6 ourselves |
| 4 ourselves | 7 themselves |
| 5 yourself | 8 himself |

57.2

- | | |
|--------------|---------------|
| 2 yourself | 7 herself |
| 3 myself | 8 myself |
| 4 themselves | 9 himself |
| 5 myself | 10 yourself |
| 6 themselves | 11 yourselves |

57.3

- 2 John lives by himself.
- 3 Do you live by yourself?
- 4 She went to the cinema by herself.
- 5 When I saw him, he was by himself.
- 6 Don't go out by yourself.
- 7 I had dinner by myself.

57.4

- 2 We know each other.
- 3 They like each other.
- 4 We can help each other.
- 5 They understand each other.
- 6 They give each other presents. / They give presents to each other.
- 7 Tom and Jill didn't see each other.
- 8 We didn't speak to each other.
- 9 They often write letters to each other.

Unit 58

58.1

- | | |
|------------|--------------|
| 2 Philip's | 7 Charles's |
| 3 Ann's | 8 Ann's |
| 4 Robert's | 9 Robert's |
| 5 Ted's | 10 Charles's |
| 6 Robert's | |

58.2

- 2 Alice's
- 3 Jane's
- 4 Jane's
- 5 Alice's
- 6 Alice's
- 7 Alice's
- 8 Jane's
- 9 Jane's
- 10 Alice's

58.3

- 3 your sister's birthday
- 4 the colour of this coat
- 5 the top of the page.
- (> Jill's address
- 7 the cause of the accident
- 8 My parents' house.
- 9 Maria's spoken English
- 10 the best part of the day
- 11 My brother's job
- 12 the end of the street.
- 13 Pat's favourite colour
- 14 The walls of this house

Unit 59

59.1

- 3 a window
- 4 a horse
- 5 an airport
- 6 a university
- 7 an organisation
- 8 a restaurant
- 9 a Chinese restaurant
- 10 an Indian restaurant
- 11 an accident
- 12 a bad accident
- 13 a question
- 14 an important question
- 15 a hamburger
- 16 an hour
- 17 an economic problem
- 18 a nice evening

59.2

- 2 It's a river.
- 3 It's an animal.
- 4 It's a game.
- 5 It's a flower.
- (> It's a tool.
- 7 It's a vegetable.
- 8 It's a planet.
- 9 It's a musical instrument.
- 10 It's a fruit.

59.3

- 2 He's a shop assistant.
- 3 He's a photographer.
- 4 She's a taxi-driver.
- 5 She's a nurse.
- 6 He's a private detective.
- 7 She's a road-sweeper.
- 8 I'm a/an ...

59.4

- 2 We went to a party last night.
- 3 My brother is an artist.
- 4 It's a beautiful day today.
- 5 I ate a sandwich and an apple.
- 6 Britain is an industrial country.
- 7 I had a bath this morning.
- 8 Barbara works in an office.
- 9 It's a very difficult question.
- 10 We stayed at an expensive hotel.

Unit 60

60.1

- | | |
|--------------|---------------|
| 3 boats | 16 people |
| 4 languages | 17 families |
| 5 watches | 18 holidays |
| 6 countries | 19 sandwiches |
| 7 knives | 20 cities |
| 8 women | 21 mice |
| 9 addresses | |
| 10 sheep | |
| 11 teeth | |
| 12 leaves | |
| 13 children | |
| 14 feet | |
| 15 umbrellas | |

60.2

- | | | |
|-------|--------|--------|
| 3 arc | 8 arc | 13 arc |
| 4 is | 9 is | 14 arc |
| 5 arc | 10 arc | 15 arc |
| 6 is | 11 arc | |
| 7 arc | 12 is | |

60.3

- 3 ... two brothers and four sisters.
- 4 ... with a lot of beautiful trees.
- 5 *okay*
- 6 Do you make many mistakes ...
- 7 ... and she has three children.
- 8 Most of my friends are students.
- 9 He put on his pyjamas ...
- 10 *okay*
- 11 ... three people in the car ...
- 12 I like your trousers. Where did you get them?
- 13 ... full of tourists.
- 14 These scissors aren't very sharp.

60.4

- | | |
|---------|---------|
| 2 are | 7 Do |
| 3 don't | 8 arc |
| 4 watch | 9 them |
| 5 were | 10 some |
| 6 live | |

Unit 61

61.1

- | | |
|----------------|------------------|
| 3 a hat | 9 soap |
| 4 tea | 10 a bucket |
| 3 toothpaste | 11 sand |
| 6 a toothbrush | 12 a credit card |
| 7 a cup | |
| 8 money | |

61.2

- 3 ... a hat
- 4 ... for a job
- 5 *okay*
- 6 ... to a party
- 7 *okay*

- 8 ... a cup of coffee
- 9 *okay*
- 10 ... an island
- 11 ... a very bad mistake
- 12 *okay*
- 13 ... a car
- 14 ... a very good idea

61.3

- 2 a piece of wood
- 3 a glass of water
- 4 a bar of chocolate
- 5 a cup of tea
- 6 a piece of paper
- 7 a bowl of soup
- 8 a loaf of bread
- 9 a jar of honey

Unit 62

62.1

- 2 I bought some cigarettes, a lighter and a newspaper.
- 3 I bought some bread, some postcards and some stamps.
- 4 I bought some toothpaste, some batteries and a pen.

62.2

- 2 Would you like sonic coffee?
- 3 Would you like a cigarette?
- 4 Would you like some bread? / a piece of bread?
- 5 Would you like a chocolate?
- 6 Would you like some chocolate? / a piece of chocolate?

62.3

- 2 some money ... some food
- 3 some interesting people
- 4 a window ... some fresh air
- 5 an apple ... some bread
- 6 a big house ... a nice garden ... some beautiful trees
- 7 a table ... some wood
- 8 some very good advice
- 9 a letter ... a pen ... some paper

- 10 some nice weather *or* 'We had nice weather' *without* 'some'

62.4

- 2 chairs
- 3 furniture
- 4 eyes
- 5 hair
- 6 information

Unit 63

63.1

- 3 the
- 4 a
- 5 a
- 6 the
- 7 a
- 8 an
- 9 a
- 10 the
- 11 a ... a
- 12 the
- 13 the bathroom
- a bath
- 14 the ... the
- 15 an old house
- the station
- the centre

63.2

- 2 ... can I ask a question ...
- 3 Alan is the best player ...
- 4 ... from here to the airport?
- 5 ... don't forget to send me a postcard!
- 6 Have you got a ticket for the concert tomorrow night?
- 7 What is the name of the director of the film we saw last night?
- 8 Yesterday I bought a jacket and a shirt. The jacket was cheap but the shirt was expensive.
- 9 Peter and Mary have two children, a boy and a girl. The boy is seven years old and the girl is three.

63.3

- 3 a bicycle
- 4 the roof
- 5 the play
- 6 a difficult language
- 7 a cigarette
- 8 the kitchen
- 9 the next train
- 10 a nice day

Unit 64

64.1

- 3 **the** third floor.
- 4 **the** fire brigade.
- 5 **the** first man . . . **the** moon?
- 6 **the** capital
- 7 **the** largest city . . . **the** world?
- 8 **the** army?
- 9 **the** sea?
- 10 *okay*
- 11 **the** top shelf. . . **the** right.
- 12 **the** country . . . **the** nearest village.
- 13 **the** end of May . . . **the** beginning of April.
- 14 **the** same price.
- 15 **The** Prime Minister . . . **the** most important person . . . **the** British government.
- 16 **the** man . . . **the** left?
- 17 **the** name.
- 18 **the** first time
- 19 *okay*
- 20 **the** fridge

64.2

- 2 the same time.
- 3 the same problem.
- 4 the same age.
- 5 the same colour.
- 6 the same day.

64.3

- 3 **The** sun
- 4 television
- 5 (any) breakfast.
- 6 **The** police
- 7 **the** guitar
- 8 lunch
- 9 **the** radio.
- 10 **The** sky

Unit 65

65.1

- 2 They're at **the** cinema.
- 3 She's in **hospital**.
- 4 She's at **the** airport.
- 5 They're at **home**.
- 6 He's in **prison**.

65.2

- 3 **the** dentist
- 4 bed
- 5 university
- 6 **the** cinema
- 7 **the** airport
- 8 school
- 9 home
- 10 **the** station

65.3

- 3 **the** doctor
- 4 *okay*
- 5 *okay*
- 6 **the** bank
- 7 *okay*
- 8 **the** city centre
- 9 *okay*
- 10 **the** theatre
- 11 *okay*
- 12 **the** toilet
- 13 *okay*
- 14 *okay*
- 15 *okay*
- 16 **the** post office
- 17 *okay*
- 18 *okay*

- 9 I love opera.
- 10 I don't mind big cities.

66.2

If possible, check your sentences with someone who speaks English. Here are some example answers:

- 2 I'm not interested in politics.
- 3 I'm very interested in sport.
- 4 I don't know much about art.
- 5 I don't know anything about astronomy.
- 6 I'm interested in economics.

66.3

- 3 friends
- 4 coffee
- 5 **the** coffee
- 6 parties
- 7 Tennis
- 8 **The** water
- 9 cold water
- 10 **The** paintings
- 11 Money . . . happiness
- 12 English
- 13 Children . . . things
- 14 **the** salt
- 15 restaurants
- 16 capitalism
- 17 photographs
- 18 **the** photographs

Unit 67

67.1

- 3 Switzerland
- 4 **The** Soviet Union
- 5 **The** Amazon
- 6 Asia
- 7 **The** Pacific
- 8 **The** Rhine
- 9 **The** United States
- 10 Kenya
- 11 **The** Andes
- 12 Tokyo
- 13 Malta
- 14 **The** Alps
- 15 **The** Red Sea
- 16 **The** Bahamas

Unit 66

66.1

If possible, check your sentences with someone who speaks English. Here are some example answers:

- 2 I don't like clogs.
- 3 I hate hard work.
- 4 I love Italian food.
- 5 I hate loud music.
- 6 I don't mind small children.
- 7 I like hot weather.
- 8 I don't like staying in hotels.

67.2

- 3 At the Intercontinental Hotel.
- 4 Milan is a large city in the north of Italy.
- 5 *okay*
- 6 Manila is the capital of the Philippines.
- 7 The National Gallery is in Trafalgar Square in London.
- 8 *okay*
- 9 The Ural Mountains are in **the** Soviet Union.
- 10 In London, the Houses of Parliament are beside the River Thames.
- 11 Have you ever been to the British Museum?
- 12 *okay*
- 13 Last night we saw a play at **the** Royal Theatre.
- 14 You must visit the Museum of Modern Art.
- 15 *okay*
- 16 When I finish my studies, I'm going to the United States for a year.
- 17 **The** Panama Canal joins **the** Atlantic Ocean and **the** Pacific Ocean.
- 18 There are two cinemas in our town - **the** Regal and **the** Plaza.
- 19 If you sail from Britain to Denmark, you cross the North Sea.
- 20 Mary comes from a small village in the west of Ireland.
- 21 *okay*
- 22 Have you ever been to the USA?

- 10 those socks
- 11 those men
- 12 that tree
- 13 those eggs
- 14 that woman
- 15 that room
- 16 those plates

68.2

- 2 Is that your umbrella?
- 3 Are those your books?
- 4 Is this your hat?
- 5 Are these your cigarettes?
- 6 Are those your keys?
- 7 Is that your bicycle?
- 8 Are those your glasses?
- 9 Is this your watch?
- 10 Are these your gloves?

68.3

- 2 Who lives in that house?
- 3 Look at those birds!
- 4 How much are these postcards?
- 5 Excuse me, is this seat free?
- 6 These plates are dirty.

Unit 69

69.1

- 2 No, I don't need one.
- 3 No, I can't ride one.
- 4 I'm sorry, I haven't got one.
- 5 Yes, there's one in Mill Road.
- 6 No thank you, I've just had one.

69.2

- 2 a new one.
- 3 a better one.
- 4 a big one.
- 5 an old one.
- 6 a different one.

69.3

- 2 B: Which ones?
A: The green ones.
- 3 B: Which one?
A: The one with the red door.

- 4 B: Which one?
A: The black one.
- 5 B: Which ones?
A: The ones on the wall.
- 6 B: Which ones?
A: The ones on the top shelf.
- 7 B: Which one?
A: The tall one with long hair.
- 8 B: Which ones?
A: The yellow ones.
- 9 B: Which one?
A: The one with a moustache and glasses.
- 10 B: Which ones?
A: The ones I took on the beach last week.

Unit 70

70.1

- 3 some
- 4 any
- 5 any
- 6 any
- 7 some
- 8 any
- 9 any . . . some
- 10 any
- 11 some
- 12 any . . . any.
- 13 any . . . some.
- 14 some
- 15 some . . . any
- 16 some

70.2

- 2 any shampoo
- 3 some stamps.
- 4 any foreign languages
- 5 any photographs.
- 6 some problems
- 7 any chairs
- 8 some fresh air.
- 9 any batteries
- 10 some milk
- 11 some friends
- 12 some cheese

70.3

- 2 something

Unit 68

68.1

- 3 this sandwich
- 4 these things
- 5 these children
- 6 this place
- 7 these houses
- 8 these trousers
- 9 that picture

- 3 anything
- 4 anything
- 5 Somebody/Someone
- 6 anything
- 7 anybody/anyone
- 8 something
- 9 anything
- 10 anybody/anyone

Unit 71

71.1

- 2 There are no pictures on the walls.
- 3 Carol has got no free time.
- 4 There is no restaurant in this hotel.
- 6 There isn't any oil in the tank.
- 7 I haven't got any stamps.
- 8 Tom hasn't got any brothers or sisters.

71.2

- 3 any
- 4 no
- 5 any
- 6 any ... any
- 7 no
- 8 no
- 9 any
- 10 any

71.3

- 2 any cigarettes
- 3 no money.
- 4 no swimming-pool.
- 5 any questions.
- 6 no friends.
- 7 no difference
- 8 any photographs ... no him
- 9 any furniture

71.4

If possible, check your answers with someone who speaks English. Here are some example answers:

- 2 Three.
- 3 Two cups.
- 4 None.
- 5 None.

Unit 72

72.1

- 2 There's nobody in the office.
- 3 I've got nothing to do.
- 4 There's nothing on TV tonight.
- 5 Jack has got no-one to help him.
- 6 We found nothing.

72.2

- 2 I haven't got anything to read.
- 3 There isn't anybody in the bathroom.
- 4 We haven't got anything to eat.
- 3 There wasn't anyone on the bus.
- 6 She didn't hear anything.

72.3

- 3 Nothing
- 4 Nobody/No-one
- 5 Nobody/No-one
- 6 Nothing
- 7 Nothing
- 8 Nobody/No-one

- 3a I don't want anything.
- 4a I didn't meet anybody/anyone.
- 3a Nobody/No-one knows the answer.
- 6a I didn't buy anything. I bought nothing.
- 7a Nothing happened.
- 8a Nobody/No-one was late.

72.4

- 3 anything.
- 4 Nobody/No-one
- 5 Nothing
- 6 anything.
- 7 Nobody/No-one knows ... didn't tell anybody/anyone
- 8 Nothing
- 9 anything
- 10 Nothing
- 11 anybody/anyone.
- 12 nobody/no-one

Unit 73

73.1

- 2 something.
- 3 somewhere.
- 4 somebody/someone.
- 6 Nowhere.
- 7 Nothing.
- 8 Nobody/No-one.
- 6a I'm not going anywhere.
- 7a I don't want anything.
- 8a I'm not looking for anybody/any one.

73.2

- 3 anything
- 4 anything *or* anybody/anyone.
- 5 somebody/someone.
- 6 something
- 7 Did **anybody/anyone** see you?' 'No, **nobody/no-one.**'
- 8 anything.
- 9 Nobody/No-one
- 10 anybody/anyone
- 11 Nothing
- 12 anywhere.

73.3

- 2 anything to cat.
- 3 nothing to do / nothing to read / nowhere to go / nowhere to play.
- 4 anywhere to sit.
- 5 something to drink
- 6 somewhere to play / somewhere to go / something to do.
- 7 something to read / something to do
- 8 nowhere to stay.

Unit 74

74.1

- 2 Every day
- 3 Every room
- 4 every time.
- 5 every word.

74.2

- | | |
|---------|----------|
| 3 every | 8 all |
| 4 all | 9 every |
| 5 every | 10 every |
| 6 Every | 11 all |
| 7 all | 12 every |

74.3

- 2 everything
- 3 Everybody/Everyone
- 4 everything
- 5 everywhere
- 6 Everybody/Everyone
- 7 everywhere.
- 8 Everything

74.4

- 2 everybody is tired today.
- 3 everybody likes Mary.
- 4 everybody is going to the party.
- 5 everybody has seen the film.
- 6 everybody was surprised.

In all these sentences you can use 'everyone'. For example (sentence 2):
'Yes, everyone is tired today.'

Unit 75

75.1

- 3 Some people
- 4 Most of the shops
- 5 most banks
- 6 any of the pictures
- 7 all (of) his money
- 8 None of my friends
- 9 any of the people
- 10 Most birds
- 11 most of the film
- 12 Some sports
- 13 All (of) the hotels
- 14 some of this cheese
- 15 most of the time

75.2

- 2 All of them.
- 3 Some of them.

- 4 None of them.
- 5 Most of them.
- 6 Some of them.

75.3

- 2 Most of them.
- 3 All of them.
- 4 All of it.
- 5 Most of them.
- 6 Some of them.
- 7 None of them.
- 8 Most of it.
- 9 Some of them.

Unit 76

76.1

- 3 Both
- 4 Neither
- 3 Neither
- 4 both
- 7 Either
- 8 neither
- 9 Neither
- 10 either
- 11 Both
- 12 neither

76.2

- 2 Both windows are open.
- 3 Neither man is wearing a hat.
- 4 Both men have (got) cameras, or ... are carrying cameras.
- 5 Both buses go to the airport. or ... are going to the airport.
- 6 Neither answer is right.

76.3

- 3 Both of them are students.
- 4 Neither of them has (got) a car.
- 5 Both of them live in London.
- 6 Both of them like fish.
- 7 Neither of them is interested in politics.
- 8 Neither of them can play the piano.
- 9 Both of them smoke.

Unit 77

77.1

- 2 I've got some but not much.
- 3 I've got some but not many.
- 4 I've got some but not many.
- 5 I've got some but not much.
- 6 I've got some but not many.

77.2

- 2 How many stamps did you buy?
- 3 How much money did you lose?
- 4 How much water did you drink?
- 5 How many mistakes did you make?
- 6 How many letters did you write?
- 7 How much food did you buy?
- 8 How many people did you invite?

77.3

- 3 much
- 4 a lot of
- 5 much
- 6 many
- 7 many
- 8 a lot of ... much.
- 9 a lot of
- 10 a lot
- 11 much.
- 12 much.
- 13 many
- 14 much

77.4

- 3 A: Do you go swimming much? 15: No, not much.
- 4 A: Do you play tennis much? B: Yes, a lot.
- 5 A: Do you travel much? B: Yes, a lot.
- 6 A: Do you use the phone much? B: No, not much.

Unit 78

78.1

- 2 A few. 6 A little.
3 A little. 7 A few.
4 A few. 8 A little.
5 A little.

78.2

- 2 a little milk
3 A few days
4 a little Russian.
5 a few friends.
6 A few times.
7 a few houses
8 a little fresh air.
9 a few chairs.

78.3

- 2 very little coffee.
3 very little rain.
4 very few hotels.
5 very little time.
6 very few tables.

78.4

- 2 A few 6 few
3 little 7 a little
4 a little 8 little
5 a few 9 few

79.3

- 2 He doesn't sound American.
3 She doesn't look rich.
4 I don't feel cold.
5 You don't sound English.
6 They don't look friendly.
7 It doesn't taste good.

Unit 80

80.1

- 2 badly
3 quietly
4 angrily
5 dangerously *or* fast
6 fast

80.2

- 2 Come quickly
3 know . . . well.
4 work hard.
5 sleep well
6 win easily.
7 Think carefully
8 explain . . . clearly.

80.3

- 2 angry
3 careful . . . carefully
4 slowly
5 slow
6 good
7 well
8 hard
9 suddenly
10 well
11 well (= not ill - *adjective*)
12 quickly
13 nice
14 badly
15 quiet

Unit 81

81.1

- 2 bigger
3 slower
4 more expensive
5 higher
6 more dangerous

81.2

- 2 stronger
3 happier
4 more careful
5 more important
6 worse
7 more difficult
8 larger
9 further
10 more serious
11 more crowded
12 prettier

81.3

- 2 hotter/warmer
3 dearer / more expensive
4 worse
5 further
6 more difficult

81.4

- 3 taller.
4 harder.
5 more comfortable.
6 better.
7 nicer.
8 heavier.
9 more interested
10 warmer
11 better.
12 bigger.
13 more beautiful..
14 sharper
15 more polite.

Unit 79

79.1

- 2 black clouds
3 long holiday.
4 interesting person.
5 dangerous job.
6 fresh air.
7 old photograph *or*
interesting photograph
8 serious problem
9 sharp knife
10 expensive hotels.

79.2

- 2 It looks new.
3 I feel ill.
4 You look surprised.
5 They smell nice.
6 It tastes awful.

Unit 82

82.1

- 3 Liz is taller than Ben.
4 Liz starts work earlier than Ben.
5 Ben works harder than Liz.
6 Ben has got more money than Liz.
7 Liz is a better driver than Ben.
8 Ben is friendlier than Liz. / Ben is more friendly than Liz.
9 Ben is a better dancer than Liz.
10 Liz is more intelligent than Ben.

- 11 Liz speaks French better than Ben. / Liz speaks better French than Ben. / Liz's French is better than Ben's.
- 12 Ben goes to the cinema more than Liz (does). / Ben goes to the cinema more often than Liz (does).

82.2

- 2 You're older than her. / ... than she is.
- 3 You work harder than me. / ... than I do. / ... than I work.
- 4 You smoke more than him. / ... than he does. / ... than he smokes.
- 5 You're a better cook than me. / ... than I am.
- 6 You know more people than us. / ... than we do. / ... than we know.
- 7 You've got more money than them. / ... than they have.
- 8 You can run faster than me. / ... than I can.
- 9 You've been here longer than her. / ... than she has.
- 10 You got up earlier than me. / ... than I did. / ... than I got up.
- 11 You're more interesting than him. / ... than he is.

82.3

- 2 Jack's mother is much younger than his father.
- 3 My camera cost a bit more than yours. / ... than your camera, *or* My camera was a bit more expensive than yours. / ... than your camera.
- 4 I feel much better today than yesterday. / I feel much better today than I did yesterday. / I feel much better today than I felt yesterday.
- 5 It's a bit warmer today than yesterday. / It's a bit warmer today than it was yesterday.

- 6 Ann is a much better tennis player than me. / ... than I am. *or* Ann is much better at tennis than me. / ... than I am. *or* Ann plays tennis much better than me. / ... than I do.

Unit 83

83.1

- 2 A is longer than B but not as long as C.
- 3 C is heavier than A but not as heavy as B.
- 4 A is older than C but not as old as B.
- 5 B has got more money than C but not as much (money) as A. *or* ... but less (money) than A.
- 6 C works harder than A but not as hard as B.

83.2

- 2 Your room isn't as big as mine. / ... as big as my room.
- 3 I didn't get up as early as you (did). / ... as early as you got up.
- 4 They didn't play as well as us. / ... as well as we did. / ... as well as we played.
- 5 You haven't been here as long as me. / ... as long as I have (been here).

83.3

- | | |
|--------|--------|
| 2 as | 6 than |
| 3 than | 7 as |
| 4 than | 8 than |
| 5 as | |

83.4

- 2 Julia lives in the same street as Caroline.
- 3 Julia got up at the same time as Andrew.
- 4 Andrew's car is the same colour as Caroline's (car).

Unit 84

84.1

- 2 C is longer than A.
D is the longest.
B is the shortest.
- 3 D is younger than C.
B is the youngest.
C is the oldest.
- 4 D is more expensive than A.
C is the most expensive.
A is the cheapest.
- 5 A is better than C.
A is the best.
D is the worst.

84.2

- 2 Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
- 3-6 Alaska is the largest state in the USA.
Brazil is the largest country in South America.
Jupiter is the largest planet in the solar system.
The Nile is the longest river in Africa.

84.3

- 2 the happiest day
- 3 the best film
- 4 the most popular singer
- 3 the worst mistake
- 6 the prettiest village
- 7 the coldest day
- 8 the most interesting person

Unit 85

85.1

- 3 enough paint.
- 4 big enough.
- 5 long enough.
- 6 enough chairs.
- 7 enough wind.
- 8 strong enough.

85.2

- 3 old enough.
- 4 enough time

- 5 big enough
- 6 eat enough.
- 7 enough fruit
- 8 tired enough.
- 9 enough clothes
- 10 practise enough.

85.3

- 2 old enough to get married.
- 3 warm enough to sit in the garden.
- 4 enough bread to make sandwiches.
- 5 enough money to go on holiday.
- 6 well enough to go to work (today).

Unit 86

86.1

- | | |
|-------------|----------------|
| 2 too high. | 5 too big. |
| 3 too hot. | 6 too crowded. |
| 4 too fast. | |

86.2

- | | |
|------------|------------|
| 3 enough | 6 enough |
| 4 enough | 7 too many |
| 5 too much | |

86.3

- 3 It's too far.
- 4 It's too expensive.
- 5 It isn't big enough.
- 6 It wasn't warm enough.
- 7 I'm too busy.
- 8 It isn't sharp enough.

86.4

- 2 It's too early to go to bed.
- 3 It's too warm to wear a coat.
- 4 They're too young to get married.
- 5 It's too dangerous to go out at night.
- 6 It's too late to phone Ann (now).
- 7 They were too surprised to say anything.

Unit 87

87.1

- 2 I don't like football very much.
- 3 I lost my watch last week.
- 4 Tom read the letter slowly.
- 5 Do you know London very well?
- 6 We ate our dinner very quickly.
- 7 Did you buy that jacket in England?
- 8 I don't speak French very well.
- 9 They crossed the street carefully.
- 10 I borrowed £50 from my brother.
- 11 We enjoyed the party very much.
- 12 Ann passed the examination easily.
- 13 We do the same thing every day.
- 14 I don't like this picture very much.
- 15 The woman put the money in her bag.
- 16 Did you watch the news on television?
- 17 I explained my plan carefully.
- 18 She smokes ten cigarettes every day.
- 19 I did a lot of housework yesterday.
- 20 We met some friends at the concert.
- 21 You wear the same clothes every day.
- 22 I want to speak English fluently.

87.2

- 2 We arrived at the party early.
- 3 I didn't go to work yesterday.
- 4 Are you going to work tomorrow?
- 5 They have lived here since 1984.
- 6 Will you be at home this evening?

- 7 They are going to London next week.
- 8 Did you go to the cinema last night?
- 9 Will they be here on Monday?
- 10 Jill goes to Italy every year.
- 11 Alice was born in London in 1951.
- 12 I had my breakfast in bed this morning.
- 13 Barbara is going to university in October.
- 14 My parents have been to the United States many times.
- 15 I saw a beautiful bird in the garden this morning.
- 16 I think I left my umbrella in the restaurant last night.

Unit 88

88.1

- 2 He sometimes smokes.
- 3 He is often ill.
- 4 He never eats fish.
- 5 He is always late for work.
- 6 He very rarely writes letters, or He seldom writes letters.

88.2

- 2 Susan is always polite.
- 3 I usually finish work at half past five.
- 4 Jill has just started a new job.
- 5 I rarely go to bed before midnight.
- 6 The bus isn't usually late.
- 7 I don't often eat meat.
- 8 I will never forget what you said.
- 9 Have you ever broken your leg?
- 10 Do you still work in the same place?
- 11 They always stay in the same hotel.
- 12 Diane doesn't usually work on Saturdays.
- 13 I can never remember his name.
- 14 What do you usually have for breakfast?

- 15 When I arrived, Jan was already there.

88.3

- 2 Yes, and I also speak French.
3 Yes, and I'm also hungry.
4 Yes, and I've also been to Ireland.
5 Yes, and I also bought some books.

88.4

- 2 They both like football.
3 They are both students.
4 They have both got cars. / They both have cars.
5 They are all married.
6 They were all born in England.
7 They all live in New York.

Unit 89

89.1

- 2 Do you still smoke?
3 Are you still a student?
4 Do you still go to the cinema a lot?
5 Have you still got a motor-bike? / Do you still have a motor-bike?
6 Do you still play tennis?

89.2

- 2 Is Ann here yet? / Has Ann arrived yet? / Has Ann come yet?
3 Have you finished (reading the newspaper) yet? / Have you finished with the newspaper yet?
4 Are you ready (to go out) yet?
5 Have you decided (where you're going) yet? / Do you know where you're going yet?

89.3

- 2 They were waiting for the bus.

They're still waiting for the bus.

The bus hasn't come yet.

- 3 He was looking for a job.
He's still looking for a job.
He hasn't found a job yet.
4 She was asleep. / She was in bed.
She's still asleep. / She's still in bed.
She hasn't woken up yet. / She isn't awake yet. / She hasn't got up yet. / She isn't up yet.
5 They were having dinner. / They were eating.
They're still having dinner. / They're still eating.
They haven't finished (their) dinner yet. / They haven't finished eating yet.

Unit 90

90.1

- 2 He gave the TV set to Jack.
3 He gave the books to his sister.
4 He gave the cassettes to a friend.
5 He gave the radio to his cousin.
6 He gave the lamp to Sarah.

90.2

- 2 I gave Alice a box of chocolates / some chocolates.
3 I gave Mark a pair of gloves / some gloves.
4 I gave Jane a watch.
5 I gave Kevin a pen.
6 I gave Mary some flowers.

90.3

- 2 Can you lend me an umbrella? / your umbrella?
3 Can you give me my coat?
4 Can you lend Mary a bicycle? / your bicycle?
5 Can you send Tom some information?

- 6 Can you show me the letter?
7 Can you lend them £100?

90.4

- 2 Yes, can you give it to me, please?
3 Yes, can you give them to me, please?
4 Yes, can you give it to me, please?
5 Yes, can you give it to me, please?
6 Yes, can you give them to me, please?

Unit 91

91.1

3 on	9 in	16 on
4 at	10 at	17 at
5 in	11 on	18 at
6 in	12 in	19 at
7 on	14 in	20 on
8 on	15 on	21 at

91.2

2 on	9 in	16 at
3 at	10 at	17 in
4 in	11 on	18 in
5 in	12 in	19 at
6 in	13 at	20 at
7 on	14 in	
8 on	15 on	

91.3

- 2 I'll phone you in three days.
3 My exam is in two weeks.
4 Tom will be here in half an hour. / ... in 30 minutes.

91.4

- 3 in
4 (no preposition)
5 (JO preposition)
6 at
7 (no preposition)
8 (no preposition)
9 on
10 (no preposition)
11 at
12 in

Unit 92

92.1

- 2 Alex lived in Canada **until** 1985.
- 3 Alex has lived in England **since** 1985.
- 4 Alice lived in France **until** 1986.
- 5 Alice has lived in Switzerland **since** 1986.
- 6 Carol worked in a hotel **from** 1985 **to** 1988. / . . . **from** 1985 **until** 1988.
- 7 Carol has worked in a restaurant **since** 1988.
- 8 Gerry was a teacher **from** 1978 **to** 1984. / . . . **from** 1978 **until** 1984.
- 9 Gerry has been a salesman **since** 1984.
- 11 Alex has lived in England for . . . years.
- 12 Alice has lived in Switzerland for . . . years.
- 13 Carol worked in a hotel for three years.
- 14 Carol has worked in a restaurant for . . . years.
- 15 Gerry was a teacher for six years.
- 16 Gerry has been a salesman for . . . years.

92.2

- | | |
|---------|----------|
| 2 until | 9 since |
| 3 for | 10 until |
| 4 Since | 11 for |
| 5 Until | 12 until |
| 6 for | 13 Since |
| 7 for | 14 for |
| 8 until | |

Unit 93

93.1

- 2 after lunch
- 3 before the end.
- 4 during the course.
- 5 before they went to Australia.
- 6 during the night
- 7 after the concert
- 8 before you cross the road.

93.2

- | | |
|----------|----------|
| 3 while | 6 while |
| 4 while | 7 during |
| 5 during | 8 while |

93.3

- 2 Think carefully before answering the question.
- 3 Mary put on her glasses before reading the letter.
- 4 Before getting into the car, the man took off his coat.
- 5 We were very tired after walking for three hours.
- 6 I felt sick after eating too much chocolate.
- 7 After reading the book a second time, I understood it better, *or* I understood the book better after reading it a second time.
- 8 After leaving school, John worked in a department store for two years, *or* John worked in a department store for two years after leaving school.

Unit 94

94.1

- 2 in a box.
- 3 at the airport.
- 4 in bed.
- 5 at the end of the street.
- 6 in the sky.
- 7 in hospital.
- 8 at a party.

94.2

- 2 in that field.
- 3 in the river
- 4 in my tea
- 5 in this book
- 6 in this photograph

94.3

- | | |
|---------------|-------|
| 2 at | 10 at |
| 3 at . . . at | 11 in |
| 4 in | 12 at |
| 5 in | 13 at |
| 6 at | 14 in |
| 7 at | 15 at |
| 8 In | 16 in |
| 9 in | |

Unit 95

95.1

- 2 to bed.
- 3 to the bank
- 4 to a concert / to the cinema.
- 5 to France
- 6 to the cinema
- 7 to hospital

95.2

- | | |
|---------------|-------|
| 2 to | 9 in |
| 3 to | 10 to |
| 4 in | 11 in |
| 5 to | 12 in |
| 6 in | 13 to |
| 7 in . . . in | 14 in |
| 8 to | |

95.3

- 2 to
- 3 to
- 4 at
- 5 at
- 6 to
- 7 at *or* in a restaurant . . . to the hotel
- 8 (*no preposition*)
- 9 at
- 10 to . . . at
- 11 (*no preposition*)
- 12 to
- 13 at
- 14 (*no preposition*)
- 15 to

- 16 at
17 at
18 at

Unit 96

96.1

- 2 on the beach.
3 on this plant
4 on the door.
5 on his finger.
6 on a bicycle.

96.2

- 2 behind
3 above
4 in front of
5 on
6 opposite
7 below *or* under
8 above
9 under
10 on

96.3

- 2 on
3 between
4 on ... next to
5 above
6 above ... below

96.4

- 2 on the right.
3 in the middle.
4 behind
5 in front of
6 next to / beside

Unit 97

97.1

- 2 Go under the bridge.
3 Go up the hill.
4 Go down the stairs.
5 Go along the street.
6 Go into the hotel.
7 Go past the hotel.
8 Go to the station.
9 Go round the corner.
10 Go across the road.
11 Go over the bridge.
12 Go through the park.

97.2

- 2 off
3 over
4 out of *or* through
5 through
6 out of
7 into
8 round

97.3

- 2 in
3 on *or* over
4 out of *or* from
5 through ... into
6 out of *or* through
7 round
8 over
9 on

Unit 98

98.1

- 2 by
3 with
4 about ... by
5 by
6 by
7 with
8 about
9 by
10 at

98.2

- | | |
|-------------|------------|
| 2 By ... on | 12 by |
| 3 at | 13 at |
| 4 without | 14 with |
| 5 with | 15 without |
| 6 by | 16 by |
| 7 about | 17 about |
| 8 by | 18 with |
| 9 with | 19 by |
| 10 at | 20 with |
| 11 about | 21 at |
| | 22 by |

Unit 99

99.1

- 2 in 5 on
3 to 6 with
4 of

99.2

- | | |
|---------|---------|
| 2 of | 9 of |
| 3 to | 10 on |
| 4 on | 11 of |
| 5 at | 12 in |
| 6 on | 13 from |
| 7 about | 14 for |
| 8 on | |

99.3

- 2 at remembering
3 in going.
4 with wearing
5 for getting
7 without stopping.
8 without speaking.
9 without asking

Unit 100

100.1

- 2 to 5 at
3 for 6 for
4 to

100.2

- | | |
|------------|------------------------------|
| 2 to | 12 (<i>no preposition</i>) |
| 3 to | 13 to |
| 4 for | 14 on |
| 5 to | 15 about/of |
| 6 about/of | 16 at |
| 7 for | 17 after |
| 8 on | 18 for |
| 9 to | 19 after |
| 10 for | 20 at |
| 11 to | 21' for |

100.3

- 2 It depends how I feel, *or* It depends on how ...
3 It depends what time I leave, *or* It depends on what time ...
4 It depends how much it is. *or* It depends on how much ...

Unit 101

101.1

- | | |
|------------|--------|
| 2 in | 6 off |
| 3 up | 7 down |
| 4 away/off | 8 out |
| 5 round | |

101.2

- 2 away/out
3 round.
4 out . . . back
5 down
6 away . . . back
7 over/down.
8 back

101.3

- | | |
|------------|--------------|
| 2 got up | 6 washi up. |
| 3 breaks | 7 slowed |
| down | down |
| 4 speak up | 8 takes off. |
| 5 Hold on | 9 carried on |
| | 10 gave up |

Unit 102

102.1

- 2 He put on his shirt.
He put his shirt on.
He put it on.
- 3 She put on her glasses.
She put her glasses on.
She put them on.
- 4 **Can you turn on the TV?**
Can you turn the TV on?
Can you turn it on?
- 5 She rang up her brother.
She rang her brother up.
She rang him up.
- 6 **We took off our shoes.**
We took our shoes off.
We took them off.
- 7 They gave back the money.
They gave the money back.
They gave it back.
- 8 She put down her bags.
She put her bags down.
She put them down.

9 I switched on the engine.

I switched the engine on.

I switched it on.

10 She filled in the form.

She filled the form in.

She filled it in.

11 We put out the fire.

We put the fire out.

We put it out.

102.2

- 3 (turned) on the radio /
(turned) the radio on.
4 (give) them back
5 (put) down my book / (put)
my book down
6 (picked) it up.
7 (put) on my gloves / (put)
my gloves on.
8 (took) off my jacket / (took)
my jacket off.
9 (brought) them back
10 (picked) up the photograph
/ (picked) the photograph up
. . . (put) it back / (put) it
down
11 (knocked) over a glass /
(knocked) a glass over
12 (look) it up
13 (throw) them away.
14 (knocked) me out /
(knocked) me down /
(knocked) me over.
15 (put) out your cigarette /
(put) your cigarette out
16 (turn) it down
17 (tried) on some shoes /
(tried) some shoes on
18 (showed) us round.
19 (crossed) it out.
20 (gave) it up

Unit 103

103.1

- 3 and (she) looked out.
4 but he didn't see me.
5 and (she) swam to the other
side.
6 or did you stay at home
7 and (they) took some
photographs.
8 but they don't use it very
often.

9 but I can't remember his
name.

10 and don't come back!

11 or do you want to get a
taxi

103.2

- 3 so I walked in.
4 because she was ill.
3 because she's friendly and
interesting.
6 so we didn't play tennis.
7 so we walked home.
8 because I couldn't sleep.
9 so don't phone me.
10 because they haven't got a
key.
11 because she does the same
thing all the time.

103.3

If possible, check your answers
with someone who speaks
English. Here are some
example answers:

- 3 *see example 1*
4 I wrote a letter but I didn't
post it.
5 I was tired, so I went to bed
early.
6 *see example 2*

Unit 104

104.1

- 2-7 When I'm tired, I like
watching TV.
When I phoned them,
there was no answer.
When she first met him,
she didn't like him very
much.
When she goes to London,
she always stays at the
same hotel.
When the programme
ended, I switched off the
TV.
When they arrived at the
hotel, there were no
rooms free.

104.2

- 2 when you heard the news
- 3 before he answered the question.
- 4 when I explained it to her.
- 5 after they got married.
- 6 while I was out
- 7 while I was reading.
- 8 before I go to sleep.

104.3

- 2 I finish
- 3 We'll come . . . we're
- 4 I see . . . I'll show
- 5 you go
- 6 stops
- 7 I'll be . . . she leaves
- 8 I'm
- 9 I'll give . . . I go

Unit 105**105.1**

- 2 If I can get a flight, I'll fly home on Sunday.
- 3-5 If you come home late tonight, please come in quietly.
If I don't feel well tomorrow. I'm not going to work.
If you have any problems, I'll try to help you.

105.2

- 2 It will be nice if you can come to the party.
- 3-5 You'll be cold if you don't wear a coat.
What are you going to do if you don't pass your examinations?
I'm sure they'll understand it if you explain the problem to them.

105.3

- 2 is
- 3 we arrive
- 4 is
- 5 I'll be . . . they get
- 6 Will you go . . . they invite

105.4

- | | |
|--------|--------|
| 2 If | 5 If |
| 3 if | 6 When |
| 4 When | 7 If |

Unit 106**106.1**

- 2 A butcher is a person who sells meat.
- 3 A musician is a person who plays a musical instrument.
- 4 A patient is a person who is ill in hospital.
- 5-9 A photographer is a person who takes photographs.
A dentist is a person who looks after your teeth.
A fool is a person who is very stupid.
A genius is a person who is very intelligent.
A liar is a person who doesn't tell the truth.

106.2

- 2 The woman who opened the door was wearing a yellow dress.
- 3 The people who live next door to us are very nice.
- 4 The policeman who stopped our car wasn't very friendly.
- 5 The boy who broke the window ran away.

106.3

- | | |
|---------|------------|
| 2 who | (or that) |
| 3 that | (or which) |
| 4 who | (or that) |
| 5 who | (or that) |
| 6 that | (or which) |
| 7 that | (or which) |
| 8 who | (or that) |
| 9 that | (or which) |
| 10 who | (or that) |
| 11 that | (or which) |
| 12 that | (or which) |

Unit 107**107.1**

- 2 Did you find the key you lost?"
- 3 I like the jacket Jill is wearing.
- 4 Where is the money I gave you?
- 5 I didn't believe the story she told us.
- 6 How much were the oranges you bought?

107.2

- 2 The shoes I'm wearing are not very comfortable.
- 3 What's the name of the book you're reading?
- 4 She didn't get the letter I wrote to her.
- 5 I've lost the umbrella you gave me.
- 6 The people they invited to dinner didn't come.

107.3

- 2 What's the name of the woman you spoke to?
- 3 The house they live in is too small for them.
- 4 Did you enjoy the party you went to?
- 5 The chair I was sitting on wasn't very comfortable.
- 6 The map we looked at wasn't very clear.
- 7 Did you find the book you were looking for?
- 8 Who is the man Linda is dancing with?

107.4

- 2 What's the name of the restaurant where we had dinner?
- 3 Have you ever been to the village where they live?
- 4 The factory where John works is the biggest in the town.

INDEX

The numbers are unit numbers,
not page numbers.

a/an 59

a and *some* 61-2
a/an and *the* 63

about 98

above 96

across 97

adjectives 79

adjectives and adverbs
{*quick/quickly*} 80
comparatives (*older I more
expensive*) 81-3
superlatives (*the oldest I the
most expensive*) 84
adjectives + preposition
(*afraid of etc.*) 99
get + adjective (*get tired etc.*)
51
possessive adjectives
(*my/your/her etc.*) 54

adverbs 80

word order (*always/usually/
also etc.*) 88

advise (*advise somebody to . . .*) 48

afraid (of) 99

after 93, 104

ago 18

all

all (of) 75
all and *every* etc. 74
word order 88

along 97

also (word order) 88

always

always + present simple 5
word order 88

am/is/are 1-2

am/is/are -ing (present
continuous) 3-4, 34
there is/there are 31

an see a

and 103

another 59

any 70-3, 75

any (of) 75

any and *some* 70

not + *any* 71

any and *no* 71

anybody/any one/anything 72-3
anywhere 73

apostrophe (*I'm, it's* etc.)

Appendix 3

apostrophe 's (*my brother's car*) 58

are see am/is/are

around 97

arrive 95

articles (*a/an/the*) 59-67

a/an 59, 61-2
a/an and *the* 63
the 64-7

as 83

ask

ask somebody to . . . 48
ask somebody for . . . 100

at

at 8 o'clock I at night etc. 91
at the bus-stop I at work etc. 94
at and to 95
at the age of . . . 98

auxiliary verbs 35, 37-9

away

run away I throw away etc.
(phrasal verbs) 101-2,
Appendix 6

back

come back /give back etc.
(phrasal verbs) 101-2

bad (*at*) 99

be (infinitive of *am/is/are*)

am/is/are 1-2
am/is/are -ing (present
continuous) 3-4, 34-5
was/were 11
was/were -ing (past
continuous) 12, 34-5
have/has been (present perfect)
15-17, 35
will be 23

because 103

been

have/has been 15-17, 35

been and *gone* 16

there has/have been 32

before 93, 104

begin (*begin to . . . or begin -ing*) 47

behind 96

belong (*to*) 100

below 96

beside 96

best 84

better 81

between 96

bit (*a bit older I a bit bigger* etc.) 82

born 20

both

both (of) 76
word order 88

but 103

by 98

by after the passive (*/ was
bitten by a dog.*) 20
by myself/ by yourself etc. 57

can/can't 25

comparative (*older / more expensive* etc.) 81-3

conditional (*if . . .*) 105

conjunctions 103-5

and/but/or/so/because 103
when/before/while/after/until
104 ' 105

continue (*continue to . . . or continue -ing*) 47

contractions (short forms - *I'm, it's, you've* etc.) Appendix 3

could/couldn't 25

countable and **uncountable** nouns 61-2

decide (*decide to . . .*) 47

depend (*depend on*) 100

did 34-5, 37

didn't in negatives 10, 40
did in questions 10, 41

different (*from*) 99

- direct speech** and reported speech 49
- do/does** 34-5, 37
do/does in questions 7, 41
don't/doesn't in negatives 6, 40
- down** 97
sit down /put down etc. (phrasal verbs) 101-2, Appendices 5-6
- during** 93
- each other** 57
- either**
cither (of) 76
either and too 39
- embedded questions** (*Do you know what . . . ?* etc.) 46
- end** (of the end of) 91, 94
- enjoy**
enjoy-ing 47
enjoy myself/yourself etc. 57
- enough** 85
enough and too 86
- ever**
Have you ever . . . ? 16
 superlative + *ever* 84
 word order 88
- every** 74
- every body/every one/ everything/everywhere** 74
- expect** 47-8
- far**
How far is it? 33
far → *further* 81
- fast** 80'
- fed up (ux'rt)** 99
- few / a few** 78
- finish** (*finish -in%*) 47
- for**
for ten minutes / for three years etc. 18, 92
for, since and *ago* 18
go for a walk etc. 52
for and *to . . .* (infinitive) 50
- forget (to . . .)** 47
- from** 92, 97
- front** (*in front of*) 96
- further** 81
- future** 21-4
I'm working tomorrow. (present continuous) 21
- The concert starts at 7.30. (present simple) 21
am/is/are going to 11
will 23-4
shall 23-4
 future after *ndien/while/before* etc. 104
 future after *if* 105
- geographical names** with and without *the* 67
- gerund** see **-ing**
gel in/out/on/off 51, 101
get up Appendix 5
- give**
give something to somebody I give somebody something 90
give up /give back etc. (phrasal verbs) 101-2, Appendices 5-6
- go** 52
go home /go to work /go to the cinema 65
go -ing (go swimming etc.) 52
go in /go back etc. (phrasal verbs) 101
- going to** (*am/is/are going to . . .*) 22
- gone and been** 16
- good**
good at 99
good and well 80
- got**
 past of *get* 9, 51
have/has got 14
- had**
 past of *have* 10, 14
had to 27, 29
- happen** {to} 100
- hard** 80
- hate** 47
- have/has**
have/has (got) 14
have done / have been etc. (present perfect) 15-19, 35
have/hasIliad to 29
- help** 48
- her** 53-4, 56
- hers** 55, 56
- herself** 57
- him** 53, 56
- himself** 57
- his** 54-6
- holiday** (*on holiday*) 52, 99
- hope** (*to . . .*) 47
- home**
go home I be at home etc. 52, 65, 94-5
get home 51
- how** 44
how big? I how old? I how far etc. 44
How long have you. . . ? (present perfect) 17
How long does it take? 45
how much? I how many?" 77
- I/you/he/she** etc. (personal pronouns) 53, 56
- if** 105
if and when 105
Do you know if . . . ? 46
- in**
in April I in summer etc. 91
in a room I in a park etc. 94
in five minutes I in three years 'etc. 91
in and to 95
put something in 97
go in I fill in etc. (phrasal verbs) 101-2, Appendix 6
- infinitive** (*do/play/see* etc.)
do/play/see and *to do I to play / to see* 34, 48
can /will / should etc. + infinitive 34
 verbs + *to* + infinitive (7 *want to go*) 34, 47-8
 infinitive and *-ing* (*do/doing* etc.) 34,-47
I went to the shop to buy . . . 50
 infinitive and *for . . .* 50
 adjective + infinitive (*it's easy to . . .*) 33
something to eat / nowhere to go etc.) 73
- ing** (*doing/playing/going* etc.)
am/is/are -ing (present continuous) 3-4, 21, 34-5
was/were -ing (past continuous) 12, 34-5
 verbs + *-ing* (*enjoy -ing* etc.) 47
-ing and infinitive (*do/doing* etc.) 34, 47

- prepositions + -ing 93, 99
 go -ing (go swimming etc.) 52
interested (in) 99
into 97
irregular verbs 9, 36,
 Appendices 1-2
is see am/is/are
it 33, 53
it is and there is 31, 33
it's and its 54
its 54
- just** (word order) 88
- kind** (*kind to somebody I kind of*
somebody) 99
know (*Do you know where. . . ?*)
 46
- learn** (*to . . .*) 47
left (*on the left*) 96
lend (*lend something to somebody*)
 90
less 82
let 48
like (*What is it like?*¹) 43
like (verb)
like -ing 47
would like 30, 47
do you like? and *would you*
like? 30
listen (to) 100
little / a little 78
look
look + adjective (look tired
etc.) 79
look at/for/after 100
lot (a lot) 77
love 47
- make** (*make somebody do*
something) 48
many
many and much 77
not as many (as) 83
too many 86
married (to) 99
may 26
me/you/him etc. (personal
 pronouns) 53,
 56
middle (*in the middle of*) 96
might 26
- mind** (*I don't mind -ing*) 47
mine/yours/hers etc.
 (possessive pronouns)
 55-6
modal verbs (*will/can/might*
 etc.) 23-30, 34
more 81-2
most
most (of) 75
the most expensive I the most
difficult etc. 84
much
much and many 77
much bigger / much more
expensive etc. 82
not as much (as) 83
too much 86
must 27
mustn't 27
must and should 28
must and have to 29
my/your/his etc.
 (possessive adjectives) 54,
 56
myself/yourself etc. (reflexive
 pronouns) 57
- need**
need to . . . 47
needn't 27
negatives 40
neither
Neither am I / Neither do I etc.
 39
neither (of) 76
never
/ never go (never + present
simple) 5
/ have never . . . (present
perfect 4- never) 16
 word order 88
next to 96
nice (*nice to somebody / nice of*
somebody) 99
no (*no money / no friends*
 etc.) 71, 75
nobody/no-one/nothing
 72-3
none (*of*) 71, 75
nor (*Nor am I I Nor do I*
 etc.) 39
nouns (countable and
 uncountable) 61-2
nowhere 73
- of**
the roof of the building etc. 58
the . . . of... 67
off 97
get off / turn off etc. (phrasal
 verbs) 101-2, Appendices
 5-6
offer (to ...) 47
often
I often go (often + present
simple) 5
 word order 88
on
on Monday / on 25 April
 etc. 91
on the table / on the wall
 etc. 96-7
(on holiday / on television / on
fire etc. 99
go on holiday / a trip etc. 52
gel on / put on etc. (phrasal
 verbs) 101-2, Appendices
 5-6
one/ones 69
opposite 96
or 103
ought to 28
our 54, 56
ours 55-6
ourselves 57
out
out of 97
go out I put out etc. (phrasal
 verbs) 101-2, Appendices
 5-6
over 97
climb over / knock over etc.
 (phrasal verbs) 101-2,
 Appendix 6
- pair** (*a pair of . . .*) 60
passive 20, 35
past (preposition) 97
past continuous (*was/were*
-ing) 12, 34-5
past continuous (I was doing)
and past simple (I did) 13
past participle
(cleaned/done/spoken
etc.) 36
present perfect (/ have
cleaned) 15, 35
passive (the room was
cleaned) 20, 35

- regular (*cleaned*) and irregular (*spoken*) 36, Appendices 1-2
- past simple** (*did/watched/saw* etc.) 9-10
- negative (*didn't*) 10, 40
- questions (*did. . . ?*) 10, 41
- regular and irregular verbs 9, 36, Appendices 1-2
- was/were* 11
- past simple + *ago* 18
- past simple (7 *did*) and present perfect (7 *have done*) 19
- past simple (/ *did*) and past continuous (7 *was doing*) 13
- past simple passive (*the room was cleaned*) 20, 35
- had* (past of *have*) 14
- people** 60
- personal pronouns** (*I/me/you* etc.) 53, 56
- persuade** (*persuade somebody to . . .*) 48
- phrasal verbs** (*get up I put on* etc.) 101-2, Appendices 5-6
- plural** (*cup* → *cups/man* → *men* etc.) 60
- police** 60
- possessive adjectives** (*my/your/his* etc.) 54, 56
- possessive pronouns** (*mine/yours/his* etc.) 55-6
- prefer** 47
- prepositions** 91-100
- at/on/in* (time) 91
- for/since* 18, 92
- until* 92
- before/during/after/wh* *He* 93
- w/tff* (places) 94
- to/in/at* (places) 95
- on* 91, 96-7, 99
- at* 91, 94-5, 98
- prepositions of position (*on/under/behind* etc.) 96
- prepositions of movement (*up/over/through* etc.) 97
- by* 98
- with/without* 98-9
- about 98
- words + preposition (*afraid of* etc.) 99
- verbs + preposition (*listen to / wait for* etc.) 100
- prepositions + *-ing* (*in -ing I without -ing* etc.) 99
- prepositions at the end (*Who is she talking to?*) 43
- prepositions in relative clauses (*the man she is talking to*) 107
- present continuous** (*am/is/are -ing*) 3-4, 34-5
- negative (*I'm not -ing*) 3
- questions (*are you -ing?*) 4
- present continuous (/ *am doing*) and present simple (7 *do*) 8
- present continuous for the future (*What are you doing tomorrow?*) 21
- present perfect** (/ *have done*) 15-19, 35
- Have you ever. . . ?* 16
- gone* and *limi* 16
- How long have you. . . ?* 17
- present perfect 4-*for/since* 17-18
- present perfect (7 *have done*) and past simple (7 *did*) 19
- present perfect continuous (7 *have been -ing*) 17
- present perfect + *yet* 89
- regular and irregular verbs 15, 36, Appendices 1-2
- present simple** (7 *do / I watch / I like* etc.) 5-7
- negative (*don't/doesn't*) 6, 40
- questions (*do . . . ? I does . . . ?*) 7, 41
- present simple + *always I usually/never* etc. 5
- present simple (7 *do*) and present continuous (7 *am doing*) 8
- present simple passive (*the room is cleaned*) 20, 35
- present simple for the future (*The concert begins at 7.30.*) 21
- present simple after *when* and *if* 104-5
- pronouns**
- personal pronouns (*I/me/you* etc.) 53, 56
- possessive pronouns (*mine/yours* etc.) 55-6
- reflexive pronouns (*myself/yourself* etc.) 57
- relative pronouns (*who/that/which*) 106-7
- one/ones** 69
- put**
- put something in . . .* 97
- put on I put out* etc. (phrasal verbs) 102, Appendix 6
- questions 41-6**
- am/is/are. . . ?* 2
- do ...?/ does . . . ?* (present simple) 7, 41
- did . . . ?* (past simple) 10, 41
- Who saw you? I Who did you see?* 42
- preposition at the end (*Who is she talking to?*) 43
- What ...?/ Which ...? I How . . . ?* 44
- Why don't . . . ? I Why isn't . . . ?* etc. 41
- How long does it take?* 45
- reply questions (*Have you? / Are you?* etc.) 38
- question tags (*. . . do you? I . . . isn't it?* etc.) 38
- Do you know where . . . ?* (embedded questions) 46
- reflexive pronouns** (*myself/yourself* etc.) 57
- regular and irregular verbs** 9, 36, Appendices 1-2
- relative clauses** 106-7
- relative pronouns** (*who/which/that*) 106-7
- reply questions** (*Have you? I Are you?* etc.) 38
- reported speech** (*He said that . . . I He told me that . . .*) 49
- right** (*on the right*) 96
- round** 97
- turn round / show round* etc. (phrasal verbs) 101-2, Appendix 6
- 's (apostrophe 's)** 58, Appendix 3

same 64, 83

say/said

he said that . . . (reported speech) 49

say and tell 49

shall 23-4

short forms (*I'm / it's / you've* etc.) Appendix 3

should 28

simple past / simple present

see **past simple / present simple**

since 18, 92

singular and plural (*a flower* → *some flowers*) 60

so

so am I / so do I etc. 39

so (I was tired, so I went to bed.) 103

some

some (of) 75

some and a/an 61-2

some and any 70

somebody/someone/something/somewhere 73

sometimes

sometimes + present simple 5
word order 88

sorry (*sorry about* and *sorry for*) 99

speak (to) 100

spelling Appendix 4

start (*start to do* or *start -ing*) 47

still 89

word order 88

stop (*stop -ing*) 47

suggest (*suggest -ing*) 47

superlative (*the biggest I the most expensive* etc.) 84

tags (question tags) 38

take (*It takes . . . I How long does it take?*) 45

talk (to) 100

tell/told

He told me to . . . 48

He told me that . . . 49

tell and say 49

Can you tell me where . . . ? 46

tenses

present continuous (*/ am doing*) 3-5, 34-35

present simple (*I do*) 5-8, 35

past simple (*I did*) 9-10, 13, 19, 35

past continuous (*/ was doing*) 12-13, 34-35

present perfect (*/ have done*) 15-19, 35

than 82-3

that

that and *this* 68

He said that . . . / He told me that . . . (reported speech) 49

a thing that . . . (relative clauses) 106-7

the 63-7

the and *a/an* 63

the sun / the sky etc. 64

the top of / the end of etc. 64

the same 64

the cinema / the theatre / the bank etc. 65

flowers / the flowers 66

the in names of places 67

the biggest / the most expensive etc' 84

their 54, 56

theirs 55-6

them 53, 56

themselves 57

there

there is I there are 31

there was / there were 32

there has / have been 32

there will be 32

there is and *it is* 31, 33

these 68

think (*think about I think of*) 100

this 68

those 68

through 97

till (= *until*) 92

to 92, 95, 97

get to . . . 51

go to . . . 52

to + infinitive (*to go I to be* etc.)

see **infinitive**

too 86

too and *either* 39

turn (*turn round I turn on* etc.)

(phrasal verbs) 101-2, Appendix 6

try (*to . . .*) 47

uncountable nouns

(*salt / water / mush* etc.) 61-2

under 96-7

until 92, 104

up 97

get up / pick up etc. (phrasal verbs) 101-2, Appendices 5-6

us 53, 56

usually

usually + present simple 5
word order 88

verbs

present tenses 3-8, 35

past tenses 9-13, 35

present perfect 15-19

modal verbs (*will/can/should* etc.) 23-30, 34

regular and irregular verbs 9, 36, Appendices 1-2

passive 20, 35

future 21-4

reported speech 49

negatives 40

questions 41-2

verbs + *-ing* 47

verbs + *to . . .* (infinitive) 34, 47

verbs + preposition (*look at / speak to* etc.) 100

phrasal verbs (*get up I put on* etc.) 101-2, Appendices 5-6

wait (*for*) 50, 100

want 47-8

was/were 11

was/were -ing (past continuous) 12, 34-5

was/were done (passive) 20, 35
there was/were 32

well 80

were see was

what 42, 44

What . . . ? 42, 44

What . . . like? 43

What . . . ? and Which . . . ? 44

when 104

when . . . and if . . . 105

whether 46

which

Which . . . ? 44

- which one/ones?* 69
Which . . . ? and What . . . ? 44
a thing which . . . (relative clauses) 106–7
- while** 93, 104
- who**
Who. . . ? 42
a person who . . . (relative clauses) 106–7
- whose** 55
- will** 23–4
will and *shall* 23
won't 23
there will be 32
- with** 98
- without** 98–9
- won't** (= *will not*) 23
- word order**
 in questions 41–3
 in present continuous questions 4
 in present simple questions 7
 in past simple questions 10
Can you tell me where . . . ? (embedded questions) 46
 verb + object 87
 place and time 87
always /usually /also etc. 88
- after *give/lend/pass/send/show* 90
- worse** 81
- worst** 84
- would**
I'd like I would you like? 30, 47
would like/love/hate/prefer 47
- yet** 89
- you** 53, 56
- your** 54, 56
- yours** 55–6
- yourself/yourselfs** 57

Essential Grammar in Use

A self-study reference and practice book for elementary students of English

Essential Grammar in Use is a grammar reference and practice book for elementary learners. Modelled on Raymond Murphy's highly successful intermediate-level *English Grammar in Use*, its 107 units concentrate on the areas of grammar normally taught at elementary level.

- * Easy-to-use layout: grammar explanations on left-hand pages with exercises to check understanding on facing pages.
- * Reference grammar and practice exercises combined in a single volume.
- * Thorough coverage of problems faced by elementary learners, explained in simple language with many examples and attractive illustrations.
- * Material organised in grammatical categories (e.g. tenses, questions, articles etc.) but can be used in the order appropriate for learners.
- * Can be used for self-study or as supplementary class material.
- * Appendices dealing with irregular verbs, short forms, spelling and phrasal verbs.
- * Clear contents list and index of grammatical items.
- * Key section contains answers to all exercises.

